AN INDUCTIVE

LATIN PRIMER

BY

WILLIAM R. HARPER, Ph.D.

PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO, LATE OF YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

ISAAC B. BURGESS, A.M.

BOSTON LATIN SCHOOL

PREFACE.

◆

THIS volume while intended, like the "Inductive Latin Method" of the same authors, for a first Latin book, is more elementary in character, and is suited to pupils less mature or less thoroughly trained than those to whom the "Method" is adapted. Pupils begin the study of Latin at such different ages and with such a difference in mental equipment that no one book can meet the needs of all.

Those who have used the "Method" will find that the "Primer," while retaining all the prominent features of the former, differs from it in the following particulars : —

1. The Lessons are shorter.

2. Formal grammar is reduced to a minimum, and is introduced more slowly.

3. No reference is made to the grammar during the early Lessons, and the book may be used without a separate grammar, if desired.

4. The exercises are easier and more copious.

5. More prominence is given to conversation upon the text.

6. The subject-matter is illustrated by maps, plans, and pictures.

7. A brief but comprehensive treatment of English Grammar, inductive in character and adapted to those who have never studied English Grammar before, and to the needs of those studying Latin, is bound with the Latin Lessons. This is constantly referred to in explaining Latin forms and syntax.

For the benefit of those who are unfamiliar with the inductive method or with its application to language work the following outline of the order of work laid down in this book is presented :

1. A sentence of the original text is placed before the pupil. The pronunciation and exact translation of each word are furnished him. By the aid which the teacher gives him in advance, and with the help given in the book, he thoroughly masters the words and phrases of this sentence. His knowledge is tested by requiring him to recite or write the Latin sentence, with only the translation before his eye.

2. In connection with this mastery of the words and phrases of the

sentence assigned, the pupil reads and digests the contents of the
" Notes" on these words. This study accomplishes two things :
first, the careful examination of each remark, with its application to
the work in hand, aids in fixing more firmly in mind the word sought
to be mastered ; second, grammatical material is being collected from
the very beginning of his work.

3. The "Text" and " Notes" having been learned, the next step
is one of a more general character. Out of the material which has
thus far been mastered, those principles which are of most impor-
tance, and which the pupil himself will be most likely to recognize,
are pointed out under the head of "Observations." The pupil should
be brought to see these principles for himself before reading the state-
ment of them in the " Observations."

4. The words of the sentence are now separated from their context
and placed in alphabetical order. Thus separated, they form the
basis of additional study.

5. In order to prevent the memorizing of the Latin text without a
clear idea of the force of each word, to impress more firmly on the
mind the words and phrases of the text, and to drill the pupil in
prose composition, — " Exercises," Latin into English and English
into Latin, are given. These are always based upon the sentence
which furnishes the basis of the " Lesson."

6. Once more the leading points of the entire lesson, whether
suggested in the " Notes," the "Observations," or the " Vocabulary,"
come up for consideration under the head of "Topics for Study."
Upon each topic the student is expected to make a statement of what
HE KNOWS (not of what has been said in the book). If his statement
is not sufficiently full, it will be criticised by the class.

From this outline the idea of the method will be apparent. It
proposes : first, to gain from the classic text an accurate knowledge of
some of the facts of the language ; second, to learn from these facts
the principles which they illustrate, and by which they are regulated ;
third, to apply these principles in the further progress of the work.
A few words in explanation of this statement are needed :

1. It is not to be supposed that the elementary student will
perform unaided the complete inductive process of the mature
investigator. He cannot, of course, search through hundreds of
pages of Latin literature for possible exceptions to a principle which
appears in the few facts before him, but must receive his teacher's

assurance that these facts are fairly REPRESENTATIVE of the whole great class of facts to which they belong. It is believed, however, that under proper guidance both his powers of observation and his reasoning faculties will be greatly stimulated and a large amount of independent work will be done.

2. It is not to be supposed that a long time must elapse before the beginner is ready to take hold of principles. As a matter of fact, he is taught important principles, and that, too, inductively, during the first hour's work. The three processes are all the while going on together. He is increasing the store of facts at his command, learning new principles from the facts thus acquired, and applying these principles to the new forms continually coming to his notice.

3. The memorizing of the facts of a language, before a knowledge of the principles has been acquired, is, indeed, a piece of drudgery, and yet not so great as is the memorizing of grammar without a knowledge of the facts. Nor will it long remain drudgery ; for very soon the student begins to see analogies, to compare this word with that, and in short to make his own grammar.

4. A writer in the London "Journal of Education," speaking of recent educational changes in Germany, says : "The chief feature of the reform programme is the emphasis laid on making grammar the handmaid of literature, on mastering the text, and gaining a knowledge of grammar by study of it rather than making grammar an aim in itself." These words are an exact statement of the spirit and method of this manual. Grammar is not neglected, but it is treated as a means, not as an end. The book is complete in itself ; but those who believe that reference to a Latin Grammar should be made during the first year in preparation for later work will find references to Harkness's, and Allen and Greenough's Grammars in the later "Lessons" of the book. Attention is called to the summary statements of grammar in the first four "Review Lessons."

5. By basing the work of the pupil strictly upon the connected text of Caesar, a very large amount of time, usually given to learning forms and syntax not required in translating Caesar, is saved. In the smallness of his vocabulary, the slight variety of his forms, and the simplicity of his syntax, Caesar offers surprising advantages as a first Latin author. He uses but 950 words in the whole Helvetian war, employs scarcely more than 40 of the 150 forms of the Latin verb, and avoids almost entirely the use of the subjunctive in conditions.

The English-Latin Vocabulary included in the "Latin Method" has been omitted in this book because it is very difficult, if not impossible, to induce beginners to learn from the text the words and usages required in writing the English-Latin Exercises, if the Vocabulary is so conveniently supplied. To those who wish it, however, an English-Latin Vocabulary will be furnished by the publishers.

The attention of teachers is specially called to the preface of the "Inductive Studies in English Grammar" (p. 1) and to the "Suggestions for Teachers" (p. 66).

This "Primer," like the "Method," teaches the pupil to read Latin by following the order of the original, and we again express our indebtedness to Prof. W. G. Hale, of Cornell University, who has explained this method very clearly in his "Art of Reading Latin." We also extend our thanks to Dr. E. A. Sheldon, of the Oswego Normal School, N. Y.; to Mr. William Simons, of Charleston, S. C.; to Miss Gertrude E. Hale, of the Packer Institute, Brooklyn; to Dr. E. G. Sihler, author of a "Lexicon to Caesar's Gallic War;" and to Mr. J. W. Scudder, of the Albany Academy, Albany, N. Y., for kind suggestions. The editors of the American Book Company have rendered constant and efficient aid in the preparation of the book for publication.

We have been most fortunate in securing the help of several fellow-teachers in the work of reading the proof. Such aid has been rendered by Mr. John K. Richardson, Mr. Henry C. Jones, and Mr. Francis De M. Dunn, of the Boston Latin School; by Mr. Frank M. Bronson, of Cornell University; and by Dr. Herbert C. Tolman, of the University of Wisconsin. We feel ourselves under lasting obligation to these gentlemen for constant suggestions during many months. We have profited not a little by their accurate scholarship and discriminating judgment. They are not, however, responsible for any errors of fact or reasoning which the book contains. Further acknowledgments will be found in the preface to the "Inductive Studies in English Grammar."

WILLIAM R. HARPER,
ISAAC B. BURGESS.

September, 1891.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

——◆——

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

———◆———

A. & G. . . Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar

abl. . . . ablative

accus. . . accusative

act. . . . active

adj. . . adjective

adv. . . adverb

antec. . . antecedent

Bk. . . . Book

Chap. . . Chapter

cf. . . . CONFER, compare

comp. . . comparative

conj. . . conjunction

conjug. . conjugation

const. . . construction

dat. . . dative

decl. . . declension

dem. . . demonstrative

dep. . . deponent

dir. . . direct

disc. . . discourse

E. G. . . Inductive Studies in English Grammar, accompanying this "Primer."

e. g. . . EXEMPLI GRATIA, for example

Eng. . . English

etc. . . ET CETERA, and so forth

fem. . . feminine

fut. . . future

gen. . . genitive

Gram. . . Grammar

H. . . . Harkness's Latin Gram.

i. e. . . . ID EST, that is

impf. . . imperfect

ind . . indicative

indir. . . indirect

inf. . . . infinitive

Lat. . . Latin

lit. . . . literal

masc. . . masculine

N. . . . Note

neg. . . negative

neut. . . neuter

nom. . . nominative

obj. . . . object

Obs. . . Observation

p., pp. . page, pages

partic. . participle

pass. . . passive

pers. . . person

pf. . . . perfect

plpf. . . pluperfect

plur. . . plural

prep. . . preposition

pres. . . present

pron. . . pronoun

sing. . . singular

subj. . . subject

subjv. . . subjunctive

sup. . . . superlative

trans. . . transitive

viz. . . . namely

Vocab. . . Vocabulary

The plur. has generally been formed by adding -s to the abbreviation.

INDUCTIVE STUDIES

IN

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

———◆———

PREFACE.

THIS book, while suitable for any student of English, is designed especially for persons who intend to study Latin or some other foreign language; its preparation seemed necessary for the following reasons : —

First. The grammar of English is necessary in learning that of a foreign language, on the principle that in study we must pass from the known to the unknown. Furthermore, there is not time to acquire a knowledge of English grammar after the pupil has plunged into the new vocabulary, the new inflections, and the new constructions, of a foreign tongue.

Second. As a matter of fact, very many pupils come to our high schools with almost no practical mastery of English grammar.

Third. The manual of English which we have just shown to be necessary in the high school, should be very readily accessible to the pupil, not only for connected study before taking up a foreign language, but also for reference after it is begun. It should therefore be brief enough to be bound with the Latin manual. Most of the existing grammars are too long for this purpose.

Fourth. Very many of the existing grammars, though adequate for English alone, have but little regard for comparative grammar. As a matter of fact, more than half the rules found in our Latin grammars have their counterparts in English; but so thoroughly is this fact disguised in our English grammars by a narrow treatment, or by a difference in terminology or arrangement, that the beginner feels the Latin to be far more new and strange to him than it really is.

Fifth. None of the existing manuals are thoroughly and consistently inductive. They first bring before the beginner, not the living language itself for his scrutiny, but a generalized statement about the language for his assent.

The study of English grammar is well adapted for inductive treatment, for the pupil has already learned the simple facts of the English language, and has used them for years. It is the purpose of this book to show him that he knows these facts, and to guide him in organizing his knowledge so that he may apply it in new fields.

These " studies " in English grammar require the constant use of a note-book in recording the results of the pupil's observation. The facts discovered by observation should be fixed in mind by constant practice in analyzing and parsing connected English, and in framing English sentences to illustrate grammatical forms or the rules of syntax.

The authors do not believe that a pupil's understanding of rules is effectively tested by classified groups of examples, each group being placed under its own rule, and therefore have not swelled the book with such collections of examples. The pupil's knowledge of a principle will be best tested by requiring him to pick out concrete examples of its application from several pages of connected English, such as he may find in his reading-book, his history, or any of the booklets of English classics which may now be obtained for a few cents.

It is suggested that the freedom of arrangement required in poetry makes it somewhat superior to prose as a means of expelling from a pupil's mind the delusion that word-order is a safe guide to grammatical construction.

A large part of the sentences on which inductions are based are taken from the story of " The Golden Touch," in Hawthorne's " Wonder Book." In the preparation of these pages reference has been made to the English Grammars of Professors Whitney, Meiklejohn, Salmon, and Welsh. Mr. Byron Groce, Mr. John K. Richardson, Mr. Henry C. Jones, Mr. Francis De M. Dunn, all of the Boston Latin School, and Mr. Charles F. Kimball, of the Rice Training School, Boston, have rendered very valuable assistance in reading the proofs.

PRONUNCIATION.

1. Vowels. — The letters **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, and **y** when it has the sound of **i**, are pronounced by a continuous flow of sound, and can be pronounced when standing alone.[1] These letters are called VOWELS.

NOTE. — When, as in **be-hav'-ior**, the letter **i** is preceded by an accented syllable and followed by another vowel, it is a consonant with the sound of **y**.

2. Consonants. — The other letters of the alphabet cannot be pronounced without checking the flow of sound by one or more of the vocal organs, nor without the aid of a vowel. Thus, in pronouncing the letter **f** the sound is checked by the lips and teeth, and the sound of **e** is inserted before that of **f**; what we pronounce is really a combination of two letters, — **ef**. Such letters are called CONSONANTS. What, then, is the difference between a vowel and a consonant?

3. Mutes and Liquids. — Those consonants in the pronunciation of which the sound is most completely checked, are called MUTES. They are **g**, **d**, **b**, **c**, **k**, **q**, **t**, **p**. It will be seen that these consonants are least like the vowels in their pronunciation. Those consonants which are most like the vowels in their pronunciation are called LIQUIDS; they are **l** and **r**.

4. Diphthongs. — Study the sounds of **ou** and **oi** in the words **oil, join, out, hound.** Note that the vowels in **ou** and **oi** have practically combined to form a single sound. Such a combination of vowels is called a DIPHTHONG.

NOTE. — Consonants may combine to form a single sound. The letter **x** is often equivalent in pronunciation to **cs** or **ks**.

5. Syllables. — Any letter or combination of letters or sounds which may be completely pronounced by a single movement of the

[1] This and the following sections should be vocally illustrated by the teacher.

voice, may be a SYLLABLE.[1] All words consist of one syllable or
more; thus, **no-bod-y, my-self, a-way.**

Pronounce the following common words carefully, just as you have
heard them pronounced by educated people, and then divide them by
hyphens into the syllables which you have pronounced:[2] **metal,
chiefly, purpose, foolish, glistening, loved, maiden, planted.**
Is each syllable of these words pronounced with the same energy?

**6. Number of Syllables in a Word compared with the
Number of Vowels.** — In the following words compare the number
of vowels and diphthongs with the number of syllables: **pos-si-bly,
bet-ter, fond-er, gar-den, mu-sic, more, loved, choose, be-cause,
chief-ly, thought, be-hav-ior.**

1. In which of the above words is the number of vowels and diph-
thongs the same as the number of syllables? 2. In which is the
number of vowels and diphthongs greater than the number of syl-
lables? 3. In the latter, are there any silent vowels? 4. If there
were no silent vowels in English, what would be the rule for the
number of vowels and diphthongs in a word as compared with the
number of syllables?

7. Accent. — In the pronunciation of all English words of more
than one syllable, one syllable is made prominent by a special loud-
ness, distinctness, and energy of utterance, called ACCENT. Accent
may be described as a stroke of the voice, and it is indicated in
written or printed language by a down-stroke just at the end of the
accented syllable; thus, **syl′-la-ble, ex-ceed′-ing-ly.**

To the Teacher. — The pupil should have ample drill in distinct syl-
labication and definite accentuation. Do not allow any slurring of final
syllables in words or sentences. It may be a help to represent syllables

---

[1] May a vowel be a syllable, and if so, why?

[2] Care should be taken that each syllable is distinctly pronounced. Remember
that there is a clear, though very brief, pause after each syllable. Oral spelling,
provided each syllable is pronounced immediately after it is spelled, is an excellent
means of cultivating the sense for syllables, which, for some reason, very many high-
school pupils lack.

and accents graphically; thus, $\overline{\text{ex}}$-$\overwidehat{\text{ceed}}$-$\overline{\text{ing}}$-$\overline{\text{ly}}$. Note that the lines which represent the syllables do not touch one another. What does this mean?

Rules for Pronunciation of Vowels.

8. When we know the pronunciation of a syllable, and wish to find the sound of a single letter or group of letters in that syllable, we do so by gradually taking away the sound of the other letters, until only the letter or group in question remains; thus, **mate, mat, ma, a.** But we must be very careful not to change the sound of the letter in question during the process.

1. Find and contrast the sound of the underlined vowels in the following familiar words: —

a. m**a**te   **E**ve   f**i**ne   n**o**te   **u**se   t**y**pe

b. m**a**t   **e**nd   f**i**n   n**o**t   **u**s   m**y**th   b**o**t-t**o**m   f**ee**l-**i**ng

The sound which we give to the vowels in the first line is called the long sound, and is indicated thus: **māte.** The sound which we give to the vowels in the second line is called the short sound, and is indicated thus: **măt.** Let the pupils, singly or in concert, be prepared to give the long and short sounds of all the vowels.

2. Judging from the words above, what is the sound of all vowels in final syllables ending in a consonant, counting one-syllable words as final syllables?

9. Study the following words, noting particularly the sound of the underlined vowel in each: —

Ma**ry   e**v**il   p**i**ning   f**o**gy   fl**u**te
ma**rry   e**l**bow   p**i**nning   f**o**ggy   fl**u**tter

Also

ele**ction   fl**e**xile   cal**e**ndar   rapture   r**i**nging   constr**u**ct**

1. Give the meaning of each of the above words. 2. Which of the vowels underlined above are immediately followed by two conso-nants before another vowel is reached? 3. Why should the first **e** in **flexile** be included in this list? 4. What is the sound of each of

these vowels? 5. If these words represent the tendency in English pronunciation fairly, in what position may we expect to find short vowels? [1]

6. Study the following examples for an exception to this rule:

ācre   frāgrant   ōblige   īdle

7. Repeat the list of mutes and that of liquids, and then see if you can state this exception. 8. From the definition of a liquid, what reason can you suggest for this exception?

10. The next to the last syllable is called the penult. The syllable before the penult is called the antepenult.

Observe the sound and position of the vowel in the antepenultimate syllables of the following words : —

nă′-tion-al (cf. nātion)   crĕd′-i-ble (cf. crē-dence)
vĭn′-e-gar (cf. vīne)   Măr′-y-gold (cf. Mā-ry)
par-tĭc′-u-lar   prŏb′-a-ble   vĭc′-to-ry

And contrast

dī-′a-logue   vī′-o-let   dē′-i-fy

Also

pā′tri-ot   in-tē′-ri-or   mā′-ni-ac

And also

cū′-po-la   ū′-ni-ty   cū′cum-ber   lū′-bri-cate

1. What, from the above examples, seems to be the rule for the length of vowels before one or more consonants in antepenultimate accented syllables? 2. What examples show that this rule does not hold when the vowel of the penult is followed immediately by another vowel? 3. What examples show that the vowel **u** does not conform to the rule?

[1] Note that the word "tendency" is used. While there are many exceptions to the tendencies of the language indicated in this and the following sections, still it is believed that a knowledge of these tendencies will be very helpful. While English pronunciation is a sore puzzle, it is not quite so lawless as is generally supposed.

11. The letter u in qu. — What letter represents the sound of **u** in the following words?

<div align="center">

equ̇ity   liquid   quick   queen   quantity

</div>

By what consonant is **u** preceded in these words?

Rules for the Pronunciation of Consonants.

12. Study the sound of **c**, **t**, and **s**, when underlined in the following words : —

ar-ti-fi′-<u>c</u>ial   con-fi-den′-tial   na′-<u>ti</u>on   spe′<u>c</u>ies
ex-cur′-<u>si</u>on   ap-pre-hen′-<u>si</u>on   so′-<u>c</u>ial   as-so′-<u>c</u>i-a′<u>ti</u>on

1. What sound is added to that of the underlined **c** or **s** in the above words?   2. In what respect is the sound of the underlined **t** similar to that of the underlined **c** or **s**?   3. What kind of a syllable invariably precedes **c**, **s**, or **t**?   4. What vowel invariably follows? 5. Why should the **x** in **anxious** and **noxious** follow the same rule?

13. Note the sound of **c** and **g** in the following words : —

sagacity	centre	secrecy	physic	club	region	surgeon
ague	acid	election	cod	physical	cub	edge
grave	go	game	gypsy	gun	cant	mug

1. What two sounds has **c** in the above words?   2. What two has **g**?   3. Pick out the words in which **c** has its soft sound, or sound of **s**.   4. Pick out the words in which **g** has its soft sound, or sound of **j**.   5. Before what three vowels only does the soft sound of **c** and **g** occur?[1]

[1] Only those principles of English pronunciation have been introduced which seemed most helpful to later study.   It is believed that what has here been given will be useful, not only as a preparation for the English pronunciation of Latin, but also in pronouncing the mother-tongue.   The teacher should see to it that these principles are applied to pronouncing English words never before seen by the pupils.   Too often pupils pronounce their mother-tongue wholly by imitation.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

14. Once upon a time there lived a very rich man, and a king besides, whose name was Midas; and he had a little daughter whom nobody but myself ever heard of, and whose name I either never knew or have entirely forgotten. So, because I love odd names for little girls, I choose to call her Marygold.

<div align="right">HAWTHORNE : " Wonder Book."</div>

1. Are there any THINGS which we know which cannot be learned through any of the five senses ? Make a list of all the names of persons and things in the above extract.[1] Such names are called NOUNS.

2. What word in the above, containing only one letter, is used instead of the name of the person who is speaking? What advantages are there in using such a word ? Can you find any other words which take the place of nouns in the passage ? For what noun does each stand ? Words which are used instead of nouns are called PRONOUNS. PRO, which is the first syllable, means *instead of*.

3. What words in the passage assert some action? A word which asserts is called a VERB. Make as many assertions or statements as possible, using only the nouns, pronouns, and verbs which you have collected. See if you can make a statement without using a verb. See if you can make a statement without using a noun or pronoun.

4. What words in the above passage are used to describe nouns ? Such words are called ADJECTIVES. The pupil will observe that a word which describes a noun also limits the number of objects which that noun can name. Thus the words, RICH **man**, apply to a more limited number than the word **man** ; the words, LITTLE **daughter**, to a more limited number than **daughter** ; THIS **king** to only one, while the word **king** may be applied to scores of people. Therefore an adjective is sometimes said to limit as well as describe. Indeed, some adjectives, like **this, the, two, some,** seem hardly to describe at all, but only to limit.

---

[1] In answering this and the following questions the teacher may allow the pupil to omit the more difficult instances.

5. There are also words which describe or limit the action of verbs. Pick them out in the above passage. Such words are called ADVERBS. The word ADVERB means *near a verb*. In the expression, a VERY rich man, we have an adverb, VERY, limiting an adjective, **rich**; and we might say, **Marygold loved her father VERY dearly**, where **dearly** must be an adverb, because it describes **loved**, and yet is itself limited by the adverb VERY. Therefore an adverb may limit an adjective or an adverb as well as a verb.

6. Observe in the passage the use of UPON, in the expression **upon a time**; BUT, in the expression **but myself**; and FOR, in the expression **for little girls**. It will be seen that UPON connects **time** with **lived**, BUT connects **myself** with **nobody**, and FOR connects **girls** with **names**, and that each of these words, UPON, BUT, and FOR, connects a noun or pronoun with something else, and shows some sort of a relation between the noun or pronoun which follows it and the word with which that noun or pronoun is connected. What then is a PREPOSITION?

7. Study the statement, **There lived a very rich man, and he had a little daughter**. It is evidently made up of two statements, — **There lived a very rich man** and **The man had a little daughter**, united by the word AND. In like manner the statement, **So, because I love odd names for little girls, I choose to call her Marygold**, is made up of two statements, — **I choose to call the little daughter Marygold**, and **I love odd names for little girls**, connected by the word BECAUSE. Words which, like AND and BECAUSE, connect statements, are called CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunction seems many times to connect words used in the same way, as in the sentence, **He gave all his thoughts and all his time to this one purpose**. What two words used in the same way does the conjunction here connect? Can you show, however, by inserting two omitted words, that there are really two complete statements here?

15. Observe how all the different classes of words in the passage we have been studying are connected. The pronouns take the place of nouns, the verbs when united to nouns or pronouns make assertions,

and no assertion can be made with noun or verb alone. The adjectives describe the nouns, the adverbs describe the verbs, the prepositions connect nouns or pronouns to something else, and, finally, statements are connected by the conjunction.

SPEECH often means the union of words to express ideas. Why then are nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc., called PARTS OF SPEECH? In what respects is the statement of an idea like the human body?

16. Interjections. — Study the words **Poh**, **Alas**, and **Ah** in the following sentences : —

POH ! **my dear little girl, pray don't cry about it.**
ALAS ! **what had he done ?**
AH ! **so you have made a discovery ?**

In what respects are the three words just mentioned used in the same way? Under which of the classes called parts of speech may these three words be classified? What does the punctuation immediately after each show as to their connection with the rest of the sentence? Such abrupt expressions of feeling are called INTERJECTIONS, which means *thrown into* speech without being a part of it. Since these interjections go along with speech, however, they are usually called parts of speech. They seem to bear about the same relation to the statement which they accompany as a ring on the hand bears to the body.

Number and Grouping of the Parts of Speech.

17. Let us now group the parts of speech in two ways, in order to gain a more perfect understanding of them. First, as to their use or office in a statement or assertion.

1. What two parts of speech are used as names ? 2. What is the asserter in every assertion ?[1] 3. What are the two describers or limiters in an assertion ? 4. What are the two connectors ? 5. Is

---

[1] The definition of the verb here given does not provide for interrogative and imperative sentences. Indeed, it is probably impossible to define the verb briefly and clearly so as to include such sentences. The interrogative and imperative forms, however, may be so easily changed to declarative that this definition will not be found seriously inadequate.

the interjection properly a part of speech? 6. If not, why not? 7. What reasons are there for classifying it as such? 8. How may we make out eight parts of speech? 9. How may we reduce this number to six? 10. Is there any reason for reducing the number to four? It is usual to give the number of parts of speech as eight. It seems more correct, however, to call it six.

18. Let us now, in the second place, group the parts of speech in accordance with their relation to the noun and verb. 1. Why are the noun and verb considered the most independent and essential parts of speech? 2. What is the substitute for the noun? 3. What is the describer of the noun? 4. What is the connector of the noun? 5. What is the describer of the verb? 6. What is the connector of two assertions?

19. **Use, not Form, determines the Part of Speech.** — Let us now return to the study of our passage. We found that in this passage **very** was an adverb, **rich** was an adjective, **name** was a noun, **but** was a preposition. What are these same words in the following statements?

> *a.* **Midas was the VERY man.**
> *b.* **The RICH are envied.**
> *c.* **They NAME their daughter Marygold.**
> *d.* **He went away, BUT I stayed at home.**

We find — do we not? — that exactly the same words have now in a different statement been quite differently used, and hence have become other parts of speech. Is not the lesson of this fact plain? It is that the spelling — or, as we would better say, the form — of a word does not show what part of speech it is. This is determined wholly by its USE in a statement. Hence we must not try to tell the part of speech of a word until we see it USED in a statement. Very, very many words, like the four we have taken from this short passage, are used as different parts of speech in different assertions.

To the Teacher. — Too great emphasis can hardly be given to the above lesson. The pupil should have much practice in using one word

as different parts of speech. A firm and consistent application of the principle that the part of speech is determined by USE, and not by FORM, will do more to simplify English grammar than any other one thing.

Such an expression as "an adjective used as a noun" is a contradiction in terms. If any word is USED as a noun, it IS a noun, since USE alone determines the part of speech. The expression quoted certainly implies that something else than USE determines the part of speech, and the beginner concludes that it is the form of the word. It would be correct to say "a word usually an adjective, but here a noun," though in many cases the use of a word is so various that it is impossible to say which part of speech it usually is.

20. Words which do Duty as more than one Part of Speech. — Study the words in small capitals in the following sentences :

a. RAISING his head, he looked the lustrous stranger in the face.

b. After carefully LOCKING the door, he took a bag of gold.

c. If these flowers were golden, they would be worth the PLUCKING.

d. I choose TO CALL her Marygold.

e. Once there lived a king whose name was Midas. THIS king was fonder of gold than of anything else.

f. THOUGH he slay me, yet will I trust in him.

g. He had a little daughter, AND he called HER Marygold.

h. He had a little daughter WHOM he called Marygold.

1. Observe that in *a* the word RAISING not only describes the following pronoun **he** like an adjective, but also expresses action and affects the noun **head** by its action. Furthermore, it is formed by adding an ending to the verb **raise.** Although it is like a verb in expressing action, it cannot be one, for it makes no assertion, like the verb **looked,** for instance, in the same sentence. An adjective which is similar in form and meaning to a verb is called a verbal adjective, and some verbal adjectives, like **raising,** are called PARTICIPLES.

2. In sentences *b*, *c*, and *d*, note that LOCKING, PLUCKING, and TO CALL are the names of actions expressed by the verbs LOCK, PLUCK, and CALL. They are, therefore, verbal nouns. Such verbal nouns as these are called INFINITIVES.

3. In *e*, note that THIS limits the meaning of **king**, and is therefore an adjective. It refers, however, to King Midas mentioned in the preceding sentence, and has, therefore, to some extent the use of a pronoun, though it only refers to a noun and does not take its place. We therefore call it a PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVE. Make a sentence in which **this** will be a pronoun.

4. In sentence *f*, note that THOUGH not only limits the verb **slay** like an adverb, but also connects the statement in which it stands with the statement, **yet will I trust in him.** It is therefore both a conjunction and an adverb, and is sometimes called a CONJUNCTIVE ADVERB.

5. Note, in *g* and *h*, that WHOM in *h* takes the place of the conjunction AND, and the pronoun HER in *g*. A word which thus does the work of a conjunction and a pronoun is called a RELATIVE PRONOUN.

6. From what immediately precedes, it will be seen that many words discharge the office to some extent of more than one part of speech. But note further that in at least three of these cases there is no doubt as to how we shall classify the word in question. The verbal adjective or participle is always an adjective and never a verb, because it always describes a noun and never asserts ; see **14**, 3. A verbal noun or infinitive is always a noun and never a verb, because it always names but never asserts ; and a pronominal adjective is always an adjective and never a pronoun, because it always limits and never takes the place of, a noun ; see **14**, 2.

In the case of the conjunctive adverb and the relative pronoun, however, the single word seems clearly to do the work of two parts of speech.

INFLECTION.

21. Case. — Note the connection of each word in small capitals in the following sentences with the other words in the same statement or sentence : —

a. **The FATHER loves his daughter.**
b. **HE loves his daughter.**
c. **The FATHER is loved by his daughter.**
d. **The FATHER'S gold will be given to HIS daughter.**
e. **The daughter gives her FATHER a rose.**
f. **The daughter gives HIM a rose.**
g. **She loves HIM.**
h. **FATHER, may I go ?**
i. **She goes with HIM.**
j. **She goes with her FATHER.**

1. We note that FATHER in *a* and *c* and HE in *b* are the persons made most prominent in these sentences : they are the subjects of discourse, and so are said to be the SUBJECTS of the sentence. In *i* and *j*, however, HIM and FATHER are not the subjects, but are connected to a more important word by the preposition **with**. It is therefore plain that a noun or pronoun may have different relations to the other words of the sentence in which it stands. The relation in which it stands to the other words of the sentence is called its CASE. If a word is the subject of a sentence, it is said to be in the NOMINATIVE case; if it is the object [1] of a preposition, it is in the OBJECTIVE, or ACCUSATIVE, case.

The word FATHER is the same in spelling or form in both the nominative and the accusative. How is it with the pronoun HE? Cf. (*i. e.* compare) *i.*

2. There are still other cases or relations of nouns and pronouns. The words FATHER'S and HIS before **gold** and **daughter** in *d* show that the father possesses the **gold** and a **daughter**. This relation is

[1] The meaning of this word when used of prepositions is explained five lines above.

therefore called the POSSESSIVE, or GENITIVE, case. How does HIS differ in form from HE ; FATHER'S from FATHER ?

3. Again, the words FATHER and HIM in *e* and *f* have the action of the verb exerted indirectly, not directly, upon them. (The direct object in each case is **rose.**) This relation of indirect object is called the DATIVE case. Does the form of the dative differ from that of the accusative? See *g*, *i*, and *j*,

4. In *h*, the word FATHER designates the person who is addressed. When so used, a noun is said to be in the VOCATIVE case. Is the vocative case closely connected with the rest of the sentence? How does its form compare with that of the nominative ?

22. Number and Declension. — Let us again study the words in small capitals in the following sentences : —

    a. **The** FATHERS **love their daughters.**
    b. **The** FATHERS' **gold will be given to their daughters.**
    c. **The daughters give their** FATHERS **roses.**
    d. **They go with their** FATHERS.
    e. FATHERS, **love your daughters.**
    f. THEY **love their daughters.**
    g. THEIR **gold will be given to their daughters.**
    h. **The daughters give** THEM **roses.**
    i. **They go with** THEM.

1. A noun which, like **father,** names a single person or thing, is in the SINGULAR NUMBER ; a noun which, like **fathers,** names more than one, is in the PLURAL NUMBER. In what five different cases is the word FATHERS used in the sentences above? Pick out each different use. In what four different cases is the pronoun of which THEY is the nominative plural used in the above sentences? Why is not this pronoun used in the vocative?

2. Note that **father** is changed to **father's** to show that the **father** possesses something instead of does something (as in **21**, *a*), and that **fathers** is changed to **fathers'** for the same reason. Therefore the form is changed, to indicate a difference of relation to the other words of the sentence.

In the change from the nominative singular **father** to the nomina-

tive plural **fathers,** however, there is no difference in relation, but there is a difference of meaning. A change in the form of a word to indicate either a change of relation or a change of meaning is called INFLECTION. The complete and orderly inflection of a noun or pronoun is called its DECLENSION.

3. In declining a noun or pronoun it is customary to write the cases in the following order, — nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, — and to write the singular before the plural. Decline **father** and **he**, selecting the different case-forms from the sentences we have just been studying.

	Singular		*Plural*	
Nom.	**father**	**he**	**fathers**	**they**
Gen.	**father's**	**his**	**fathers'**	**their**
Dat.	**father**	**him**	**fathers**	**them**
Accus.	**father**	**him**	**fathers**	**them**
Voc.	**father**		**fathers**	

4. As to the cases which are alike, the word **father** is a fair sample of all nouns, and the word **he** is a fair sample of several pronouns. (1) What cases then are always alike in nouns both in singular and in plural? (2) Answer the same question in regard to the pronoun **he.** (3) What case differs in form from the nominative both in singular and in plural, and in both nouns and pronouns? (4) What case, though like the nominative in nouns, is different from the nominative in the pronoun **he**? (5) What is the exact difference between the genitive singular and genitive plural of **father**? (6) Fill out the following blanks : —

	Singular		*Singular*
Nom., Dat., Accus., Voc.	**father**	Nom.	**he**
Gen.	——	Gen.	——
		Dat., Accus.	——
	Plural		*Plural*
Nom., Dat., Accus., Voc.	——	Nom.	——
Gen.	——	Gen.	——
		Dat., Accus.	——

(7) How many different forms has every English noun? (8) How many has the pronoun **he**?

23. Declension of Nouns. — Study the following declensions : [1]

	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
Nom., Dat., Accus., Voc.	box	lass	ox	child
Gen.	(box's) [2]	lass's	ox's	child's
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
Nom., Dat., Accus., Voc.	boxes	lasses	oxen	children
Gen.	(boxes')	lasses'	oxen's	children's
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
Nom., Dat., Accus., Voc.	man	mouse	boy	day
Gen.	man's	mouse's	boy's	day's
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
Nom., Dat., Accus., Voc.	men	mice	boys	days
Gen.	men's	mice's	boys'	days'
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
Nom., Dat., Accus., Voc.	lady	pony	hoof	calf
Gen.	lady's	pony's	(hoof's)	calf's
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
Nom., Dat., Accus., Voc.	ladies	ponies	hoofs	calves
Gen.	ladies'	ponies'	(hoofs')	calves'

1. (1) How does the nominative plural of **box** and **lass** differ from that of **father** in ending ? (2) Name other words which add -**s** to form the nominative plural. (3) Others which add -**es**. From these words it appears that as a rule we add -**es** when the nominative singular ends with such a sound that if -**s** is added, the sound of **e** is produced in the effort to pronounce this **s**.

2. What two letters (preceded by **r** in the case of **child**) are added

[1] A little investigation will convince the teacher that many pupils do not know the facts and rules here illustrated. Special attention should be given to the nominative and genitive plural. The great advantage to the pupil about to begin Latin of naming all the cases used in English and in arranging the declensions after the fashion of the Latin grammar, will be apparent.

[2] For reason for these marks of parenthesis, cf. **63**, 4.

to **ox** and **child** to make the nominative plural ?   There are very few words thus declined.

3. What marked difference between formation of the nominative plural of all the other words and that of **man** and **mouse** ?   Give other words like these two.

4. (1) In what respect are the four words **boy**, **day**, **lady**, and **pony** alike ?   (2) What difference in the formation of the nominative plural between the first two and last two ?   (3) What kind of a letter stands before **y** in **boy** and **day** ?   (4) What in **lady** and **pony** ?   (5) What then seems to be the rule for the formation of the nominative plural of nouns ending in **y** ?

5. (1) What is the likeness of ending between the nouns **hoof** and **calf** ?   (2) What is the difference in the formation of their nominatives plural ?   Some nouns ending with sound of **f** form the plural like **hoof**, some like **calf** ; but there is no rule regulating the matter, as in the case of nouns ending in **y**.

6. (1) What difference between plurals like **oxen**, **children**, **men**, and **mice**, and all the other plurals here given ?   (2) What important difference in the genitives plural as compared with the other genitives plural ?

7. It will be seen that while most nouns in English form their nominative plural by simply adding -**s**, there are several other ways of forming the plural.   In other words, there are several different declensions in English.

24. Declension of Pronouns. — Write eight sentences illustrating the use of the four singular and four plural cases of the pronoun **she**, just as was done with **he** in **21** and **22**.   Now decline **she** in singular and in plural, selecting the proper cases from the sentences which you have written.   Repeat this process in the case of the pronouns **it**, **I**, **who**, **which**, **that** (as in **all that glitters is not gold**), **what**, **this**, **that** (as in **I know that**), and in the case of **thou**, but write ten cases of **thou**.   Why can we write ten cases of **thou**, but only eight of the other pronouns ?   Compare the plurals of **he**, **she**, and **it**.

1. **I**, **thou**, **he**, **she**, **it** are called PERSONAL pronouns ; **this**, and **that** (when used like **this**) DEMONSTRATIVES.

25. The Form of Adjectives. — Are adjectives inflected[1] for case and number? Since the adjective is not an independent part of speech, but only describes or limits some noun or pronoun, if inflected at all, it seems natural that its inflection should correspond or agree with that of the noun which it describes.

To see whether people are accustomed to do this, let us use any adjective we may choose, with every case and both numbers, of the word **father** in the sentences for study of **21** and **22**. If we use, for instance, the adjective **rich**, we shall find that we say **rich father, rich father's gold, with her rich father, rich fathers**, etc., and that no change is made in the form of **rich** to correspond with changes in the form of **father**. This is so with all adjectives but **this** and **that**. What change is made in these adjectives when a change in the case of the noun is made? What, when the number of their nouns is changed?

Why should not the form of all adjectives be varied to correspond with different cases and numbers of the nouns which they describe, just as the form of **this** varies for singular and plural? It certainly would not be strange if they did so, and we know that this was formerly the case in English, and is now the case in many other languages.[2]

Comparison of Adjectives.

26. Study the adjectives in small capitals below : —

a RICH **man**   a RICHER **man**   the RICHEST **man**

(1) What changes have been made above in the form of **rich**? (2) What changes have been made in the meaning by the added endings? (3) Why should **richer** be called the COMPARATIVE[3] degree, and **richest** the SUPERLATIVE? (4) Why do we say A **rich man**, but THE **richest man**? **Rich** is said to be in the

---

[1] What is the meaning of this word? See **22**, 2.

[2] The writer knows a little boy, just learning to talk, who uses such expressions as **freights cars, flowers gardens**. This shows, perhaps, a feeling on his part that the adjective ought to agree with the noun.

[3] Let the pupil look up the meaning of these words in the dictionary, if necessary.

POSITIVE degree, and the process of changing the form of an adjective, as it is done above, is called COMPARING.

27. Study the adjectives in small capitals below : —

> a BEAUTIFUL **child**
> a BEAUTIFULER **child**
> the BEAUTIFULEST **child**
> a MORE BEAUTIFUL **child**
> the MOST BEAUTIFUL **child.**

(1) Is there any difference of meaning between **beautifuler** and **more beautiful ?** The latter is preferable. Contrast the two methods of comparison illustrated above. (2) To what word is the ending **-er** equivalent in meaning ? (3) To what, the ending **-est** ? (4) What parts of speech are **more** and **most** ? Cf. **14**, 5, **very rich.** Long words are usually compared by **more** and **most.**

28. Study the following adjectives. They show the comparison of all adjectives ending in **-e, -y,** and in a consonant preceded by a short vowel.

PURE **water**,	PURER,	PUREST
a WISE **man**,	WISER,	WISEST
the EARLY **bird**,	EARLIER,	EARLIEST
the UGLY **creature**,	UGLIER,	UGLIEST
a SAD **sight**,	SADDER,	SADDEST
a BIG **boy**,	BIGGER,	BIGGEST

(1) Are the adjectives above compared, like **rich**, by adding **-er** and **-est** to the positive ? (2) If not, give the rule for comparing adjectives ending in **-e.** (3) For those ending in **-y.** (4) For those ending in a consonant preceded by a short vowel.

29. 1. Several adjectives are irregularly compared. The following are the commonest of these : —

> **good, better, best**   **many,** or **much, more, most**
> **bad** or **ill, worse, worst**   **near, nearer, nearest** or **next**
> **little, less, least.**

2. Name several adjectives which from the nature of their meaning are used only in the positive.

3. In such colloquial expressions as **we had a most agreeable visit**, the words **a most agreeable** do not have the proper superlative force of preëminence to all others, as is shown by the use of the article **a** instead of **the** ; they seem to be equivalent to **a** VERY **agreeable**.

30. Comparison of Adverbs. — In the following sentences, pick out the adverbs : —

He came soon. He came sooner than was expected. He wrote well. She wrote best. They crossed the ocean more safely than their friends.

(1) Are any adverbs compared ? (2) How are those given above compared ?

31. Inflection of Verbs. — Study the verb-endings in the following short sentences : —

a. **He loves, they love.**   *b.* **Thou lovest, I love.**
c. **They love, they loved.**

1. (1) What is the only difference in the form of the two verbs under *a* ? The only difference in the meaning of **he loves** and **they love** is that in the first example the assertion is made of one person, in the second, the assertion is made of more than one. (2) To what, then, is the difference in the form of the verbs owing ? (3) Is the verb always inflected to show a difference in number ? Cf. **I love** and **we love.**

2. In *b*, however, there is certainly no difference in the number of the subject, and the assertions state that the acts described in each case are in present time. To what, then, is the difference in the form of the verb owing ?

That difference in the form of the pronoun which shows whether it refers to a person (or persons) speaking, to a person spoken to, or a person spoken of, is called a difference of PERSON. The person speaking is called the first person ; the one spoken to, the second ; and the one spoken of, the third.

Name the pronouns of each person. See **24**. Which person of the verb is used with all nouns? Let the pupil put several nouns into sentences, and answer from his own observation. Which person of the verb is most used?

3. In *c* there is no difference of number or of person, and yet the verbs differ in form. (1) To what is this difference in form owing? A difference in the form of a verb which shows a difference in the time of the action denoted by the verb is called a difference of TENSE. (2) What are the only three possible distinctions or divisions of time which can be made? (3) What two of these appear in the sentences of *c*?

The study which precedes shows that the verb is inflected in order to show differences in time, or tense, and also because of differences in the number and person of its subject.

Name the three inflectional endings which you have just learned, and state very definitely the use of each.

32. Participles and Infinitives. — Study the meaning, use, and form of the words in small capitals below : —

a. A LOVING **daughter**.   *d*. TO LOVE [1] **God is the duty of man.**
b. A LOVED **daughter**.   *e*. LOVING **is better than hating**.
c. **He was** LOVED **by all.**

Note that the words in small capitals, though evidently formed from the verb **love**, are not verbs, for they do not assert anything; see **14**, 3. (1) What part of speech is each? See **20**, 1, 2. (2) What difference is there in time, or tense, between **loving** and **loved**? (3) What difference in form? (4) Compare the form of the past tense and that of the past participle. (5) Give several other verbs which form their past tense and past participle by adding **-d** or **-ed** to the simple infinitive.

33. Summary of Verbal Inflection. — Study the following verb-forms, comparing those above the horizontal line with those below :

[1] In the expression **he will love**, **love** is an infinitive. **To** is not a necessary part of the infinitive. Judging from the sentence **he will love** and from *d* and *e*, what three forms of the infinitive may we have?

PRESENT TENSE.[1]

Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
I love	I call	I learn
thou lovest	thou callest	thou learnest
he loves	he calls	he learns

Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
we love	we call	we learn
you love	you call	you learn
they love	they call	they learn

PAST TENSE.

Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	
I loved	I called	I learned	or learnt
thou lovedst	thou calledst	thou learnedst	" learntest
he loved	he called	he learned	" learnt

Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	
we loved	we called	we learned	or learnt
you loved	you called	you learned	" learnt
they loved	they called	they learned	" learnt

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
I write	I sing	I dig
thou writest	thou singest	thou diggest
he writes	he sings	he digs

Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
we write	we sing	we dig
you write	you sing	you dig
they write	they sing	they dig

PAST TENSE.

Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
I wrote	I sang	I dug
thou wrotest	thou sangest	thou duggest
he wrote	he sang	he dug

Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
we wrote	we sang	we dug
you wrote	you sang	you dug
they wrote	they sang	they dug

[1] It seems best to defer the subject of mode until syntax is reached, since the imperative and subjunctive have no forms not found in the indicative, and the modal idea is difficult for beginners.

VERBAL FORMS.[1]

INFINITIVES.

love	call	learn	write	sing	dig
to love	to call	to learn	to write	to sing	to dig
loving	calling	learning	writing	singing	digging [2]

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

loving	calling	learning	writing	singing	digging

PAST PARTICIPLE.

loved	called	learned	written	sung	dug
		or learnt			

34. The systematic arrangement of all the forms of the verb, as in the preceding article, is called CONJUGATION. What is the similar arrangement of the forms of the noun and pronoun called? See **22**, 2, 3.

1. The verb **love** represents a large class of verbs ending in **-e** silent. Note that such verbs add **-d** in the past tense and past participle instead of **-ed**, as in **called**, and **-st** in second person singular of the present tense instead of **-est**, as in **callest**. Note, however, that the ending of the forms **called** and **loved** is the same.

2. **Learned** and **learnt** are substantially the same in form, for in **learned** the **e** before **d** is silent, the **-ed** does not form an additional syllable, and the **-d** has nearly the sound of **t**. There is a tendency, at present, to write the ending **-t** instead of **-ed** in such cases.

3. Those verbs which, like **love**, **call**, and **learn**, have the past tense and past participle alike, and regularly form both by the addition of **-d**, **-ed**, or **-t** to the infinitive, are said to belong to the NEW conjugation, or, as it is sometimes called, the regular, or weak conjugation.

4. Bearing in mind the suggestions of 1 and 2, write all the different forms of **love**, **call**, and **learn**, including infinitives and parti-

---

[1] The following forms, though not strictly verbs (see **14**, 3, and **32**), are usually classed with them.

[2] The **g** is doubled in the middle of the word on the principle illustrated by **sad**, **sadder**, in **28**.

ciples. How many are there? Write the same forms of **write**, **sing**, and **dig**. Why is there one more of these forms in **write** and **sing** than in the other verbs? Verify from your own observation of the six verbs above the following statements : —

The past tense sometimes differs from the past participle ; the second person singular of the present tense, the third person singular of the same tense, and the present participle, may always be formed by adding **-est**, **-s**, and **-ing** respectively, to the simple infinitive or to the simple infinitive less a final silent **-e** ; and the second person singular of the past tense is formed by adding **-est** or **-st** to the first or third person singular of the same tense. Therefore if the simple infinitive, the past tense, and the past participle are known, all the other inflectional forms of the verb can be formed. From this fact and from the frequency with which these three forms are used, they are called the PRINCIPAL PARTS of the verb.

35. The Old Conjugation. — The three verbs **write**, **sing**, and **dig** belong to what is called the OLD conjugation. At first sight these verbs seem to have nothing in common. They are, however, alike in two or three particulars. Learn thoroughly the following list of very common verbs of the old conjugation, and tell in what respects they are alike. Specially important or difficult verbs are in small capitals.

Infinitive.	*Past tense.*	*Past participle.*
BEAR, *to give birth to*	BORE	BORN
BEAR, *to carry*	BORE	BORNE
beat	beat	beaten
blow	blew	blown
BREAK	BROKE	BROKEN
bite	bit	bitten or bit
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
DO	DID[1]	DONE
draw	drew	drawn

[1] The final **d** is not here **-d** added to **do**, but the word **did** is formed by placing the letters **di** before the **d** of **do** and dropping the **o**.

Infinitive.	Past tense.	Past participle.
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate[1]	eaten[1]
fall	fell	fallen
fight	fought	fought
FLY (cf. flee, 36)	FLEW	FLOWN
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got, gotten
give	gave	given
GO	WENT[2]	GONE
hold	held	held
know	knew	known
LIE (cf. lay, 36)	LAY	LAIN
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
SEE	SAW	SEEN
shake	shook	shaken
SIT (cf. set, 36)	SAT	SAT
speak	spoke	spoken
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
tear	tore	torn
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won

1. From an examination of the above list, it appears that the verbs of the old conjugation, (1) always change (at least in pronunciation) the vowel of the infinitive in either the past tense or past participle, or in both; (2) never add anything to the infinitive to form the past tense (except sometimes a silent final **e**); and (3) if they add anything to form the past participle, add **-en** or **-n**. How, then, is

---

[1] There is also a past tense and past participle **eat**, pronounced ĕt.

[2] Really the past tense of **wend** regularly used as the past of **go**.

the old distinguished from the new conjugation? Cf. **34**, 3. The old conjugation is sometimes called the strong, or irregular, conjugation.

2. Note with care the fact that some of the verbs of the old conjugation have the past tense and past participle alike, while in many they are different. A common mistake is to use the past tense instead of the past participle; to say, for instance, **it is broke**, instead of **it is broken**.[1]

36. Irregular Verbs of the New Conjugation. — There are some verbs of the new conjugation which, while regular in having one form for past tense and past participle and in forming it by adding **-ed**, **-d**, or **-t**, are irregular in making some change in the vowel or vowels within the infinitive, or in suffering some contraction. The most common and difficult of these are the following:

Infinitive.	*Past tense.*	*Past participle.*
bleed	bled	bled
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
cut	cut	cut
feel	felt	felt
FLEE (cf. **fly, 35**)	LED	FLED
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
LAY (cf. **lie, 35**)	LAID	LAID
LEAD	LED	LED
leave	left	left
let	let	let
light	lit (or lighted)	lit (or lighted)
MAKE	MADE (for **maked**)	MADE
meet	met	met
pay (cf. **say**)	paid	paid

[1] The teacher can hardly insist too rigidly upon a mastery of the verb-forms in this and the following article, and upon a clear idea of the distinction between conjugations. Such a distinction will help toward an understanding of conjugation in Latin, and particularly in German. Moreover, many pupils will be found who do not know the parts of many English verbs so as to use them correctly in sentences.

Infinitive.	*Past tense.*	*Past participle.*
put	put	put
READ (cf. **lead**)	READ	READ [1]
say	said	said
seek	sought	sought
SET (cf. **sit, 35**)	SET	SET
sell (cf. **tell**)	sold	sold
shut	shut	shut [2]
sleep	slept	slept
spread	spread	spread
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought

37. Conjugation of Be, Have, Shall, and Will. — We have now to learn the conjugation of four very useful and very common verbs, which are more or less irregular: —

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
I am	I have	I shall	I will
thou art	thou hast	thou shalt	thou wilt
he is	he has	he shall	he will
Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
we are	we have	we shall	we will
you are	you have	you shall	you will
they are	they have	they shall	they will

PAST TENSE.

Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
I was	I had	I should	I would
thou wast	thou hadst	thou shouldst	thou woulds[t]
he was	he had	he should	he would
Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
we were	we had	we should	we would
you were	you had	you should	you would
they were	they had	they should	they would

[1] Cf. the pronunciation of past tense and past participle with that of infinitive.
[2] In what letters do all verbs, having all three parts alike, end?

VERBAL FORMS.

INFINITIVES.

| be, to be, being | have, to have, having | (wanting) | (wanting) |

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

| being | having | (wanting) | (wanting) |

PAST PARTICIPLE.

| been | had | (wanting) | (wanting) |

1. Give the principal parts of these verbs. 2. To what conjugation do **have**, **shall**, and **will** belong? 3. The verbs **can**, past **could**, and **may**, past **might**, also lack the infinitive and participles, like **shall**.

38. Inflection by Combination. — Compare the following sentences : —

    a. **I love.**   *c.* **I shall love.**   *e.* **He will love.**
    b. **I loved.**   *d.* **Thou wilt love.**

1. What is the tense of *a*? 2. What of *b*? 3. What of *c*, *d*, and *e*? 4. How do we know, from its form, that **loved** in **I loved** is past? 5. How do we know, from the form, that **will love** in **he will love** is future? Note, then, that the word **will** in the combination **will love** expresses time like the letter **-d** in the word **loved**. In our previous study a change in the meaning or relation of the verb has been denoted by a change in the letters of which it is composed ; now we find that a change in meaning may be effected by combining two words. This process may be called INFLECTION BY COMBINATION, and is much employed in changing the meaning of verbs. 6. What verb is used to express futurity in the first person? 7. What in the second and third ?

39. Perfect, Imperfect, and Indefinite Action. — Study the following sentences : —

    a. **He loves.**   *b.* **He is loving.**   *c.* **He has loved.**

1. In what time is the action represented in each of these sentences ?
2. What difference is there between *b* and *c* as to the completeness of

the action represented? The verb in *a* does not distinctly mark the action as either incomplete or complete; it is therefore called the present INDEFINITE. The combination **is loving** is called the present progressive or present IMPERFECT, and **has loved** the present PERFECT. It is manifest that in the past, and the future also, the action may be represented as indefinite, imperfect, or perfect. So represent it in the case of the verb **love**. 3. Do the terms " perfect " and " imperfect " when strictly used apply to the tense of the verb or to its action?

40. The Passive Voice. — Cf.[1] the three pairs of sentences which follow : —

a. **I love.**	*c.* **I loved.**	*e.* **I shall love.**
b. **I am loved.**	*d.* **I was loved.**	*f.* **I shall be loved.**

1. Is there any difference in tense, number, and person between *a* and *b*, *c* and *d*, *e* and *f*? 2. What, then, is the difference of meaning in each case? This difference lies in the relation of the subject to the verb. The combinations **am loved**, **was loved**, and **shall be loved**, are said to be in the PASSIVE VOICE; the word passive meaning *suffering*, or *enduring*. 3. What is it that is suffering or enduring when a passive verb is used, — the verb, or its subject?

41. Conjugation of Love and Write. — Below is given the conjugation of **love** and **write** in the third person singular, not only by simple inflection, but also by combination.[2] Cf. **33** and **37**.

PRESENT TENSE.

Active Voice.

Indef.	**he loves.**	**he writes.**
Imp.	**he is loving.**	**he is writing.**
Pf.	**he has loved.**	**he has written.**

[1] Cf. = compare.

[2] It is not claimed that the conjugation here given is exhaustive; it is, however, complete for the three time divisions and the three possibilities as to completeness or incompleteness of action. Cf. it with the Latin indicative, noting the Latin tenses which cover two of those here given.

Passive Voice.

Ind.f.	he is loved.	it[1] is written.
Imp.	he is being loved.	it is being written.
Pf.	he has been loved.	it has been written.

PAST TENSE.

Active Voice.

Indef.	he loved.	he was writing.
Imp.	he was loving.	he wrote.
Pf.	he had loved.[2]	he had written.

Passive Voice.

Indef.	he was loved.	it was written.
Imp.	he was being loved.	it was being written.
Pf.	he had been loved.	it had been written.

FUTURE TENSE.

Active Voice.

Indef.	he will love.	he will write.
Imp.	he will be loving.	he will be writing.
Pf.	he will have loved.	he will have written.

Passive Voice.

Indef.	he will be loved.	it will be written.
Imp.	(not in use.)	(not in use.)
Pf.	he will have been loved.	it will have been written.

VERBAL FORMS.

INFINITIVES.

Active.

Indef.	love, to love, loving.	write, to write, writing.
Imp.	to be loving.	to be writing.
Pf.	to have loved.	to have written.

[1] It is important to note that comparatively few verbs have such a meaning as to admit all persons in both active and passive. Let the pupil illustrate this with a number of verbs.

[2] The past perfect is often called the pluperfect tense.

Passive.

Indef.	**be loved, to be loved.**	**be written, to be written.**
Imp.	(not in use.)	(not in use.)
Pf.	**to have been loved.**	**to have been written.**

PARTICIPLES.

Active.

Indef.	(not in use.)	(not in use.)
Imp.	**loving.**	**writing.**
Pf.	**having loved.**	**having written.**

Passive.

Indef.	**loved.**	**written.**
Imp.	(not in use.)	(not in use.)
Pf.	**having been loved.**	**having been written.**

1. (1) What four verbs are combined with **love** and **write to** make the compound forms? — For a verb not given in this article, cf. **38**. — (2) What verb enters into every passive combination? (3) What is the voice of **loved** and **written**? (4) What is the exact difference, then, in meaning and in formation of **he was loving** and **he was loved**?[1] (5) What participle is invariably used in imperfect tenses? (6) What in passive forms?

2. A word, letter, or syllable which invariably accompanies a tense and distinguishes it from other tenses, is called the sign of that tense. (1) What are the signs of the future in both voices? — Note that the sign differs in different persons. — (2) Of the present perfect? (3) Of the past perfect or pluperfect? (4) Of an imperfect? (5) Is the verb **be** a sign of the passive? Cf. **he is writing, he was loving**. (6) What is the ending of the past passive participle in the new conjugation? (7) What in the old, whenever this participle has any ending?

---

[1] This is a question of great importance. If it is thoroughly and clearly comprehended and answered, a most prolific source of error will be at once removed.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

42. Nouns. — What is the whole difference of meaning between **he** and **she**, **king** and **queen**, **boy** and **girl**, **son** and **daughter**? **He**, **king**, **boy**, and **son** are said to be of the MASCULINE GENDER, because they designate males ; and **she**, **queen**, **girl**, and **daughter** of the FEMININE GENDER, because they designate females. Most nouns have no gender, since they designate neither males nor females,[1] and are sometimes called NEUTER, which means *neither*. The pronoun **it** is used in referring to nouns which have no gender.

1. Study the words : —

act		execute	
actor	actress	executor	executrix
found		enchant	
founder	foundress	enchanter	enchantress

also **god, goddess**; **lion, lioness**; **prince, princess**.

(1) What endings are used in the above words to change a masculine into a feminine noun? (2) What to denote the feminine AGENT? (3) What to denote the masculine agent?

2. Study the endings of the following words : —

bullock, *a little bull.*	**lambkin,** *a little lamb.*
brooklet, *a little brook.*	**hillock,** *a little hill.*
babykin, *a little baby.*	**hamlet,** *a little village.*
floweret, *a little flower.*	**cigarette,** *a little cigar.*
lancet, *a little lance.*	**sermonette,** *a little sermon.*

What is the meaning of DIMINUTIVE ? Give five diminutive endings.

3. What is the ending, and what is its force in —

> **adornment,** *that which adorns ;*
> **punishment,** *that which punishes ;*
> **atonement,** *that which atones?*

---

[1] That is, English distinguishes only two genders, and the gender is based solely on sex. The Latin has the English gender distinction by sex, and in addition to it, but not in conflict with it, the system of gender distinction by endings. Only those nouns which have no gender according to the English system are divided into masculine, feminine, and neuter, by endings.

What is the likeness, and what the difference of meaning in **atoner** and **atonement, punisher** and **punishment**? Cf. **42, 1.** Note, however, that this ending in the above words may also name an action, or the result of an action.

4. Study the following endings : —

> **He creates — a creation.**   **He feels — a feeling.**
> **He inclines — an inclination.**   **He covers — a covering.**
>   **He possesses — a possession.**

What endings above express the action of the verb?

5. Study the endings and meanings of the following words:

bright, brightness   true, truth   wise, wisdom   safe, safety
good, goodness   wide, width   free, freedom   frail, frailty.

(1) What derivative endings name a quality? (2) From what part of speech are the nouns here given derived? (3) What likeness in meaning between this part of speech and these nouns?

43. Adjectives. — Study the endings and meanings of the following adjectives : —

foolish	golden	wonderful	lustrous (from lustre)	
Turkish	wooden	beautiful	grievous (" grief)	
whitish	royal	blamable	furious (" fury)	
smallish	brutal	laughable	horned	manly
hearty	helpless	despotic	turreted	lovely
misty	heartless	historic	sugared	lowly

1. What two adjective endings above mean *full of*? 2. Which ending means *provided* or *furnished with*? 3. Which has the meaning *somewhat, to a certain degree*? 4. Which means *made of*, denoting material? 5. Which means *like*? 6. What endings mean simply *belonging to*? 7. How would you make an adjective meaning *not to be resisted*? 8. What adjectives above are like this? This last ending, however, has sometimes the meaning simply *like* or *belonging to*.

44. Adverbs. — Note the ending of the adverbs **merrily, carefully.** Is every word with this ending an adverb?

Learn the following list of very common adverbs, with the exact meaning of each, comparing with the pronouns on the left : —

Pronouns.	Place in which.	Place to which.	Place from which.
h-e	h-ere	h-ither	h-ence
th-at	th-ere	th-ither	th-ence
wh-o	wh-ere	wh-ither	wh-ence

What is the first letter of each word on the first line horizontally? What are the two first letters of those on second line? Of those on third line? Give the meaning of each of the adverbs above by using a preposition and its case, modified by an adjective.

45. Verbs. — Note the endings of the verbs in

> They blacken their enemies' reputations.
> They harden their hearts.

What is the ending of both these verbs? What does this ending mean?

46. Letters or Syllables equivalent to Separate Words. — Cf. the letters in small capitals in the first column with the words in small capitals in the second column, and cf. **38.**

lionESS	SHE-lion
woodEN	MADE OF wood
he callED [1]	he DID call
the boy's hat	the hat OF the boy
fondER	MORE fond

Note that the letters in small capitals in the first column have the same meaning as the words in small capitals in the second. We thus see that in inflection or derivation a letter or a syllable of a word has often the meaning of a whole word, and the latter may be substituted for it. We certainly ought not to be surprised if in other languages we find that only letters or syllables of inflection are used where the English uses separate words.

[1] The **-ed** in the ending of the past tense is only another form of the word **did**; cf. **68**, 5.

SYNTAX.

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

47. Subject and Predicate. — As we have already seen, a sentence is simply a statement of some fact or thought.

Let us study the following sentence to see how it is made : —

Midas paused.

1. We have here the statement of a fact. Here the statement is made about **Midas**, and it is clear that, if any statement is made, it must be made about some person or thing. That about which the statement is made is called the SUBJECT of the sentence.

2. The word **paused** asserts or says something about Midas. That which is said about the subject of the sentence is called the PREDICATE, which means simply *the thing said.* Of how many words does this sentence consist? Let each pupil make five sentences containing only two words each, and distinguish the subject and predicate in each.

48. Modifying Words, Phrases, and Clauses. — If we turn to any book we shall find that very few of the sentences consist of but two words. We shall find sentences like the following : —

a. **The stranger gazed about the room.**

b. **It was a young man with a cheerful face.**

c. **To err is human.**

d. **He valued his royal crown chiefly because it was composed of precious metal.**

e. **Once upon a time there lived a very rich man, and he had a little daughter.**

f. **All the beautiful roses that had so many lovely blushes are blighted and spoilt.**

g. **This fabric had been transmuted to what seemed a woven texture of gold.**

1. In sentence *a*, **stranger gazed** would have been a sentence, but we find other words which give us new ideas about **stranger** and

gazed. It was THE **stranger**, and the words **about the room** tell how he gazed. Any combination of words which does not contain a subject and a predicate is called a PHRASE. Since the phrase **about the room** limits the verb **gazed**, to what part of speech is it equivalent? In sentence *b*, the phrase **with a cheerful face** evidently describes the noun **man**. To what part of speech is it evidently equivalent? What part of speech is the phrase **to err** in *c*?

2. In sentence *d*, the words **it was composed of precious metal** limit the verb **valued**, by telling why he **valued** the crown. If these words TELL us something, they must make a sentence. What is the subject and what the predicate of this sentence? By what conjunction is it connected with the preceding sentence? When two or more sentences are thus united, each is called a CLAUSE. To what part of speech is this clause equivalent?

3. What two clauses does the sentence *f* contain? What word does the clause beginning with **that** describe? To what part of speech then is this clause equivalent? What clause is the object of the preposition **to** in *g*? What part of speech is the object of a preposition? Then, what part of speech is this clause?

49. Simple, Complex, and Compound Sentences. — We have seen that every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate, and that it need contain only two words, though it does usually contain more than this, because both subject and predicate are ENLARGED, as it is called, by modifiers, which may be single words, phrases, or clauses. Again, we have learned that phrases and clauses may be adjectives or adverbs or nouns, just as single words are. Phrases and clauses are adjective, adverbial, or noun phrases and clauses, according to their USE (see **19**). Noun clauses are often called SUBSTANTIVE clauses.

1. Note now that sentences *a, b, c* consist of words and phrases, but contain only one subject and one predicate apiece. Such sentences are called SIMPLE sentences.

2. Note that in *d* the chief statement, **He valued his royal crown**, is described by the less important statement, **it was composed of precious metal**, with which it is connected by the con-

junction **because.** Which of these statements should be called
PRINCIPAL, which SUBORDINATE ?[1] A combination of a principal
and a subordinate clause, or subordinate clauses, is called a COMPLEX
sentence. The subject or predicate without any enlargement is called
the SIMPLE subject or predicate.

3. Note that sentence *e* really contains two statements ; namely,
Once upon a time there lived a very rich man, and **Once
upon a time a very rich man had a little daughter,** united by
the conjunction **and.** Are these statements considered of equal
importance, or is one descriptive of the other, as in *d* ? Such a
sentence is called COMPOUND. What is a compound sentence ?
Show, from the above, how the device of uniting two statements saves
words.

4. The sentence *f* is both complex and compound. Show that
it is so.

50. Declarative, Interrogative, and Imperative Sentences. —
Contrast the three sentences which follow : —

> *a.* **What is your wish, Midas** ?
> *b.* **Tell me your wish, Midas.**
> *c.* **Midas will tell me his wish.**

Which of the above sentences is a question?   Which a com-
mand or request ? Which a statement of fact ? Which of them
should be called DECLARATIVE ?[1] Which INTERROGATIVE ? Which
IMPERATIVE ?[2]

1. Interrogative and imperative sentences must, of course, be
addressed to somebody. What case and what person ought, then,
to be expected in such sentences ? Cf. **21**, 4, and **31**, 2. Pick out
this case and this person in the sentences above.

2. A verb, when used like the verb **tell** in *b,* to express a command
or request, is said to be in the IMPERATIVE mode. In English this

---

[1] The pupil should consult the dictionary if he does not know the meaning of
words.

[2] The so-called exclamatory sentence may always be classified either as interrog-
ative or declarative. For the use of **do** in interrogative and imperative sentences,
cf. **68**, 5.

mode has but one form, and this is always the same as the second person plural of the present indicative.

3. Construct several interrogative sentences, and make as large a list as you can of the words which stand first in such sentences. What short verb is often used to introduce them ? Contrast the use of **who** in WHO **is there**? and **The man** WHO **is there is my uncle**. The first **who** is called an INTERROGATIVE pronoun. What other interrogative pronouns have we ? (See the questions in this article.) Where do we find the word to which such pronouns refer ?

4. Construct several imperative sentences. Where does the verb stand in such sentences ? Note that the subject of a verb in the imperative is rarely expressed.

5. Strictly speaking, the interrogative and imperative sentences are not statements or assertions at all, and so not sentences according to the definition (see **47**) ; but they can be so readily changed to the declarative form that this inaccuracy will cause but little difficulty.[1]

51. Use of THERE **and** IT **as Expletives.** — Study the use of **there** and **it** in the following sentences : —

a. **There lived a very rich man.**

b. **He made it his custom to pass a portion of every day in a dark apartment.**

c. **It was far more probable that he came to do Midas a favor.**

d. **There was now a brighter gleam than before.**

Note that, in sentence *a*, **there** takes the place, at the beginning of the sentence, of the subject, **a very rich man**, about whom the statement is made. In *b*, **it** takes the place of the infinitive, **to pass**, following, which is the real object of **made**. What are the real subjects of the verb **was** in *c* and *d* ? Note then that **there** and **it** are often used to anticipate a noun coming later in the sentence, and to suggest that the real subject or object is not yet reached. When so used,

[1] The pupil should have much practice in changing declarative sentences to imperative and interrogative, and *vice versa*. He should also be required to select the interrogative and imperative sentences from continuous narrative, or colloquial prose.

there and **it** are called EXPLETIVES ; **there** retains its value as an adverb limiting the following verb, and **it** is a pronoun used as a substitute and temporary subject or object.[1]

52. The Noun Clause. — Study the noun clauses in the following sentences : —

a. **It was far more probable that he came to do Midas a favor**.

b. **This fabric had been transmuted to what seemed a woven texture of gold**.

c. **Whether Midas slept as usual that night, the story does not say**.

d. **He felt a presentiment that this stranger had come hither with the purpose of gratifying his wishes**.

e. **My desire is that I may be faithful**.

1. Which clause is the subject of a sentence ?   2. Which receives the action of a verb ?   3. Which is used after the verb **to be** ?   4. Which is governed by a preposition ?   5. Which means the same as another noun used immediately before it ?

A whole article has been given to the noun clause because of the difficulty which pupils have with it and because of its extreme importance. The pupil who really understands that a clause may have almost all the uses of a noun and also those of the adjective and adverb (see **48**, 2, 3, and **49**), will have little difficulty with the analysis of sentences.

53. Construction of Sentences. — Study the connection of parts in the following sentences : —

a. **The transparent crystals turned out to be plates of yellow metal, and of course were worthless as spectacles, though valuable as gold**.

---

[1] This expletive use is very common and very much neglected. Let the pupil make many sentences like those above. A study of the pronoun **it** in its various very peculiar uses will prove very profitable. See this word in Webster's International Dictionary.

b. **He recognized the same figure which had appeared to him, the day before, in the treasure house, and had bestowed on him this disastrous faculty of the Golden Touch.**

c. **The boiled egg immediately underwent a change similar to that of the trout and the cake.**

d. **The solid metal so burnt his tongue that he roared aloud.**

1. In *a*, what is the subject of the verb **were**? What other verb has the same subject? What grammatical device enables us to use one subject with two verbs? Cf. **49**, 3. What subject is used with two verbs in *b*? What two nouns are connected with a pronoun by one preposition in *c*? The device (described in **49**, 3) by which words are saved, makes long sentences a little less clear, and many pupils find it difficult to understand (what we have seen for ourselves in the above sentences) that two or more verbs may be used after one conjunction, or two or more nouns after one preposition. This difficulty is increased if one of the verbs is widely separated from its subject.

2. The hearer or reader is sometimes helped to understand a sentence by the use in related clauses of words which suggest each other, such as **so** and **that** in *d*. Such words are called CORRELATIVES. Use **neither** and **nor** in a sentence as correlatives. Use in sentences all the other correlatives of which you can think.

3. The pupil must remember that every word in a sentence is connected in thought with some other word.[1] He has already seen this for himself; cf. **15**. In taking up a new word, then, he must ask, " With what word is this word united in thought? With what does it go to make sense? " It is so evident that a sentence is a complete structure, made by fitting words together, that we speak of " building a sentence," and use the word CONSTRUCTION when we mean the relation which one word has to other words of the sentence in which it stands.

54. **Use of Diagrams.** — The connection of the parts of a sentence may be indicated to the eye by what are called DIAGRAMS.

---

[1] What case and what so-called part of speech might be considered exceptions to this statement? Are such words strictly " in a sentence " ?

Sentence *c*, *d*, *b*, and *a* in the preceding article may be thus arranged in diagrams : —
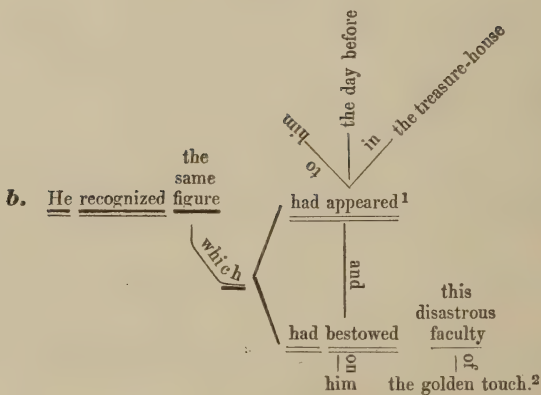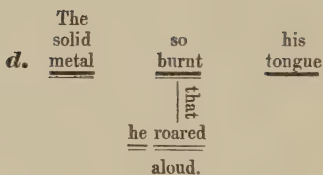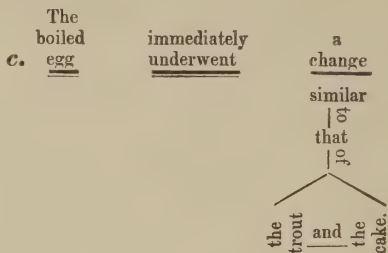
[1] For the present, verb phrases may remain unanalyzed. Later, however, after they have been studied, analysis should be required.

[2] It is suggested that subordinate clauses be not analyzed very minutely. Too minute analysis may prove perplexing in complex sentences, and sufficient drill in the analysis of phrases will be given by the simple sentences.
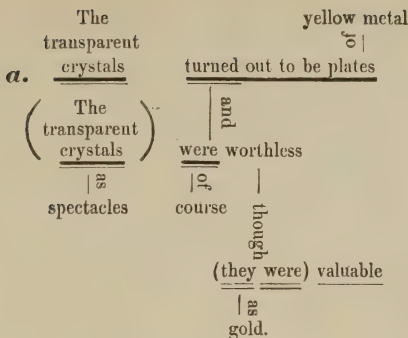
Note in the above diagrams that, while the word which receives the action of a verb, and the noun or adjective after the verb **to be** are regarded as a part of the bare predicate, they are not considered so essential to it as the principal verb. 1. How is this view indicated by the lines? 2. What, in general, is the position of a limiting word? 3. What of a connective? 4. How is the fact that two nouns follow one preposition or two verbs one conjunction indicated? 5. Why is the pronoun **which** partly on the connecting line and partly double underlined? Cf. **20**, 5 and 6.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

55. Nominative. — Study the subjects of the following sentences : —

 a. **He** lifted the door-latch.
 b. **Midas** lifted the door-latch.
 c. **Its** weight made him sensible that **it** was gold.
 d. **The solid metal** burnt his mouth.
 e. **She** had been transmuted by the effect of his kiss.

1. Which of the subjects above do you know to be nominatives from their forms? Which one of them is the subject of a passive verb? Note that it is nominative, although not acting but

acted upon. The subject of a verb[1] is always in the nominative case.

2. Which of the subjects above are names of inanimate objects? Note, then, that inanimate objects are capable of action, though, of course, not of voluntary, conscious[2] action. Make or find three other sentences in which things act.

3. For the clause as subject, cf. **52**.

56. Study the predicates of the following sentences : —

      a. **They saw me.**
      b. **It is I**.
      c. **Her little form grew hard and inflexible.**
      d. **I love odd names.**
      e. **Little Marygold ran to meet him**.
      f. **Midas was called a happy man.**

1. Note that in some of the sentences above, the verb represents an action as passing over from the subject to some other object, — as being exerted upon something. Thus the word **saw**, in *a*, represents action exercised by the subject **they** upon **me**. So also with **love,** in *d*. The other verbs in these sentences do not represent any action as being exerted upon the nouns or adjectives which follow them. Such verbs are called INTRANSITIVE,[3] while those which do carry over an action from subject to some other noun are called TRANSITIVE.

2. In what voice is the verb in *f*? Note that in this sentence the word which is affected by the action of the verb, — viz., **Midas**, — is the subject, and hence in the nominative case ; while in the case of the active verbs in *a* and *d* the word which is affected by the action is not the subject. The noun or pronoun which receives the action of a

---

[1] It is not necessary to say a finite verb, for the English infinitive is not in this book regarded as a verb at all.

[2] If you do not know the meanings of " voluntary " and " conscious," look them up in the dictionary.

[3] Note, however, that verbs usually intransitive are sometimes transitive ; we may say, *e. g.*, **he ran a race.** We cannot tell whether a verb is transitive or not until we see it USED ; see **19**.

verb is called its OBJECT. The object of an active verb is in the accusative case. This is evident, in *a*, from the form of **me**.[1]

3. Note how necessary to the statements contained in these sentences are the pronoun **I** in *b*, the adjectives **hard** and **inflexible** in *c*, and the noun **man** in *f*. Because these words are so necessary in completing the assertion, or predication, of the verb, they are called PREDICATE nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. Note further that each of these words refers to the same thing as the subject of the sentence. A noun, pronoun, or adjective used in the predicate, not as an object but to refer to the subject and describe it, is in the same case as the subject.

4. Note that in verb phrases (like **was called**, in *f*), formed by combining the verb **be** and a participle (see **39**, **40**, **41**), the participle is a predicate adjective describing the subject.[2]

57. Appositive. — Study the descriptive words in the following :

Near him was seated John Alden, his friend and household companion, writing with diligent speed.

1. What is the relation of the nouns **friend** and **companion** to **John Alden** ? A noun which is thus used to describe another without the aid of any other word is called an APPOSITIVE. Such a noun is in the same case as that which it describes. In what respect is it like the predicate noun ? In what different ?

2. What part of speech is **writing** ? What does it limit ? Note its position, following its noun. Such a word is called an appositive adjective. Note further that such an adjective may be separated from its noun by several words.

3. For clause as appositive, cf. **52**.

---

[1] Pupils find much difficulty in distinguishing between the subject of the passive and the object of the active. The subject of the passive is in reality both subject and object.

[2] The contents of this section are of very great importance. Before going farther, the pupil should have much drill upon transitive and intransitive verbs, direct objects, and predicate nouns, both by constructing sentences containing these constructions, and by picking them out of connected narrative.

58. Absolute Construction. — Study the grammatical connection in the following sentences : —

a. **The rear-guard of his army retreated**, THE FRONT GIVING WAY TOO.

b. **Open wide in her lap lay the well-worn psalm-book of Ainsworth, printed in Amsterdam**, THE WORDS AND THE MUSIC TOGETHER.

c. HE BEING SUCCESSFUL, **his opponents were removed from office.**

1. Note that the phrases in small capitals have no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence. Words and phrases thus used are said to be in the ABSOLUTE construction, " absolute " meaning simply *loosed from* the rest of the sentence. Note further that each of these phrases contains a noun or pronoun, and that two of them contain a participle. A noun or pronoun and a participle limiting it most frequently combine to form this construction. Judging from *c*, in what case is this noun or pronoun?

2. The participle in the absolute construction must be carefully distinguished from the participle which is related to some word intimately connected with the rest of the sentence. Thus **printed**, in *b*, limits **psalm-book**, which is the subject of **iay.** See **56**, 4, and **57**, 2.[1]

59. Study the objects of the verbs in the following sentences, and the change from active to passive : —

> *a.* **His soldiers made him king.**
> *b.* **He was made king by his soldiers.**
> *c.* **He taught me Greek.**
> *d.* **I was taught Greek by nim.**
> *e.* **I asked him his name.**
> *f.* **Midas touched the rose.**

1. How many objects have the verbs in *a*, *c*, and *e* ? Note that **king** in *a* is the result of the action of the verb **made** upon **him**, and that **king** and **him** refer to the same person. Is this so in the case

[1] The narrative poems of Longfellow furnish excellent material for drill in the use of participles.

of the two objects of **taught** and **asked**, in *c* and *e*? What other verbs take the same construction as **made**? Note the changes in the passive, and for *b*, cf. **56**, *f*.

2. Change to the passive the sentence *f* above. What has the subject of the active become? What has the object of the verb become? How does the answer to the last question explain why an intransitive verb cannot be changed to the passive, *i. e.*, can have no passive voice? Why should there be no accusative as object of a passive verb? Cf. **56**, **2**, and foot-note. Note, however, that in the case of the verbs **teach** and **ask,** one of the two accusatives is retained even in the passive; cf. **Greek** in *d*.

60. Study the words which limit the verb in the following sentences : —

a. **He threw the ball three hundred feet**.

b. **They fought the enemy five hours,**

c. **They fought the enemy fiercely.**

d. **The mountain was a mile high,**

e. **Let us go home.**

f. **Go west, young man.**

g. **Then the disciples went away again to their own home.**

h. **I go a fishing.**

i. **All aboard.**

j. **All on board were lost.**

1. Why cannot the words **feet, hours,** and **mile,** in *a*, *b*, and *d*, be the objects of the verbs in the sentences in which they stand? Note that **hours,** in *b*, although a noun, has almost exactly the same limiting force upon the verb as **fiercely** in *c*, and that **mile** in *d* limits the adjective **high** like an adverb. Words used like **feet, hours,** and **mile** are called ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVES OF MEASURE; they are employed to express duration of time or extent of space.

2. Are the words **home** and **west**, in *e* and *f*, nouns or adverbs? It is certain that they are used instead of a noun governed by a preposition, and in such sentences as *g*, where **home** is preceded by two adjectives, the preposition **to** is still used. Note that **home** and

west are very commonly used in such expressions as that above. Owing to this frequency of use, the preposition has been dropped to save time in speaking, or, as we might say, it has been worn away. We might call **home** and **west** ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVES OF LIMIT OF MOTION. Why would this be an appropriate name? Sometimes in such expressions the preposition is not yet quite worn away, as in **a fishing** and **aboard**, for **on fishing** and **on board**. We do say, however, **Let's go fishing**.

61. Study the use of prepositions in the following sentences : —

a. **The Golden Touch had come to him with the first sunbeam.**

b. **That was the breakfast of the king.**   Cf. *c.*

c. **That was the king's breakfast.**

d. **He attempted to swallow it in a hurry.**   Cf. *e.*

e. **He attempted to swallow it hurriedly.**

f. **He gave apples to John and me.**

g. **He had a little daughter, whom nobody but myself ever heard of.**

1. What nouns and pronouns in the above sentences are governed by prepositions? These nouns and pronouns are in the accusative case.

2. For what case of the noun is the prepositional phrase **of the king**, in *b*, a substitute? To what part of the word **king's** is the preposition **of** equivalent in meaning? Cf. **46.**

3. What does the phrase, **in a hurry**, in *d*, limit? To what word is it equivalent? Cf. **a man of honor** and **an honorable man.** To what is the phrase **of honor** equivalent?

4. Note that, in *f*, the conjunction **and** does not at all affect the governing power of the preposition **of**, which affects the case of **me** as much as that of **John.** A neglect of this truth as to the conjunction leads to many mistakes. The nominative **I**, for instance, is often used in such a case as the above ; cf. **53**, 1.

5. By what preposition is **whom** in *g* governed? Then does the preposition always precede its case?

62. Dative. Study the words in small capitals in the following sentences : —

a. **Tell ME your wish.** Cf. **Tell your wish TO ME.**

b. **He wished to bequeath HER an immense pile of yellow, glistening coin.**

c. **He came to do MIDAS a favor.**

d. **Forgive US our debts, as we forgive our DEBTORS.**

e. **This town was near (or next[1]) THEM.** Cf. **near TO THEM.**

f. **The stranger's smile seemed to fill the room like an OUTBURST of the sun.**

g. **Alas ME! the pitcher was no longer earthen.** Cf. **Woe is ME!**

1. Considering only the form of the pronouns, what two cases are possible for **me**, in *a*, and **her**, in *b*? Note that the USE, or FUNCTION, of these words is clearly different from that of the direct objects, **wish**, in *a*, and **pile**, in *b*, since the action of the verb is only indirectly exerted upon them. Since the cases are distinguished, not by their FORMS, but by their FUNCTIONS (cf. **21**, 1), this function should have a name of its own. The indirect object is said to be in the DATIVE case. The dative case is most frequently used with verbs of *giving* and *saying*, and those of similar meaning.

2. In *e*, while the adjective **near** describes **town**, the quality which it expresses is of most interest to **them**, and is said to be directed toward **them**. With **near** and **like**, whether adjectives or adverbs, the object to which the quality is directed may be put in the dative. What construction is used with other adjectives which take an object for their quality, like **good, easy, clear**?

3. In all the above sentences, what prepositional phrase may be used as a substitute for the dative case? Cf. **46** and **61**, 2, 3.

4. In many sentences the dative is used in connection with an accusative as direct object ; find an instance in the above sentences in which the dative is used alone after a verb. Be particularly careful in such instances not to mistake it for an accusative.

---

[1] See **29**, 1.

5. We may frame a passive expression similar to *a* by saying **I was told your wish**. What does the dative **me** of *a* become in the passive? Note that **wish** is still retained as object, though the verb is passive, and cf. **59**, 2.

63. **Genitive.** — Study the genitive cases in the following phrases.[1]

> *a.* **Her dear father's encircling arms**.
> *b.* **The polished surface of the cup**.
> *c.* **The suit burdened him with its weight**.
> *d.* **A summer's day**.
> *e.* **A year's pay**.
> *f.* **His mind was in the state of a child's**.
> *g.* **The book is John's**.

1. For definition of the genitive case, see **21**, 2.

2. Note that the word **father's** describes **arms** in just the same way that **encircling** does. **Father's** seems, then, like what part of speech? Think of an adjective which often has the same meaning as **father's**. Note, however, that **father's** here retains so much of the nature of a noun that it is described by the adjective **dear**. What word would have to describe it, if it were an ordinary adjective? Cf. **14**, 5.

3. For substitutes for the genitive, see **61**, 2 and 3.

4. Since a thing can hardly be said to possess anything, we do not commonly use the names of things in the genitive. What similar construction is used with names of things? Cf. *b* above. Note, however, the use of **its** in *c*, and that of **summer's** and **year's** in *d* and *e*. In the last two words, the genitive seems to be DESCRIPTIVE rather than possessive. What prepositional phrases might be well substituted for **summer's** and **year's**. Cf. **46**.

5. Note that in *f* the genitive form **child's** has become independent, as an adjective sometimes does, and is used as the object of the preposition **of**. Then in what case is it? Note further the frequent use of a genitive as a predicate adjective, as in *g*.

---

[1] The pupil should here review the declensions in **22, 23**, and **24**.

64. Adjective. 1. For definition and use, see **14**, 4.

2. For the same form, used sometimes as adjective, sometimes as noun, see **19**, *b.*

3. For the pronominal adjective, see **20**, 3.

4. For inflection and derivation of adjective, see **25–29** and **43**.

5. For the definition and use of verbal adjective, or participle, see **20**, 1.

6. For the kinds and uses of participles, see **32, 33,** and **41.**

7. For adjective phrases and clauses, see **48**, 1 and 3.

8. For predicate adjective, simple and verbal, see **56**, *c*, 3 and 4.

9. For appositive adjective and its position, see **57**, 2.

10. For participle in absolute construction, see **58**.

11. For adjective force of the genitive, see **63**, 2.

12. What do the adjectives in the following sentence limit : —

I saw her going and coming, patient, courageous and strong?

Owing to the fact that an adjective which limits a pronoun is never found immediately before it, pupils sometimes get the idea that an adjective cannot limit a pronoun at all.

13. Study the use of the participle in the following sentences : —

> *a.* **He had planted a garden.**
> *b.* **He has fled.**

In *a*, we can easily explain the participle **planted** as a passive participle limiting **garden,** which is the object of **had,** — **he had a garden which was planted** ; but the participle **fled**, in *b*, cannot be so explained, for the verb **flee** is intransitive, and therefore has no passive (cf. **59**, 2). The fact is that in verb phrases compounded with **have,** the participial form has lost its proper force, and cannot always be explained grammatically. In all other verb phrases the participle has its proper adjective force.

65. Pronoun. — Study the pronouns in the following sentences, and find the words to which they refer, *i. e.*, their ANTECEDENTS [1] :

a. **He valued his crown because it was composed of precious metal.**

b. **Once there lived a very rich man whose name was Midas.**

c. **I, that speak unto thee, am he.**

[1] The pupil should here review the definition of pronouns in **14**, 2, their inflection in **24**, and their gender in **42**.

1. What is the gender, number, and person of **it**? What of its antecedent? What is the case of **it**? What of its antecedent? Answer the same questions in regard to **whose**, in *b*, and its antecedent, and in regard to **that**, in *c*, and its antecedent? In what three respects does a pronoun agree with its antecedent? In what respect does it not agree?

2. The pronoun **one** in such sentences as **any one will tell you**, and **whoever**, as in **whoever fails, I shall not**, have no definite antecedents, and are therefore called INDEFINITE pronouns.

3. To what two pronouns may **what** be equivalent in **I know what he said**? The word **what** may, then, be a COMPOUND RELATIVE, and contain its own antecedent. Note, however, that it may also be an interrogative pronoun.

4. Which of the pronouns may become adjectives? Find out by using them in sentences.

5. For the double use of the relative, see **20**, 5 and 6.

66. **Agreement of Verb.** — As we have already seen from **31**, the verb must agree with the subject in number and person. Show from this rule why we may say, **I don't**, but not **he don't**.

67. **Indirect Discourse.** — Compare the sentences in parallel columns below.

a. **I don't care for such roses as this.**

b. **Marygold said she didn't care for such roses as that.**

c. **He thought, " The best thing I can do for this dear child will be to bequeath her an immense pile of coin."**

d. **He thought that the best thing he could do for this dear child would be to bequeath her an immense pile of coin.**

e. **How you have wet my nice frock !**

f. **He sees or will see how he has wet her nice frock.**

g. **What! then you are not satisfied ?**

h. **He asked whether he was not satisfied.**

i. **Go, then, Midas, and plunge into the river that glides past the bottom of the garden.**

j. **The stranger told Midas to go and plunge into the river that glided past the bottom of the garden.**

1. The sentences on the left are fair samples of sentences in DIRECT DISCOURSE; those on the right, of sentences in INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Note that the former are the exact words of some speaker, writer, or thinker, in just the form in which he spoke or wrote or thought them; while the latter are the same words closely connected and adapted, with as little change as possible, to the grammatical construction of a sentence in which they are quoted. In *c* the words directly quoted form a sentence which is the object of **thought,** but the direct quotation is neither closely connected nor adapted to the verb **thought,** as is indicated by the presence of the comma after **thought.**

2. (1) What change in tense do you notice in passing from direct discourse to indirect, after a past tense? (2) Is there a change of tense in a quotation after a present or future? Cf. *e* and *f.* (3) Is the tense of the subordinate clause of the quotation changed after a past tense? Cf. *i* and *j.*

3. What change of person do you notice? Note, however, that the third person is not the only one found in indirect discourse. Suppose, for instance, that the child mentioned in *c* should report her father's thought about her. What pronoun would she use in referring to herself?

4. After what kind of verbs, as to meaning, do we make quotations?

5. Are interrogative and imperative sentences ever quoted? Can interjections or vocative cases be used in quotations? Cf. *g* with *h,* and *i* with *j.* It will be noted that the indirect form is not only less animated and pictorial than the direct, but that it is also of necessity somewhat inaccurate in conveying a speaker's exact idea. Point out in these sentences two or three instances of this.[1]

68. Infinitives. — Study the infinitives in the following sentences:

a. **Midas used to pass whole hours in fondly gazing at them.**

---

[1] Let the pupil be drilled thoroughly in the peculiarities of indirect discourse both by framing and scrutinizing sentences. Such a drill will make the same subject in Latin much easier.

b. **He could scarcely bear to see** [1] **any object that was not gold.**

c. **Midas felt himself to be not quite so happy as he might be.** Cf. *d.*

d. **Midas felt that he was not quite so happy as he might be.**

e. **It would have been unreasonable to suspect him of intending any mischief.**

f. **He was enraptured to see himself in a suit of gold cloth.**

g. **Little Marygold ran to meet him.**

h. **He beheld the bright glistening of the precious metal.** Cf. *i.*

i. **He beheld the brightly glistening metal.**

j. **She did not walk. Did she run? She did (run).**

k. **She walked not. Ran she? She ran.** [2]

1. For definition of infinitive, see **20**, 2 and 6.

2. For inflection, see **33** and **41**.

3. It will be noted that the infinitive in the above sentences, in one or another of its forms, is used in almost every one of the functions of the noun. In which sentence or sentences is it the subject of a verb? In which the object? In which is it used as the object of a preposition? Note that in *f* and *g* it is an adverbial accusative. Why? Cf. **60**.

4. Note further that, though a noun, the infinitive has some of the functions of a verb. In which sentence or sentences is the infinitive modified by an adverb? In which has it a direct object? But note also that the infinitive does not assert (cf. **20**, 6), and that it is usually dependent on some other word.

5. Note that certain verbs from their very meaning require another action to complete their own. Such are the verbs **use**, in the sense of *be accustomed*, *a*, **can**, *b*, **will**, *e*, **did**, *j*. The infinitive is used

---

[1] Note that for **to see any object**, **the sight of any object** might be substituted.

[2] The infinitive is perhaps the most difficult subject in English grammar, on account of the great variety of its uses. All of these uses will be understood if these sample sentences are MASTERED.

to complete the action of such verbs, and is then called the COMPLE-MENTARY, or *filling out*, infinitive. This kind of an infinitive is very common in verb phrases, such as those in **41**, and is often more essential to the meaning of such phrases than the independent verb with which it is used. The verb **do** is common in expressions like those under *j*; *i. e.*, in negative sentences, and in questions and answers. Note carefully, however, that the meaning of these expressions does not differ at all from that of the less common expressions of *k*. Why is the last word of *j* in parentheses?

6. Cf. *c* and *d*, and note that the infinitive with a subject in the accusative case sometimes stands in indirect discourse; cf. **67**.

7. Note that in *g* the infinitive is equivalent in meaning to *in order that she might meet him*, and expresses the PURPOSE of the running. Note, too, that in *f* the infinitive tells why he was enraptured, and is equivalent to the clause *because he saw himself*. The infinitive then may express PURPOSE or CAUSE; cf. **69**, 3, 5.

8. Cf. and distinguish the word **glistening** in *h* and *i*. If the word **in** in *a* were omitted, what would **gazing** become? Note further that **glistening** in *h* has much more nearly lost its verbal force than **gazing** in *a*, and cf. **42**, 4.

69. Temporal, Causal, Purpose, Result, Conditional, and **Concessive Clauses.** — In the following sentences study the subordinate clauses, and try to distinguish the different ways in which they limit or enlarge the meaning of the principal clauses : —

a. **When he had saved enough money, he built a house.**

b. **He built a new house, because his old house had been burned.**

c. **He built a house to live in**, or **that he might live in it.**

d. **He built so good a house that he lived in it many years.**

e. **If he saved enough money, he built a house.**

f. **Though he had but little money, yet he built a house.**

1. Note that the subordinate clause in *a* tells the time when the house was built. Such a clause is called a TEMPORAL clause. What

are some other conjunctions, besides **when**, which introduce temporal clauses ?

2. Note that the subordinate clause in *b* states a fact which explains the action of the principal clause, by telling us why that action was performed. Such a clause is called CAUSAL.

3. Note that in *c* the subordinate clause states a thought, or more definitely a purpose, which explains the action of the principal clause by telling the motive which prompted it. Such a clause is called a PURPOSE clause.

4. Note that the subordinate clause in *d* expresses the RESULT of the action of the principal clause.

5. Pupils often find it difficult to distinguish between cause and purpose. Let this distinction be learned at once from these sentences. Note, then, that the causal clause states an actual FACT which has occurred, but that the purpose clause does not state a fact at all, but only a purpose, which may become a fact by being realized. Both the purpose clause and the causal clause state a reason by telling why **he built the house** ; but in one case the reason is the burning of the old house, in the other it is the purpose to live in a new one. Can we have a purpose without a person ? Can we have a cause without a person ?

6. The result is the opposite of the cause. The cause must precede the action of the principal verb. The result, of course, follows this action. The fact that both the purpose and the result clauses are introduced by the conjunction **that**, will cause no trouble to the pupil who considers the MEANING of these clauses.

Let the pupil think of other facts, like the building of a house, and then frame sentences giving causes, purposes, and results in connection with these facts.

7. Note that, in *e*, we cannot tell whether he built a house or not, and that we are thus ignorant because we do not know whether he saved enough money or not ; *i. e.*, the fulfillment of the action of the principal clause is dependent upon the fulfillment of that in the subordinate. Such a subordinate clause is called a CONDITIONAL clause, or CONDITION. Is there any other instance in these clauses where there is doubt about the occurrence of the principal action ?

8. Note that, in *f*, the action asserted in the principal clause is not what you would have expected from the statement of the subordinate. Yet granting or conceding the fact of the subordinate clause, the act of the principal clause did occur. Such a subordinate clause is called CONCESSIVE. Note that here, as well as in *d*, the connection between clauses is made clearer by the use of correlatives; see **53**, 2. What are they in each case?

9. Note that, in *a*, the subordinate clause introduced by **when**, though expressing time as its primary idea, also suggests cause and condition. If we substitute for it the participle, thus: **Having saved enough money, he built a house**, the participle suggests about equally the three ideas conveyed in the subordinate clauses in *a, b,* and *e*. Of course, in connected writing, the comparative prominence of these three ideas of time, cause, and condition will depend largely upon the ideas suggested in the sentence which immediately precedes the one in question.

70. Modes : Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive. Conditional Sentences. — Study the verbs in the following sentences : —

a. **Thy will be done.**

b. **How much would the orchard be worth if each of the trees were fruitful?**

c. **How much would the orchard be worth if each of the trees were to become fruitful?**

d. **How much will the orchard be worth if each of the trees shall become fruitful?**

e. **The orchard would have been worth much if each of the trees had become fruitful.**

f. **Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.**

1. Note in *a* how the meaning is changed by using **be** instead of is. **Thy will is done** expresses a fact simply and directly; but **Thy will be done** does not express a fact at all, but our desire that a certain thing may become a fact. Here then are two ways or MODES of viewing an action, — as a fact, or as desired.

2. A verb which presents an action as a fact is in the INDICATIVE

mode; a verb which presents it as desired, or for any other reason doubtful, is often[1] in the SUBJUNCTIVE mode; a verb which presents it as commanded or entreated is in the IMPERATIVE mode; cf. **50**, 2 and 4.

3. Note that the subjunctive in the present tense, third singular, has **be**, where the indicative has **is**. This form is the same in all persons, both singular and plural. Note, in *b*, that the verb **were** has a singular subject. It could not, then, be an indicative, for in the indicative **were** is plural. It is a past subjunctive, and is the same for all persons and both numbers. Note, in *f*, that **slay** has no final **s**, as it would have if it were an indicative. The subjunctive of verbs other than the verb **be** has only a present tense, and has the form of the simple infinitive in all persons and both numbers.

4. Note very carefully the different ideas expressed in the sentences *b*, *c*, *d*, and *e*. Note that in each the principal clause is modified by a subordinate clause which shows that the fulfillment of the action in the principal clause is dependent on the fulfillment of another action expressed in the subordinate clause. Such a subordinate clause is called a CONDITIONAL clause, and the sentence containing it is called a conditional sentence.

5. From sentence *d*, we cannot tell at all whether the condition will be fulfilled or not; in other words, the sentence implies[2] nothing as to the fulfillment of the condition. Give other sentences referring to the present and the past which imply nothing as to the fulfillment of the conditions contained in them.

6. In *c*, however, it is implied that the fulfillment of the condition is unlikely, though not impossible. By what change in the words of *d* is the change of idea produced? What is implied in *b* and *e*? What is the difference in the time of these sentences? What mode

---

[1] The idea of desire, doubt, condition, possibility, etc., is very often expressed by combining the verbs may, can, should, would, etc., with an infinitive; thus, **if he should go, they may go.**

[2] Let the pupil remember that many sentences contain enfolded within them, or in a single word IMPLY, what they do not explicitly affirm. Thus if I say, **Why did you go to Boston yesterday**? I imply not only that you went to Boston, but also that there is such a place as Boston, and that it is possible to go to it. Let the pupil illustrate further by other sentences of his own framing.

is used in the conditional clause of *b* ? Contrast the form and mean-ing of *b* and *c*.[1]

71. The Preposition OF. Study the use of the preposition **of** in the following phrases and sentences : —

a. **A crown of gold.**
b. **The crown of the king.**
c. **I never heard of her.**
d. **Midas was fond of gold.**
e. **The very tip-top of enjoyment.**
f. **To suspect or to convict him of crime.**
g. **He was possessed of this insane desire.**
h. **A matter of course.**
i. **Do you desire to rid yourself of this Golden Touch** ?
j. **A heavy weight seemed to have gone out of his bosom.**
k. **Within seven miles of Boston.**
l. **All of us.**
m. **The city of London.**

1. It will be evident at once that the preposition **of** is used in a great variety of ways and with many different meanings. It will help us in some cases to remember that the preposition **of** is simply a shorter form of **off**, and hence originally had the idea of separation conveyed by **from**. In which phrases or sentences is this separative idea plainest ?

2. (1) In which phrase or sentence is **of** with the accusative a sub-stitute for the possessive or genitive case ? (2) In which one does **of** mean *made of*, — thus denoting material ? (3) In which does it mean *concerning* ? (4) In which is it used with an object to explain the application of an adjective ? (5) In which does it mean *by* ?

3. Contrast the use of the preposition **of** in *e* and *l*. In *e*, **the very tip-top** expresses a part of all **enjoyment**, while, in *l*, **all** is not a part of **us**, but refers to exactly the same people, and **all of us** means the same as **we all**. So in *m*, **city** and **London** refer to the same thing,

---

[1] For the syntax of adverbs, see **14**, 5 ; for that of interjections, see **16**.

and **the city of London** means the same as **the city London**. The use of the preposition **of** in *e* is called PARTITIVE, that in *l* and *m* is called APPOSITIONAL; cf. **57**.

72. The Word FOR. Study the use of **for** in the following phrases and sentences : —

   a. **A dozen oranges for a quarter.**
   b. **To fight for one's country.**
   c. **To send for aid.**
   d. **Good for food.**
   e. **He valued the sunbeam for this reason.**
   f. **To this dismal hole — for it was little better than a dungeon — Midas betook himself.**
   g. **Tall for his age.**
   h. **To sail for England.**
   i. **You may for all me.**
   j. **Imprisoned for life.**

1. (1) In which phrase or sentence does **for** mean *in place of, in return for*? (2) In which does it mean *in behalf of*? (3) In which does it mean *because of*? (4) In which is it a conjunction meaning *because*? (5) In which does it mean *in proportion to*, or *considering*? (6) In which does it mean *during*?

2. Note that the meaning of **for aid**, in *c*, might be expressed by the words *in order to get aid ;* the meaning of **for food**, in *d*, by *to be eaten ;* and the meaning of **for England**, in *h*, by *in order that England may be reached.* To what, then, is the prepositional phrase introduced by **for** sometimes equal? Cf. **68**, *g* and 7.

73. The Preposition WITH. — Study the use of **with** in the following sentences : —

   a. **The general fought with his men.**
   b. **The general fought with the enemy.**
   c. **The soldiers fight with great bravery.**
   d. **The soldiers fight with lances.**

1. (1) In which of the above sentences does **with** mean *in company with*, i. e., denote ACCOMPANIMENT? (2) In which does it denote

HOSTILE UNION? (3) In which does it mean BY MEANS OF? (4) In which does the phrase introduced by **with** show the MANNER in which the action is performed?

2. The study of the prepositions **of, for,** and **with,** just made, certainly shows that they are used in a surprising number of different senses. We certainly ought not to be surprised if we find that some of the meanings conveyed by these prepositions are conveyed in other languages by means quite different from those employed in English.

74. Lack of Precision in the English Use of Prepositions and Tenses. — Compare the idiomatic English expressions on the left with the more accurate but less idiomatic expressions on the right : —

a. **He put it in the bag.**	*b.* **He put it into the bag.**
c. **Where will you go?**	*d.* **Whither will you go?**
e. **Looking up, he beheld the figure of a stranger.**	*f.* **Having looked up, he beheld the figure of a stranger.**
g. **When he comes, I shall go.**	*h.* **When he shall have come, I shall go.**
i. **He hopes to come.**	*j.* **He hopes that he will come.**

1. From examples *a, b, c,* and *d* we see that an English verb clearly conveying the idea of motion is often used with an adverb or a preposition conveying the idea of rest in a place. Sometimes the more accurate expression is not permissible in English ; we cannot say, **they will meet to the corner,** although **meet** clearly expresses *motion toward,* but must use the more indefinite phrase **at the corner.** Sometimes conventional English requires a preposition appropriate to *motion toward* where the sense requires one appropriate to *motion from,* as in the phrase **averse to,** — **averse** meaning *turned away.*[1]

2. In which of the sentences above does the English use a verbal form referring to the present, where the sense is past ? In which

---

[1] While we must not quarrel with the usage of the language, the pupil should clearly understand that the usage here is arbitrary and conventional. If we expect our pupils to be intelligent, we must not rebuke them too sharply when they use their intelligence in saying **averse from,** and **to meet to.**

does it use a present for a future perfect? In which a present for a future?

3. The pupil will see from the above that our noble English is somewhat vague and inaccurate in its use of prepositions and tenses. It is very necessary to remember this fact in translating English into other languages, or other languages into English.

75. Omission of Words. — Supply omitted words in the following sentences, so that the grammatical construction of each word will be plain : —

a. **It was little better than a dungeon.**

b. **And then would he reckon over the coins in the bag, toss up the bar, sift the gold-dust through his fingers, and look at the funny image of his face as reflected in the circumference of the cup.**

c. **The remotest corners were lighted up as with tips of flame.**

d. **This is the day we celebrate.**

e. **He is as old as I.**

f. **Love thy neighbor as thyself.**

g. **He said they were playing.**

h. **I am weary of collecting my treasures with so much trouble, and beholding the heap so diminutive.**

i. **"What is the matter, father?" "Nothing, child, nothing," said Midas ; "eat your bread and milk."**

j. **Who carves his thought in marble will not scorn these pictured bubbles.**

k. **He was born March 6, 1840.**

1. (1) What common verb is often omitted in the above sentences? (2) What conjunction is used before an omission in several? (3) In which one is a relative pronoun omitted? (4) In which two are conjunctions omitted? (5) In which is the antecedent of a relative omitted? For the construction of *b* and *h*, cf. **53**, 1.

2. Note this important fact, — that the word or words to be supplied are very often suggested by words which precede.

3. We may see from the above sentences that the omission of words necessary to make complete sense is by no means uncommon in English. We ought not to wonder, then, if we find some instances of it in other languages which we may study.

ORDER OF WORDS.

76. Study the order of words in the following sentences and phrases, quoted from Hawthorne and Lowell : —

a. **He lay in a disconsolate mood, regretting the downfall of his hopes.**

b. **He had a little daughter, whom nobody but myself ever heard of.**

c. **He gave all his thoughts and all his time to this one purpose.**

d. **He had planted a garden, in which grew the biggest and beautifulest roses that any mortal ever saw or smelt.**

e. **He thought to himself that it was rather an extravagant style of splendor, in a king of his simple habits, to breakfast off a service of gold.**

f. **Your own little Marygold, warm, soft, and loving, as she was an hour ago.**

g. **Will you never regret the possession of it ?**

h. **In those quiet old winter evenings, around our Roman fireside, it was not seldom, my dear Storg, that we talked of the advantages of travel.**

i. **Whether Midas slept as usual that night, the story does not say.**

j. **Then would he reckon over the coins in the bag.**

k. **All these things we debated.**

l. **The child was so occupied by her grief for the blighted roses that she did not even notice the wonderful transmutation of her china bowl.**

m. **But this was only a passing thought.**

n. **Whatever moulds of various brain**
  E'er shaped the world to weal or woe,
  Whatever empires wax and wane,
  To him who hath not eyes in vain,
  His village-microcosm can show.[1] (Quoted by Lowell.)

1. (1) In which, and in how many, of the above clauses do the adverbial modifiers follow the verb? (2) In which do they precede? (3) In which does the object precede the verb? (4) In which does it follow? (5) In which does the subject come first? (6) In which does it follow its verb? Note that in interrogative sentences this always occurs; note, too, that a relative always comes first in its clause, whether it is an object or subject. Cf. *b, d,* and for the reason of this, cf. **20,** 5. (7) In which do adjectives stand before their nouns? (8) In which, after? (9) In which does the preposition follow its case?

2. (1) Note that result clauses, and clauses in indirect discourse usually follow the verb on which they depend; cf. *e* and *l.* (2) Note that adjectives and pronouns have a tendency to stand near their nouns, and that, if they are much removed, it must be where no obscurity would be caused thereby; cf. *a, b, d, f.* (3) Note that the principal subject and verb are not likely to be much separated.[2]

3. From the study of these representative English sentences, the pupil will see that much variation in English word-order is permissible, and that the order is a very misleading guide to the grammatical construction. The only way to succeed in giving the construction of the words in a sentence is to study intelligently the meaning of the sentence.

77. Pick out the emphatic words in the following sentences : —
a. **The general deceived the king.**
b. **It was the king who was deceived by the general.**
c. **It was the general who deceived the king.**

---

[1] The teacher will note the order here, — direct object, indirect object, subject, verb; a somewhat unusual order, and yet the meaning is perfectly clear. The rigidity of English word-order is often much exaggerated; it is hardly rigid at all.

[2] Here is an important difference between English and Latin.

d. It was deception which the general practiced on the king.

e. Very delicious was their fragrance.

f. To him who, in the love of nature, holds communion with her visible forms, she speaks a various language.

g. The wise man travels to discover himself; it is to find himself out that he goes out of himself.

h. After all, my dear Storg, it is to know THINGS that one has need to travel, and not (to know) MEN. Those force us to come to them, but these come to us.

i. Some years ago a ship was launched here with her rigging, spars, sails, and cargo aboard.

j. But, oh dear, dear me! What do you think has happened? Such a misfortune! All the beautiful roses, that smelled so sweetly and had so many lovely blushes, are blighted and spoilt!

1. Note that the sentence *a* contains no emphatic word, and how each word is made emphatic in *b*, *c* and *d*, by bringing it to the end of a clause introduced by the temporary subject **it**; cf. **51.**

2. Note that emphasis always suggests contrast, a strong affirmative suggests an equally strong negative: thus in *b*, it was the king, not the people nor the prime minister; in *f*, it is the lover of nature to whom she speaks, not the man who cares little for her.

3. In *i*, the order indicates that for a ship to be launched with her spars aboard was remarkable, but to be launched with sails was more remarkable, while to be launched with a cargo aboard was most remarkable. Note, too, how in *j* the interest of the reader is increased by exclamations and rapid statements until it reaches its height at the word **spoilt**. Such a *ladder* of ascending steps is called a CLIMAX.

3. Note that the emphatic points in the above clauses are at the end or at the beginning.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

1. Use twenty minutes of every hour in directing the observation and thought of the class to the new points of the advance-lesson; and in no case ask a class to prepare a lesson which has not been thus introduced.

2. Do not fail to require the pupil so to master the text that, with the English parallel (p. 380) before his eye, he can repeat or write the original with accuracy and without hesitation; and with every advance-lesson let the text of the ten or twelve preceding lessons be reviewed.

3. Let every point referred to in the "Notes" be called up in one form or another in the class-room. It is not expected, however, that any pupil will need to turn to all the references to previous "Lessons," which the "Notes" contain. The faithful student will know the text so well that, in very many instances, he will at once recall what he has learned about the usage or the form referred to.

4. In teaching the "Observations," let the words or phrases which serve as the basis of the "Observations" be written upon the board.

5. Insist upon the thorough mastery of the "Vocabularies," not only from the Latin into English, but also from the English into Latin.

6. In the translation of the English sentences into Latin, to insure accuracy, much of the work should be in writing, both on the board and on paper. All the sentences of the English-Latin Exercises should be written out by each pupil and corrected before the whole class. In addition, written tests, occupying five or ten minutes, upon new but similar sentences, will be found very profitable.

7. The Review Lessons are very important, and should be dwelt upon until thoroughly mastered.

8. Much time can be saved and much good accomplished by having the class do a portion of the work in concert. This is especially helpful in reproducing the original text from the English parallel.

9. It is unnecessary, indeed harmful, to tell the pupil everything that may be said concerning a word or form, when it first occurs. Nor should one feel obliged, when a general statement is made concerning a given point, to indicate all the exceptions which exist.

10. Require the mastery of the paradigms, but not merely that they may be recited by rote. The pupil should study and compare them, with a view to ascertaining the principles in accordance with which they are constructed. As paradigms are commonly studied, they work more injury than benefit.

11. Introduce conversation in Latin upon the text, in addition to that which the book contains; it relieves the monotony of a recitation; it fixes the text more firmly in mind; it teaches the pupil to think in the language which he is studying.

12. The teacher need not feel fettered by the division of the book into "Lessons." He should assign for a recitation just so much as he finds is suited to the capacity of his class.

13. Be careful to see that your pupils use the frequent references to the "Inductive Studies in English Grammar." Most teachers will probably find it best to take up all these "Studies" in their order before beginning the Latin "Lessons," or in a parallel course while studying the Latin.

14. It is further suggested, since the method of this book is essentially different from others, that it is wiser for most teachers to follow the above "Suggestions" implicitly, at least during the first year of using the inductive method. The "Suggestions" numbered 1, 2, and 9, are very likely to be neglected by those accustomed to the old method.

66

INDUCTIVE LATIN PRIMER.

———◆———

LESSON I.

Note — In studying the "Text" and "Notes," the pupil will observe the following suggestions : —

(1) Take up first the word **Găl'-lĭ ă**, and notice the number of syllables, the marks over the vowels, and the meaning. After reading carefully what is said about the word in Note **1**, pronounce it aloud several times, each time associating the meaning with the sound.

(2) Treat in the same manner the remaining words of the lesson, but in no case take up a new word until the word preceding it has been thoroughly mastered.

(3) Having mastered the words separately, study the sentence as a whole, pronouncing and writing out the Latin with only the English parallel (p. 380) before the eye.

(4) Understand from the beginning that every word and sentence of the Latin text is to be mastered. Nothing short of absolute mastery will answer the purpose.

1. TEXT.

Găl'-lĭ-ă	ĕst	ŏ'-mnĭs	dī-vī'-să	ĭn	păr'-tēs	trēs.
Gaul	*is*	*all*	*divided*	*into*	*parts*	*three.*

2. NOTES.

1. Găl'-lĭ-ă, *Gaul,* an ancient country in Western Europe, occupying about the same territory as modern France ; cf. *Galatia :* (*a*) vowel sounds,[1] **ă** as the *a* in *father,* shortened, *i. e.,* more quickly pro-

---

[1] The teacher should pronounce these words for the pupils before they are referred to the printed page, and, after the pupils have heard the words, they should be asked to describe the sounds which they contain. Those teachers who prefer the English pronunciation of Latin will omit these notes on pronunciation, and refer their pupils to the sections upon the subject, contained in the English Grammar accompanying this work. Harkness's Latin Grammar may also be consulted upon this subject.

nounced; ī as the *i* in *machine*, shortened; (*b*) the down-stro
an accent-mark; cf. E. G.[1] **7**.   On which syllable is this
accented?   l thought

   2. ĕst, *is ;* cf. French *est*, English *is :* (*a*) ĕ has the soun a class to
in *they*, shortened. (*b*) What is the subject of **est**? Cf e English
47, 1. (*c*) est, *he, she,* or *it, is ;* **Gallia est,** *Gaul, it is,* or accuracy
Gaul is.   e ten or

   3. ŏ'-mnĭs, *all ;* cf. *omnibus* (*for all*): (*a*) ŏ is pronou form or
o in *note,* shortened, never as *o* in *not ;* (*b*) for ĭ, cf. **Gălli** will need
above, and note that we have already begun to use what we contain.
but a moment ago. (*c*) Which syllable is accented?   ances, he
                                                         d to.

   4. dī-vī'-să, *divided :* (*a*) cf. the marks over the letter i in the
first two syllables of this word with the mark over i in **Gălliă**,
ŏmnĭs. What is the difference? The i in **dīvīsă** is pronounced long,
that in **ŏmnĭs** is pronounced short; but the kind, or quality, of the
sound is the same in each case; [2] ī is therefore pronounced like *i* in
machine ; cf. **1**, *a.* (*b*) **v** has the sound of *w* in *we.* (*c*) On which syl-
lable of **dī-vī'-să** is the accent? (*d*) What ending have **Gălliă** and
dīvīsă in common? What are the case and number of **Gălliă**, as-
suming that they are the same as those of *Gaul?* Cf. E. G. **21**, 1,
and **22**, 1. **Gallia** is of the feminine gender. Is *Gaul* of the femi-
nine gender? Cf. E. G. **42** and foot-note.

   5. ĭn, *into ;* note that the meaning is not here the same as that of
English *in.*

   6. păr'tēs, *parts :* (*a*) ē has the sound of *ey* in *they* [3]; cf. ĕ, **2**, *a ;*
(*b*) **s** has its proper hissing sound, not that of *z ;* (*c*) cf. the accent
of **păr'-tēs** with that of **ŏ'-mnĭs**, the other two-syllable word in this
Lesson. On which syllable does the accent come in both cases?

---

   [1] E. G., *i. e.,* the "Inductive Studies in English Grammar" accompanying this
work. It is expected that many, perhaps most, teachers will find it best to have
their pupils study the whole of this outline of English Grammar in course. To such
pupils, therefore, references like this will review and apply knowledge already gained.

   [2] The teacher will find it necessary to emphasize this fact, since ī and ĭ in Eng-
lish have quite different sounds.

   [3] Those who use the English method must remember that, in pronouncing Latin,
e and **o** are pronounced long (contrary to E. G. **8**, 2) in final **-ēs**, and in final **-ōs**
of plural cases. See, also, foot-notes on page 73.

ny words in this lesson (except those of but one syllable)
ed on the final syllable?

-ēs, *three:* (a) What ending is common to **părtēs** and **trēs**?
iat case is used after prepositions in English? Cf. E. G.
ie same case is used in Latin. What, then, is the case of
?

3. OBSERVATIONS[1]

NOTE he mark ⁻ over a vowel indicates that it is long in quantity,
followin it its sound is prolonged in pronunciation, the mark ˘ indicates
that it is short in quantity. The short vowel requires one half as
much time for pronunciation as the long vowel.

2. Vowel sounds in this Lesson: **ī** as *i* in *machine*, **ĭ** the same
sound shortened; **ē** as *ey* in *they*, **ĕ** the same sound shortened; **ă**
and **ŏ** the sounds of *a* in *father* and *o* in *note*, shortened.

3. The consonant **v** has the sound of *w*, and **s** always has its
hissing sound, never that of *z*.

4. Words of two syllables are accented on the first, and a final syl-
lable is never accented.

5. The ending -**ă** is an ending of the nominative singular feminine.

6. The ending -**ēs** is an ending of the objective or accusative case,
plural number.

7. All the Latin words in this lesson have related words in
English.

8. Names of things are not always neuter (*i. e.* neither masculine
nor feminine) in Latin.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **dī-vī-să**, nom. sing. fem., *divided.*
2. **ĕst**, *he, she,* or *it, is.*
3. **Găl-lĭ-ă**, nom. sing. fem., *Gaul.*
4. **ĭn**, prep. with accus. case, *into.*
5. **ŏ-mnĭs**, nom. sing. fem., *all,*
   every, as-a-whole.
6. **păr-tēs**, accus. plur., *parts.*
7. **trēs**, accus. plur., *three.*

¹ The pupil must justify each of these "Observations" by the words in the text
and the explanations in the notes.

5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The marks ⁻ and ˘. 2. Difference between long and short vowels. 3 The sounds of ī, ĭ, ē, ĕ. 4. Of **v** and **s**. 5. Place of accent in words of two syllables. 6. The endings -ă and -ēs. 7. English words related to words of the text. 8. A difference between gender in English and gender in Latin. 9. The accusative case.

LESSON II.

1. TEXT.

Read again the suggestions for taking up the text, given in connection with Lesson I.

Galliă	est	omnis	dīvīsă	in	partēs	trēs, [1]
quā'-rŭm	ū'-năm	ĭn'-cŏ-lŭnt	Běl'-gae,[2]	ă'-lĭ-ăm
of-which	*one*	*inhabit*	*the-Belgians*	*another*

Ă-quī-tā'-nī.
the-Aquitanians.

2. NOTES.

1. **quā'-rŭm**, *of-which* : (*a*) qu is pronounced like *qu* in *quite,* i. e. like *kw* ; (*b*) **ā** like *a* in *father;* cf. I.[3] N. **1.** *a ;* (*c*) **ŭ** like *oo* in *moon,* shortened, *i. e.* like *oo* in *book ;* (*d*) rule for accent ? Cf. I. N. **6,** *c.*

2. **ū'-năm**, *one ;* cf. *unit :* (*a*) **ū** is pronounced like *oo* in *moon ;* cf. **ŭ 1,** *c.* (*b*) What is referred to in this word ? One what ?

3. **ĭn'-cŏ-lŭnt**, *they-inhabit :* (*a*) three vowel sounds, all learned. In what words have we had them ? (*b*) On which syllable is the accent ? (*c*) **incolunt**, *they inhabit ;* **Belgae incolunt**, *the Belgians, they inhabit,* or better, *the Belgians inhabit.*

4. **Běl'-gae**, *the-Belgians :* (*a*) **g** is hard, like *g* in *go,* not like *g* in

[1] Vowels unmarked are to be treated as short.

[2] Those who use the English method of pronunciation will pronounce the diphthongs **ae** and **oe** like the first *e* in *Eve.*

[3] Roman numerals are used in referring to the "Lessons" of this book.

gem ; (*b*) the diphthong **ae** is pronounced like *i* in *kite*. (*c*) Of what verb is **Belgae** the subject ? What is the object of this verb ? Cf. E. G. **56**, 1 and 2.

5. ă′-lĭ ăm, *another* ; cf. *alien* : (*a*) place of accent ? (*b*) the object of the verb **incolunt** understood, as **ūnam** is the object of **incolunt** expressed. What, then, is its case ? (*c*) What ending is common to **ūnam** and **aliam** ? Cf. -ă in **Galliă**. What letter is common to the endings of **Galliă** and **ūnam** ? Both are feminine.

6. Ă-quī-tā′-nī, *the-Aquitanians* : (*a*) Where have we met each of these vowels before ? (*b*) For **qu**, cf. **1**, *a*. (*c*) Cf. the meaning of this word with that of **quārum** and that of **Belgae**. How many English words are used to translate each ?

3. OBSERVATIONS.[1]

1. New vowels **ā**, **ū**, **ŭ** ; **ā** is pronounced like *a* in *father*, **ū** like *oo* in *moon*, **ŭ** like *oo* in *book*. The diphthong **ae** is pronounced like *i* in *kite* ; **g** is always pronounced hard, like *g* in *go*, never like *g* in *gem* ; **qu** is pronounced like *qu* in *quite*.

2. The ending -**ă** is found in the nom. sing. fem., -**am**, in the accus. sing. fem.

3. The nom. is the case of the subject, the accus. is the case of the direct object, and is also used after prepositions.

4. Two or more words are often required to translate one word of Latin.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ă-lĭ-ă, nom. sing. fem., *another*.	4. ĭn-cŏ-lŭnt, *they inhabit*.
2. Ă-quī-tā-nī, *the-Aquitanians*.	5. quā-rŭm, *of-which*.
3. Bĕl-gae, *the-Belgians*.	6. ū-nă, nom. sing. fem., *one*.

Feminine nouns and adjectives.

Nom. sing.	Accus. sing.
ălĭă	ălĭăm
dīvīsă	dīvīsăm
Găllĭă	Găllĭăm
ūnă	ūnăm

[1] Do not forget to associate these " Observations " with the facts of the text on which they are based.

5. EXERCISES.

Pronounce and translate.

1. (*a*) Galliă est dīvīsă. (*b*) Omnis Galliă est dīvīsă. (*c*) Galliă est omnis dīvīsă in partēs. (*d*) In partēs trēs. (*e*) Belgae ūnam (partem) incolunt.

2. (*a*) Aquītānī aliam (partem) incolunt. (*b*) Belgae Galliam incolunt. (*c*) In ūnam (partem). (*d*) Galliă est ūnă. (*e*) In dīvīsam Galliam.

3. (*a*) Gaul is divided into parts. (*b*) Into three parts, of-which the-Belgians inhabit one. (*c*) One (part) is divided. (*d*) The-Aquitanians inhabit Gaul.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Endings -ă, -am, -ēs. 2. Pronunciation of **ū** and **ŭ**. 3. Of diphthong **ae**. 4. Two uses of the accus. 5. Latin for *the Belgians, of which*. 6. Peculiarities of Latin word order in this Lesson. 7. English derivatives of the words in this Lesson.

————

LESSON III.

1. TEXT.

Galliă est omnis dīvīsă in partēs trēs quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī,

tĕr'-tĭ-ăm,	quī	ī-psō'-rŭm	lĭn-
the third (part, those inhabit)	*who*	*of-themselves*	*in-the-*

guā Cĕltae,[1]	nŏstrā	Găllī	ăp-pĕl-lăn'-tŭr.
language Celts, in-our (language)		*Gauls*	*are-called.*

---

[1] Henceforth only the harder words will be divided into syllables by hyphens.

2. NOTES.

1. tĕr′-tĭ-ăm, *the third* ; cf. *tertiary* : (*a*) **t** always has the sound of *t* in *tin*, never that of *sh*, like *t* in *action* ; (*b*) place of accent ? (*c*) this word is the object of **incolunt**, and agrees with the Latin word meaning *part*, which, with **incolunt**, is supplied in thought from the preceding clauses ; (*d*) for case form, cf. **aliam**, **ūnam**.

2. ĭ-psō′-rŭm, *of-themselves, their-own* : (*a*) **ō** is pronounced like *o* in *note* ; (*b*) cf. **ipsōrum** and **quārum** II. How many letters of the endings are common to both ? What word is found in the translation of each ? What, then, seems to be the meaning of the common ending ? Cf. E. G. **61**, 2. What is the number of both ?

3. lĭnguā,[1] *in-the-language* ; cf. *linguist* : (*a*) **gu** before the vowel **a** is pronounced like *gw* ; (*b*) pronounced in two syllables, since **u** is not here a vowel. (*c*) What is the difference in the final letter of **linguā**, and **Galliă** I ? What difference in the use and translation ?

4. Cĕltae, *the-Celts* : (*a*) **c** is pronounced hard like *k* ; (*b*) cf. **Celtae** with **Belgae**. What ending have these two words in common ? This ending is that of the nom. plur. ; (*c*) this ending is fem. ; cf. **-ă, -am, -ā**. In what respect are these endings like that of **Celtae** ? (*d*) **Celtae** and **Belgae**, though having a fem. ending, are masc. because the names of males ; names of males are always masc. in Latin as in English ; cf. E. G. **42**, foot-note.

5. nŏstrā, *in-our (language)* ; cf. **pater noster**, *our father* ; agrees with **linguā**, to be supplied in thought ; cf. **3**.

6. Găllī,[2] *Gauls* : (*a*) cf. **Aquītānī**, **quī**. What ending have the three words in common ? This is the ending of the nom. plur. masc. ; (*b*) **Gallia**, *Gaul*, the country ; **Gallī**, *Gauls*, the people inhabiting it.

---

[1] Those who use the English method will note that the marks of quantity in Latin words have nothing to do with their pronunciation by that method ; **linguā** and **linguă** have the same English pronunciation.

[2] By the English method, final vowels in Latin, except final **-a**, are pronounced long.

7. ăp-pĕl-lăn′-tŭr, *they are called:* (*a*) What is the voice of this verb? Cf. E. G. **40**. (*b*) The subject is **quī**; **quī appellantur**, *who are called*. (*c*) On which syllable is the accent? What is the quantity of the vowel of the next to the last syllable? Cf. the accent of other words of more than two syllables with a short vowel in the next to the last syllable, **Gal′-lǐ-ă, ǐn′-cŏ-lŭnt, ă′-lǐ-ăm, tĕr′-tǐ-ăm**. On which syllable does the accent come in these words? The accent of **ăp-pĕl-lăn-tŭr** is allowed on the penult (cf. E. G. **10**), because although its vowel is short, this vowel is followed by two consonants, **n** and **t**. (*d*) On which syllable is the accent of **dī-vī′-să, Ă-quī-tā′-nī, Ĭ-psŏ′-rŭm**? What is the quantity of the vowel of this syllable in each case?

3. OBSERVATIONS.[1]

1. The ending -ă often indicates the nom. sing. fem.; but the ending -ā, though indicating the sing. and fem., does not indicate the nom. case, and is sometimes translated by the Eng. prep. *in*.

2. The endings -ă, -am, -ā are all sing. and fem.

3. The ending -**rum** is plur. and is often translated by the Eng. prep. *of*.

4. The endings -**ae** and -ī belong to the nom. plur. For different noms. plur. in Eng., cf. E. G. **23**.

5. **Gallī** is plur., and means *the Gauls ;* **Gallia** is sing. fem., and means *the country of the Gauls.*

6. The Lat. **t** is pronounced like *t* in *tin*, never like *sh ;* **gu** is pronounced like *gw*, **c** like *k*, and **ō** like *o* in *note*.

7. In words of more than two syllables, the penult is accented if its vowel is long [2] in quantity, or if it is followed by two consonants before the next vowel is reached. All other words of more than two syllables are accented on the antepenult.

---

[1] In reciting these observations the pupil should give from the text examples of the principles stated.

[2] A diphthong should be treated as a long vowel.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ăp-pĕl-lăn-tŭr**, *they are called* (*by name*).

2. **Cĕltae**, nom. plur. masc., *the Celts.*

3. **Găllī**, nom. plur. masc., *the Gauls.*

4. **ĭpsī**, nom. plur. masc., *themselves.*

5. **lĭnguă**, nom. sing. fem., *the tongue, language.*

6. **nŏstră**, nom. sing. fem., *our.*

7. **quī**, nom. plur. masc., *who.*

8. **tĕr-tĭ-ă**, nom. sing. fem., *third.*

5. EXERCISES.

(1) Pronounce. (2) Translate. (3) Pick out the nominatives and accusatives.

1. (*a*) Ūnam (partem) incolunt Belg**ae**. (*b*) Aliam (partem) incolunt Aquītān**ī**. (*c*) Tertiam (partem) incolunt Celt**ae**. (*d*) Gall**ī** ipsōrum linguā Celtae appellantur.

2. (*a*) Celtae, quī nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur, tertiam (partem) incolunt. (*b*) Gallī prōvinci**am** (*province*) nostram incolunt. (*c*) Linguārum ūna est nostra.

3. (*a*) The-Gauls are-called Celts. (*b*) The-Gauls, who in-their-own language are-called Celts, inhabit the-third (part). (*c*) The-Celts, who in-our language are-called Gauls, inhabit one (part).

4. (*a*) Gaul is divided into three parts, one of-which the-Belgians inhabit, another the-Aquitanians, the-third (those) who in-their-own language are-called Celts, in-ours Gauls. (*b*) Gaul is the country (**terra**) of-the-Gauls. (*c*) The-Belgians and the-Aquitanians and the-Celts inhabit three parts.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Pronunciation of **t**, **gu**, **c**, and **ō**. 2. The English prepositions equivalent to the endings -**rum** and -**ā** as used in this Lesson. 3. The use of the nom. and accus. 4. Fem. endings. 5. Plur. endings. 6. Masc. ending. 7. Principles of accent illustrated by **incŏlunt**, **Gallĭa**, **appellăntur**, **ipsōrum**. 8. Words to be supplied in thought in the text of this Lesson. 9. Three parts and three peoples of Gaul.

LESSON IV.

1. TEXT.

Hī   omnēs   linguā,   īn-sti-tū-tīs,   lē-gi-bus,   inter
These   all   in-language,   in-customs,   in-laws,   among

sē   dif-fe-runt.[1]
themselves   differ.

2. NOTES.

1. **hī**, *these;* for case, number, and gender, cf. **Gallī** III. N. **6**, *a*.

2. **omnēs**, *all:* (*a*) for ŏ, see I. N. **3**, *a;* (*b*) for **s**, see I. N. **6**, *b;* (*c*) **omnēs** has here the same case as **hī**, *i. e.* the nom. (*d*) To what case does the ending -**ēs** belong in **partēs** and **trēs**? Cf. I. N. **7**; (*e*) cf. **omnēs**, nom. plur., with **omnis**, nom. sing.; **Gallia omnis**, *all Gaul*, **hī omnēs**, *all these*.

3. **linguā**, *in-language:* (*a*) for form, pronunciation, and translation, see III. N. **3**; (*b*) **linguă**, *language*, when used as a subject, *i. e.* in the nom. case, cf. **Galliă** I; **linguam**, *language*, when used as an object, *i. e.* in the accus. case, cf. **aliam** II. N. **5**; **linguā**, *in-language*. What difference in translation between **linguam** and **linguā**? What difference in the form?

4. **īnstitūtīs**, *in-customs;* cf. *institute, institution:* (*a*) On which syllable is the accent? Cf. III. N. **7**; (*b*) number of this word? (*c*) for translation, cf. **linguā 3**.

5. **lēgibus**, *in-laws;* cf. *legal:* [2] (*a*) for sound of g, cf. **Belgae** II. N. **4**; (*b*) accented syllable and why? (*c*) note that **linguā, īnstitūtīs**, and **lēgibus** are all translated by the English prep. *in*. Have they

---

[1] Remember that vowels not marked are short.

[2] Occasionally Eng. derivatives are given as suggestions to the learner. The teacher should urge pupils to find many others for themselves.

all the same ending? For an ending equivalent to English *of*, cf. III. N. **2**, *b*.

6. **sē**, *themselves* ; accus. plur. with the preceding preposition **inter** ; cf. **in partēs** I. **6**, **7**, and the free translation of **inter sē**, p. 386.

7. **differunt**, *they-differ :* (*a*) note that the one word is translated by two. What other instances of the same kind have we already met? (*b*) What part of speech is **differunt**? How do you know? Find in preceding lessons other examples of this part of speech. (*c*) The subject is **hī**. When this is supplied, the full translation is *these, they differ*, but *they* may be properly omitted, leaving *these differ ;* cf. **incolunt** II. N. **3**, *c*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.[1]

1. The ending **-ēs** is found in both the nom. and the accus. plur.

2. Some words which have the nom. sing. in **-is** change this ending to **-ēs** in the nom. plur.

3. Words having **-ă** as the nom. sing. ending, have **-am** in the accus. sing., and **-ā** as the ending of another case in the sing.

4. Many single words in a Latin sentence are represented by two or more words in the English translation. Cf. E. G. **46**.

5. A Latin ending is often translated by an English preposition. Cf. E. G. **61**, 2 and 3.

6. Two nom. sing. endings have been found, **-ă** and **-is**, and three nom. plur. endings, **-ī**, **-ae** and **-ēs**.

7. The prepositions **in** and **inter** are followed by the accus. case.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **dif-fe-runt**, *they bear apart, differ*.
2. **hī**, nom. plur. masc., *these*.
3. **īn-sti-tū-tīs**, *in-customs*, *in-institutions*.
4. **inter**, prep. with accus., *between, among*.
5. **lē-gi-bus**, *in-laws*.
6. **sē**, accus. plur., *themselves*.

[1] The teacher must not forget to require the pupil to furnish examples of the principles stated under this heading.

5. EXERCISES.

Translate, and name all the nominatives and accusatives.

1. (*a*) Omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.   (*b*) Hī lēgibus inter sē differunt.   (*c*) Trēs partēs inter sē differunt.   (*d*) Hī omnēs Gallī appellantur.

2. (*a*) Gallī et (*and*) Germānī nātūrā[1] inter sē differunt.   (*b*) Sēquanī et Lingonēs ipsōrum linguā Celtae appellantur.   (*c*) Gallī Galliam incolunt.

3. (*a*) All these differ from one-another in-language.   (*b*) These are-called Celts.   (*c*) The-Celts and the-Belgians, who inhabit Gaul, differ from one-another in-laws.

4. (*a*) The-Gauls inhabit all the-parts.   (*b*) The-Celts and Aquitanians differ in-customs.   (*c*) Gaul is divided into parts of-which the Celts inhabit the third.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The following endings of nouns and adjectives : **-ă, -ā, -rum, -am, -ēs, -ī, -is.**   2. Four of these endings which may indicate the same case.   3. Three which have a common letter.   4. An ending sometimes translated *in*.   5. One often translated *of*.   6. Two endings used in object nouns.   7. All the Latin words of the text thus far which are translated by more than one English word.   8. All the sing. endings learned thus far.   9. All the plur. endings.   10. Accent in words of two syllables.   11. In words of three syllables.   12. Latin prepositions with the accusative.

---

[1] Words not yet found in the text will occasionally be inserted when their form shows their English meaning.

LESSON V.

1. TEXT.

Gallōs	ab	A-quī-tā-nīs	Ga-ru-mna	flūmen,
The-Gauls	*from*	*the-Aquitanians*	*the-Garumna*	*river,*
ā	Belgīs	Mā-tro-na	et	Sē-qua-na	dī-vi-dit[1]
from the-Belgians		*the-Matrona*	*and*	*the-Seine*	*divide(s).*

2. NOTES

1. Gallōs, *the-Gauls :* (*a*) the object of **dīvidit** (at the end of the sentence). In what case, number, and gender is **Gallōs**? (*b*) What is its ending? Cf. **Gallī** III. N. **6.**, **Aquītānī** II. What, then, is an ending of the accus. plur. masc.?

2. ab A-quī-tā-nīs, *from the-Aquitanians :* (*a*) **Aquītānīs** is in the ABLATIVE case.[2] This case is not found in English ; the pupil will learn its Latin uses very gradually from the text ; (*b*) note that the ablative is here used after a prep. — viz. the prep. **ab**. What other case have we had used after a prep.? (*c*) Cf. the ablative sing. **linguā** III. and IV., and ablatives plur. **īnstitūtīs** and **lēgibus** IV. What abl. plur. ending is common to **Aquītānīs** and **īnstitūtīs**? How does this ending differ from that of **omnis** I. (*d*) What nom. plur. ending belongs to the same words as the abl. plur. ending **-īs** ? Cf. **Aquītānī** II. What accus. plur.? Cf. **Gallī** III. and **Gallōs** above.

3. flūmen, *that which flows, the river ;* cf. *fluid ;* in apposition with the preceding word **Garumna**, which is the subject of **dīvidit**. What then is its case? Cf. E. G. **57.**

---

[1] The pupil should not lose sight of the suggestions made in the first lesson, touching the order and plan of study.

[2] The Latin ablative is not easy to master at best. The teacher should not increase its complexity by anticipating difficulties. Let the pupil learn its uses one at a time from the text.

4. **ā**, *from :* (*a*) a modified form of **ab 2** ; cf. *a-vert, ab-solve ;* (*b*) the difference in the use of **ā** and **ab** is the same as that between *a* and *an*, except that in Latin **h** is never treated as a consonant ;[1] cf. **ā Belgīs, ab Aquītānīs**, with *a Belgian, an Aquitanian.*

5. **Belgīs**, *the Belgians :* (*a*) what case ? Cf. **2**, *b*, and **4**, *a*. (*b*) What is the nom. plur. of this word ? Cf. II. (*c*) What two nom. plur. endings, then, change to the same ending in the abl. ?

6. **dīvidit**, *it divides :* (*a*) note that this verb has two subjects, **Garumna** and **Mātrona et Sēquana**, but only one object, **Gallōs** ; cf. free translation, p. 386 ; (*b*) the expression **Mātrona et Sēquana** makes one singular subject, because the two rivers unite to form one river and one boundary line ; see map ; (*c*) cf. **est**, *it is*, and **dīvidit**, *it divides.* What ENDING is common to **est** and **dīvidit** ? What MEANING is common to them ? What then is the meaning of this ending ? It may also mean *he* or *she.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. In Latin there is a case called the ABLATIVE. This case, as well as the accusative, is used after prepositions.

2. The following endings of the ablative have been met in the text : sing. **-ā** ; plur. **-īs, -ibus.**

3. Masc. nouns having a nom. plur. ending in **-ī** have an accusative plur. in **-ōs** and an ablative plur. in **-īs.**

4. All nouns having the nom. sing. in **-a** have the accusative sing. in **-am**, the ablative sing. in **-ā**, the nom. plur. in **-ae**, and the ablative plur. in **-īs.**

5. The ending **-t** in verbs means *it, he,* or *she.*

6. The prep. **ā** or **ab** is used with the ablative. **Ab** stands before a vowel or **h** ; **ā** before a consonant.

7. The rules for the case of the subject, the direct object, and the appositive are the same in Latin as in English.

[1] **Ab** is, to be sure, sometimes found before a consonant, but the rule here suggested will never lead to error, and its simplicity makes it suitable for beginners.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ā**, **ab**, prep. with ablative, *from, by.*
2. **dīvidit**, *he, she,* or *it, divides ;* cf. meaning of **dīvīsa** I.
3. **et**, *and.*
4. **flūmen**, nom. sing. neuter., *a river.*

5. **Garumna**, nom. sing. masc., *the Garumna.*
6. **Mātrona**, nom. sing. masc., *the Matrona.*
7. **Sēquana**, nom. sing. fem., *the Seine.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Aquītānōs ā Gallīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit. (*b*) Gallōs ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit. (*c*) Flūmen est Garumna inter Gallōs et Aquītānōs. (*d*) Gallī inter sē differunt.

2. (*a*) Hī Gallī Celtae appellantur. (*b*) Hī Galliam dīvīsam incolunt. (*c*) Omnēs ab (*by*) hīs Gallī appellantur.

3. (*a*) The-Garumna river separates the-Gauls from the-Aquitanians. (*b*) All these differ from one-another. (*c*) All these are-called Celts in their-own language.

4. (*a*) The-languages differ. (*b*) The-Celts differ from the-Aquitanians in-language, customs, and laws. (*c*) The-river separates these from Gaul.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ablative case. 2. Its endings in sing.; in plur. 3. Plur. endings of masc. nouns. 4. Five endings of fem. nouns. 5. The endings -**īs** and -**is**. 6. Cases with prepositions. 7. Use of **ā** and **ab**. 8. Use of prefix *a* or *ab* in Eng. 9. Apposition. 10. The ending -**t**. 11. Difference between **dīvidit** and **dīvīsa**. 12. The accent of every word in the lesson, with reason for it.

LESSON VI.

1. TEXT.

Hōrum   **o-mni-um**   **for-tis-si-mī**   **sunt**   **Belgae**
Of-these   *(of) all*   *the-bravest*   *are*   *the-Belgians*

   propter-e-ā[1]   **quod**   **ā**   **cultū**   **atque**
on-account-of-this   *because*   *from the-civilization*   *and-also*

hū-mā-ni-tā-te   **prō-vin-ci-ae**   **lon-gis-si-mē**   **ab-sunt.**
the-refinement   *of-the-province*   *farthest*   *they-are-distant.*

2. NOTES.

1. **hōrum**, *of-these;* cf. **3**: (*a*) What ending has this word in common with **ipsōrum** III.? This is the ending of the genitive plur. masc.; (*b*) cf. -**ārum**, the ending of the genitive plur. fem. in **quārum**. (*c*) What Eng. prep. often translates the Lat. genitive? Cf. translation of **ipsōrum**, **quārum**, and **hōrum**. (*d*) What nom. plur. ending belongs to genitives like **hōrum**? Cf. **hī** IV. (*e*) To what persons previously mentioned in the narrative does **hōrum** refer?

2. **omnium**, *(of) all:* (*a*) What is the ending of this genitive plur.? Cf. nom. sing. **omnis** I. and nom. plur. **omnēs** IV. (*b*) In what three respects does the adj. agree with the noun it limits? Cf. **Gallia omnis** and **dīvīsa**, and **partēs trēs** I., **hī omnēs** IV., and **hōrum omnium** above.

3. **fortissimī**, *the bravest:* (*a*) for case, number, and gender, cf. **Gallī** III. N. **6**, *a;* (*b*) the word for *brave* is **fortis**, nom. sing.; **fortēs**, nom. plur.; cf. **omnis** I., **omnēs** IV.; (*c*) **hōrum** depends upon (*i. e. hangs from*) **fortissimī**; *the bravest of these;* (*d*) in the

---

[1] A compound of two words of which the first is **propter**; hence the above syllabication and not **propte-re-ā**.

phrase **hōrum fortissimī**, **hōrum** denotes the whole (*i. e.* the whole of the Gauls) of which **fortissimī**, *the bravest*, are only a part; cf. **quārum** II. which denotes the whole, while **ūnam**, on which it depends, denotes a part; **hōrum** and **quārum** are called partitive genitives, or, by some, perhaps more correctly, genitives of the whole; cf. the use of the accus. with *of* in E. G. **71**, *e* and 3 ; (*e*) cf. **ipsōrum linguā** III., where the genitive has exactly the force of the Eng. possessive genitive; cf. E. G. **21**, 2 ; (*f*) agrees with **Belgae**, the subject of **sunt**; cf. **2**, *b*.

4. sunt, *they are*, i. e. *the-Belgians are* ;· cf. **est**, *it is*.

5. proptereā quod ; **proptereā**, adverb, *on account of this* ; **quod**, conjunction, *because*. Both words together may be translated *because*.

6. ā cultū atque hūmānitāte, *from the-civilization and-also the-refinement* : (*a*) What is the case of both these nouns ? Cf. V. N. **2**, *b*. (*b*) Why is **ā** used rather than **ab** ? Cf. V. N. **4**, *b*. (*c*) Show, from the text, translation, and vocabularies of this and preceding lessons, that the definite and also the indefinite article may or may not be included in the meaning of a Latin noun. The Latin, as a rule, has no separate word to express the meaning of the English article.

7. prōvinciae, *of-the-province* : (*a*) a genitive sing. fem. from the nom. sing. **prōvincia** ; cf. **Gallia** I. ; (*b*) the ending is **-ae**. In what other case and number does this ending occur ? Cf. **Belgae** II. (*c*) Is it a possessive or partitive gen. ? Cf. **3**, *d*, *e*.

8. longissimē, *farthest* : (*a*) cf. its meaning and form with that of **fortissimī 3**. What letters have these words in common ? What, judging from the translations *farth-est*, *brav-est*, seems to be the meaning of these letters ? (*b*) note that **longissimē** is an adverb, and **fortissimī** an adj., and that the difference in the final letters **-ē** and **-ī** shows this difference in part of speech.

9. ab-sunt, *they are away*, or *distant* (cf. *ab-sent*) : (*a*) **ab**, *from*, *away*, and **sunt**, *they are* ; cf. **4** ; (*b*) **bs** is pronounced like **ps**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. New endings : **-ōrum**, gen. plur. masc. ; **-ārum**, gen. plur. fem. ; **-ium** gen. plur. from nom. sing. **-is** ; **-ae**, gen. sing. fem.

2. The ending **-issim-ī** is that of the superlative degree of the adj. in the nom. plur. masc. The letters **-issim-** are found also in the superlative degree of the adverb.

3. The following different partial declensions (cf. E. G. **22**, 2) are strictly based on the text thus far studied : [1] —

	FEM.	MASC.	
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
Nom.	lingu-a (cf. **Gallia** I.)	——	omn-is (cf. I.)
Gen.	lingu-ae (cf. **prōvinciae** VI.)	——	——
Accus.	lingu-am (cf. **ūnam** II.)	——	——
Abl.	lingu-ā (cf. III.)	——	——
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	lingu-ae (cf. **Belgae** II.)	Gall-ī (cf. III.)	omn-ēs (cf. IV.)
Gen.	lingu-ārum (cf. **quārum** II.)	Gall-ōrum (cf. **hōrum** VI.)	omn-ium (cf.VI.)
Accus.	——	Gall-ōs (cf. V.)	——
Abl.	lingu-īs (cf. **Belgīs** V.)	Gall-īs (cf. **Aquī-tānīs** V.)	——

4. Almost all nouns or adjectives with nom. sing. in **-a** are declined like **lingua**, almost all with nom. sing. in **-is** like **omnis**, and all with nom. plur. in **-ī** like **Gallī**.

5. The Lat. has no article. In translating, therefore, the English article must be supplied when the sense requires it.

6. The Lat. adj., including, of course, the participle (cf. E. G. **20**, 1 and 6), agrees in case, number, and gender with the noun or pronoun which it limits.

7. The name of the person or thing to whom or to which something belongs or pertains is often put in the genitive.

8. Words denoting a part of a thing are often accompanied by a genitive designating the whole which is divided (the partitive genitive).

---

[1] It would be well for the teacher to keep upon the board or upon a large piece of paper, so arranged that it can be covered or exposed, a scheme like the following, ready to be filled out as new endings are learned from the text.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ab-sunt**, *they are away or distant ;* cf. **ab-est**, *he, she, or it, is distant.*
2. **atque**, *and, and also.*
3. **cultū**, abl. sing., *culture, civilization.*
4. **fortis**,[1] adj., *brave;* **fortissimī**, nom. plur. masc., *bravest.*
5. **hūmānitāte**, abl. sing., *refinement.*
6. **longissimē**, adv., *farthest.*
7. **proptereā**, adv., *for this reason.*
8. **prōvincia**, *a province.*
9. **quod**, conj., *because.*

5. EXERCISES.

Translate, distinguish the possessive from the partitive gen., and give the agreement of every adjective.

1. (*a*) Hī omnēs fortēs sunt. (*b*) Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. (*c*) Fortissimī sunt, proptereā quod longissimē absunt. (*d*) Ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae absunt. (*e*) Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū longissimē absunt.

2. (*a*) Hae linguae inter sē differunt. (*b*) Belgārum omnium hī fortissimī sunt. (*c*) Flūmen Sēquana ā prōvinciā abest. (*d*) Omnēs quī prōvinciam incolunt ā Belgīs absunt.

3. (*a*) He is-distant from the-refinement and-also from the-civilization of-the-province. (*b*) These are-different from the-bravest. (*c*) They-are farthest distant from the-province. (*d*) The-three parts of-Gaul differ from one-another. (*e*) (There) are three parts, of-which the-Belgians inhabit one.

4. (*a*) All whom the-river separates are-called Belgians. (*b*) The-river divides these into parts. (*c*) The-provinces are-called ours. (*d*) All the-province is-distant from the-Belgians, who are the bravest of-the-Gauls. (*e*) The-Sequana is a-river of-Gaul. (*f*) The-language of-the-Celts is one.

---

[1] When no case is mentioned the nom. sing. is to be understood.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The new endings in this lesson. 2. Two uses of the ending **-ae.**
3. The formation of the superlative. 4. Prep. used to translate the
genitive. 5. Prep. used to translate the ablative. 6. Difference be-
tween masc. and fem. in gen. plural. 7. Fem. endings. 8. Masc.
endings. 9. Two simple forms of the verb *be* in Latin. 10. A com-
pound of the same verb and explanation of its meaning. 11. Rule
governing use of adjectives. 12. Two uses of the genitive.

LESSON VII.

1. TEXT.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod
ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt,

mi-ni-mē-que	ad	eōs	mer-cā-tō-rēs	saepe	com-
and-least	*to*	*them*	*merchants*	*often*	*re-*

me-ant	atque	e-a,	quae	ad
sort	*and-also*	*those (things),*	*which*	*to*

ef-fē-mi-nan-dōs	a-ni-mōs	per-ti-nent,	im-por-tant.
enervate	*minds*	*tend,*	*bring-in.*[1]

2. NOTES.

1. minimēque, *and, least ;* cf. Eng. *minimum :* (*a*) What ending
has **minimē** in common with **longissimē** VI.? Both are adverbs.
What then seems to be an adverbial ending? Cf. E. G. **44.**
(*b*) **minimē** is an irregular superlative; cf. the regular form in **longis-
simē**; (*c*) **-que,** conj., *and,* is always attached to some other word,
as if too weak to stand alone, and is called an enclitic, *i. e.* a word

---

[1] If the pupil is unable to arrange the words of this literal parallel so as to
make sense, he may refer to the free translation, p. 386.

which *leans upon* another. The enclitic is pronounced like a final syllable, and not like a separate word.

2. ad eōs, *to them :* (*a*) What case here follows **ad**? Cf. **Gallōs** V. N. **1**; for other prepositions taking the same case, cf. **in** I., **inter** IV. (*b*) What is the antecedent (cf. E. G. **65**) of **eōs**?

3. mercātōrēs, *merchants ;* cf. *merchandise, commerce ;* for case and ending, cf. **omnēs** IV.

4. saepe, *often :* (*a*) for pronunciation of diphthong **ae**, cf. **Belgae** II. N. **4,** *b ;* (*b*) the adverbial final -**e** is here short ; cf. **minimē 1**; (*c*) limited by the adverb **minimē** (cf. E. G. **14,** 5) ; *least often = very seldom.*

5. commeant, *they resort :* (*a*) the subject is **mercātōrēs,** and **mercātōrēs commeant** means strictly, *the merchants, they resort,* since **commeant** means not *resort,* but THEY *resort ;* (*b*) cf. **incolunt,** *they inhabit,* II. What final letters are contained in both **commeant** and **incolunt**? What word is used in the translation of both? What, then, is the meaning of -**nt**? Cf. -**t** in **dīvidit,** *it divides.*

6. e-a, *those* (*things*) : (*a*) accus. plur. neuter ; cf. **e-ōs 2,** the accus. plur. masc. of the same word ; (*b*) cf. the same ending when used (as in **Gallia** I.) to indicate the nom. sing. feminine.

7. quae, *which :* (*a*) nom. plur. neuter (irregular ending) ; (*b*) its antecedent is **ea ;** (*c*) cf. **quī,** *who,* III. ; **quōs,** like **Gallōs** V., and **quārum,** gen. plur. fem., *of which,* II.

8. ad effēminandōs animōs, *to enervate minds :* (*a*) for use of prep. and case, cf. **ad eōs 2** ; (*b*) **effēminandōs** is a participle agreeing with **animōs ;** it will be explained later ; (*c*) give Eng. words related to each of the foregoing Lat. words.

9. pertinent, *they tend ;* cf. Eng. *pertinent :* (*a*) its subject is **quae 7** ; (*b*) the sing. is **pertinet,** *it tends* (cf. V. N. **6,** *c*) *;* in the same way the sing. of **commeant** is **commeat ;** but the sing. of **incolunt** II. is not **incolut** but **incolit,** like **dīvidit** V., of which the plur. is **dīvidunt ;** (*c*) cf. **pertine-nt, commea nt, incolu-nt.** What vowel precedes the -**nt** in each case?

10. important, *they bring in :* (*a*) its subject is **mercātōrēs 3,** its object is **ea 6** ; note the punctuation, which sets off by itself the sub-

ordinate clause, **quae — pertinent**; (*b*) its passive is **importantur**, *they are brought in;* cf. **appellantur**, *they are called* III.; (*c*) cf. **importat** (*he brings in*), **important** (*they bring in*), **importantur** (*they are brought in*), and **dīvidit, dīvidunt, dīviduntur.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending -a is the ending of neuter nouns and adjs. in the accus. plur., as well as of fem. nouns and adjs. in the nom. singular.

2. An ending of the adverb is -e, usually long in quantity.

3. The ending -t in active verbs (cf. E. G. **40** and **41**) means *he, she, it,* the ending -nt, *they;* in passive verbs the ending -ntur means *they.* Since these endings take the place of personal pronouns, they are called personal endings.

4. The verbs which have been met may be divided into three classes as to the formation of the present tense, indicative mode, third person[1]: one with **a** before the personal ending in both sing. and plur.; one with **e**; and one with **i** in the sing. and **u** in the plur.

5. The preps. **in, inter, ad**, take the accus., **ā** or **ab** takes the ablative.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ad**, prep., *to, toward.*
2. **animī**, nom. plur. masc. (cf. **Gallī**), *minds, feelings.*
3. **commeat**, *he[2] goes back and forth, resorts;* **commeat ad**, *he visits.*
4. **effēminat**, *it makes effeminate, enervates, weakens.*
5. **eōs**, accus. plur. masc., *those (men), them;* cf. **ea**, accus. plur. neut., *those (things).*
6. **importat**, *he brings in.*
7. **mercātōrēs**, nom. and accus. plur. masc., *merchants.*
8. **minimē**, adv., in the superlative degree, *least, by no means, not at all.*
9. **pertinet**, *it stretches out, tends, pertains.*
10. **-que**, conj., *and;* enclitic.
11. **saepe**, adv., *often.*

---

[1] For meaning of these terms, cf. E. G., **31**, 2 and 3, and **70**, 1 and 2.

[2] Only one meaning of the personal ending is given, to save space. The other meanings are to be understood.

5. EXERCISES.

(1) Translate.   (2) Point out, and translate the personal endings.   (3) Classify the verbs according to Observation **4**.

1. (*a*) Minimē mercātōrēs ad eōs saepe commeant.   (*b*) Ad eōs mercātōrēs ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important. (*c*) Animī eōrum quī ā cultū prōvinciae longissimē absunt minimē effēminantur.   (*d*) Ab eīs quōrum prōvinciam flūmen dīvidit mercātōrēs absunt.

2. (*a*) Prōvincia fortissimōrum ad Galliam pertinet.   (*b*) Hī fortēs ad Gallōs saepe commeant.   (*c*) Belgae et Celtae partēs Galliae incolunt.   (*d*) Hōrum omnium quōs Gallōs mercātōrēs appellant fortissimī sunt Belgae.   (*e*) Mercātōrēs quī ea, quae animōs effēminant, important prōvinciam incolunt.

3. (*a*) The-merchants very seldom bring-in those-things which tend to weaken minds.   (*b*) Those-things which tend to weaken minds are very-far distant from the-Belgians.   (*c*) The-minds of-those who are-called Celts are-weakened.   (*d*) The-Aquitanians are-separated from-our province.

4. (*a*) The-Belgians differ from these in-civilization and refinement.   (*b*) He often visits our province.   (*c*) The Belgians are-different from those who inhabit the-third (part) of-Gaul.   (*d*) Those-things which merchants bring-in to the-Aquitanians are very seldom brought to these (men).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The endings -a, -ē, -t, -nt, -ntur.   2. Two uses of the endings -a, -ae, -īs.   3. Active personal endings.   4. Passive ending. 5. Three classes of verbs — a list of each from the text thus far.[1] 6. List of prons. in first seven lessons.   7. Forms of the relative pronoun found in the text, with their meanings; cf. E. G. **24.**

---

[1] The instructor should aid the pupil in this work of classifying his material. Blank-books, properly ruled, should be used. It is of extreme importance that, from the beginning, the pupil should be encouraged to do independent work.

8. The forms of the pron. of which the accus. plur. masc. is **eōs**.
9. Three accus. plur. endings. 10. The meaning of enclitic. 11. A
declarative Lat. sentence in a single word — how can it be? Why
not in Eng.? 12. Preps. used thus far.

LESSON VIII.

1. TEXT.

**Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod
ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt,
minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque
ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important,**

pro-xi-mī-que sunt Ger-mā-nīs, quī trāns Rhēnum
and-nearest they-are to-the-Germans, who across the-Rhine

in-co-lunt, qui-bus-cum con-ti-nen-ter bellum gerunt.
dwell,   with-whom   continually   war   they-wage.

2. NOTES.

1. pro-xi-mī-que, *and-nearest* or *next :* (*a*) for use of the enclitic
-**que**, cf. **minimēque** VII; (*b*) case, number, gender, of **proximī**?
(*c*) What part of speech is it, and with what does it agree? Cf. VI.
N. **2**, *b* ; (*d*) an irregular superlative like **minimē** ; (*e*) note that,
in the words divided into syllables, in this and preceding lessons, as
many consonants are united with a following vowel or diphthong as
can be pronounced with it; but cf. foot-note on **prop-ter-e-ā** VI.[1]
(*f*) How does the number of vowels or diphthongs compare with the
number of syllables?

---

[1] It is proper to add that it is doubtful whether the method of syllabication here
adopted fairly represents Roman pronunciation. It is given here because it is sub-
stantially the method given in the school grammars under "Roman pronunciation,"
and some definite method was necessary. The teacher will find a different method
advocated in Roby's Lat. Gram., Book I., Preface and Chap. XI.

2. **Germānīs**, *to-the-Germans :* (*a*) the clause in which this word stands may be translated without the prep. *to*, thus, *they are nearest the Germans* ; (*b*) the word **Germānīs** is in the dative case with the adj. **proximī**, just as *Germans* is in the dative case with the adj. *nearest* in the translation given under *a ;* cf. E. G. **62**, 2 ; (*c*) note that the ending is -**īs** and is the same as that of the abl. plur.; cf. **ab Aquītānīs** V.; the nom. plur. is **Germānī**; (*d*) nouns and adjs. with nom. sing. ending -**a** (usually fem.) also have the dat. and abl. plur. in -**īs**; cf. **Belgīs** V.

3. **trāns Rhēnum**, *across the Rhine ;* the prep. **trāns** is followed by the accus. What other preps. take the same case ?

4. **quibus-cum**, *with whom ;* two words, **quibus** and **cum** : (*a*) **cum**, prep. with abl.; cf. **ā** or **ab** V.; (*b*) joined to the end of **quibus** and some other pronouns, though with other parts of speech it has the position of **ā** or **ab** ; (*c*) **quibus** is abl. plur. masc. from nom. plur. **quī**, though we should have expected **quīs**; cf. **Aquītānī** II, **Aquītānīs** V. (*d*) What is the ending ? Cf. **lēgibus** IV.; the nom. plur. of **lēgibus** is **lēgēs**, and the abls. plur. of **partēs** and **omnēs** are **partibus** and **omnibus** ; (*e*) cf. the gender, number, and case, of all the prons. met thus far in the text,[1] with the gender, number, and case, of their antecedents. What do you find to be true as to the gender and number ? What as to case ? Cf. the Eng. rule, E. G., **65**.

5. **bellum**, *war ;* cf. *bellicose :* (*a*) What case and why ? (*b*) What ending has it in common with the accus. **Rhēnum 3** ? This is the ending of the accus. sing. masc. and neuter ; cf. the accus. sing. fem. ending -**am** in **aliam** II.

6. **gerunt**, *they carry on, wage ;* cf. *belligerent*, an adj. applied to those *waging war :* (*a*) What is the active sing. and the passive plur. of this same tense ? Cf. VII. N. **10** and Obss. **3**, **4**. (*b*) In what respect does it agree with its subject ? Answer the same question in regard to **est** I., **appellantur** III., **dīvidit** V.; cf. E. G., **31**, 1 and 2.

---

[1] The pupil should constantly refer to the connected text on p. 363.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Lat. has a dative case similar in use to the Eng. dative.

2. The dative plur. ending of masc. nouns like **Gallī** is -**īs**, like he ablative.

3. The ending -**um** is that of the accus. sing. masc. and neut.; -**am** that of the accus. sing. feminine.

4. The ending -**ibus** is found in the abl. plur. of nouns and adjs. declined like **omnis**.

5. The preps. **in**, **inter**, **ad**, **trāns**, take the accus.; **ā** or **ab**, and **cum**, the ablative.

5. With the abl. of **quī**, *who*, **cum** is attached to the end of the word.

7. In dividing words into syllables, as many consonants are united with a following vowel or diphthong as can be pronounced with it, except when such a division would obscure the composition of a compound word.

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

9. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but not in case.

10. A verb agrees with its subject in number.[1]

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **bellum**, accus. sing. neut., *war*.
2. **continenter**, *continually*.
3. **cum**, preposition with abl. *with*.
4. **Germānī**, nom. plur. masc., *the Germans;* see map.
5. **gerit**, *he carries on, wages*.
6. **proximī**, nom. plur. masc., *nearest, next*.
7. **Rhēnum**, accus. sing. masc., *the Rhine;* see map.
8. **trāns**, prep. with accus., *across*.

---

[1] It also agrees in person, but the pupil has not observed this, since all the verbs of the text thus far have been in the third person.

5. EXERCISES.

(1) Translate. (2) Explain the agreement of every adjective, pronoun, and verb.

1. (*a*) Belgae fortissimī sunt proptereā quod proximī sunt Germā-nīs, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. (*b*) Gallī cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerunt. (*c*) Belgae proximī eīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. (*d*) Cum Gallīs proximīs bellum gerit.

2. (*a*) Belgae ab eīs, quōs Aquītānōs appellant, absunt. (*b*) Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūna Aquītānia est. (*c*) Ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent proxima sunt Aquītānīs. (*d*) Hae lēgēs et linguae ab Aquītānīs minimē absunt. (*e*) Īnstitūta (cf. ea), quae trāns Sēquanam sunt, importat. (*f*) Flūmen ā Belgīs Gallōs dīvidit.

3. (*a*) The-Belgians and the-Celts inhabit Gaul. (*b*) Parts of the-divided province are-inhabited. (*c*) One (part) is nearest the-Celts. (*d*) They-bring-in those-things across the-province.

4. (*a*) The-river separates all the-bravest (men) from the-mer-chants. (*b*) The-merchants are-separated from all the-bravest (men). (*c*) He goes-back-and-forth across the-Matrona. (*d*) All the-Aqui-tanians, to whom merchants resort, are next to-the-Celts.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The dative case. 2. The endings **-um, -am, -īs, -ibus.** 3. Forms of the relative pron. with endings like those of **lingua** or **Gallī.** 4. The peculiar forms **quae** and **quibus.** 5. Cases in Eng. and in Lat. 6. Position of **cum.** 7. Preps. with accus. 8. With abl. 9. Number of syllables in a Lat. word. 10. Agreement of pron. 11. Of verb. 12. Of adj. 13. Eng. derivatives from words in this Lesson.

LESSON IX.

REVIEW.

LESSONS I.–VIII.

This Lesson is a review of all that has preceded it. Nothing is so necessary, in the acquisition of a language, as constant and thorough review. One should carry forward with him at least nine-tenths of what he has learned. The preceding lessons contain in all sixty different words, together with a large number of grammatical forms. Many of the most important principles of the language have been considered. Others might have been brought forward, but it has been deemed wise to hold them in reserve. It is understood that the student will in no case proceed to take up Lesson X. until this Lesson, with all that it includes, is learned. Let every word, every phrase, every principle, be mastered absolutely.

1. TEXT.

CÆSAR'S "GALLIC WAR," Book I, Chapter **1**, as far as **gerunt**.

In the review of the text which has thus far been taken, pursue the following order of work : —

1. Pronounce aloud the Lat. text repeatedly.

2. With only the word for word Eng. parallel (p. 380) before the eye, pronounce the Lat., until this can be done rapidly and without hesitation.[1] Do the same thing with the free translation (p. 386) before the eye.

3. With only the Eng. parallel before the eye, write out the Lat.; compare the result with the printed Lat. text; note and correct mistakes.

4. Write out, under the following heads, a grammatical analysis of the material of the text thus far studied : (1) noun, adjective, and pronominal forms, classifying separately in both sing. and plur., (*a*) nom. forms, (*b*) gen. forms, (*c*) dat. forms, (*d*) accus. forms, (*e*) abl. forms; (2) verb forms, classifying separately in both sing. and plur., (*a*) act. forms, (*b*) pass. forms.[2]

---

[1] If the teacher has followed "Suggestion 2" under "Suggestions to Teachers" this has already been done in the class at least eight times.

[2] Great importance should be attached to this analysis of the text by the pupil. It will be found invaluable in sharpening observation and in giving a mastery of forms.

5. Go through the text and select those forms and phrases which, perhaps, still remain unmastered. Read again the notes given upon them in previous lessons. Do not leave them before they have been conquered.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Pronunciation.** — The long sound of a vowel is indicated by the mark ⁻ over it, the short sound by the mark ˅ .

$$\bar{a} = a \text{ in } \textit{father}. \qquad \bar{o} = o \text{ in } \textit{note}.$$
$$\bar{e} = ey \text{ in } \textit{they}. \qquad \bar{u} = oo \text{ in } \textit{moon}.$$
$$\bar{\imath} = i \text{ in } \textit{machine}. \qquad ae = i \text{ in } \textit{kite}.$$

The short sounds differ from the long only in being less prolonged in pronunciation.

Most of the consonants have their Eng. sounds, but **t** has always the sound of *t* in *tin*, never that of *sh ;* **s** always has the proper hissing sound of Eng. *s*, never that of *z ;* **c** and **g** are always hard, as *c* and *g* in *can* and *go*, never soft like *s* and *j ;* **bs** has the sound of *ps ;* **v** has the sound of *w ;* **qu** has the sound of *kw*, and **gu** that of *gw*.

Every Lat. word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. In words of two syllables the accent is always on the first ; in words of more than two syllables the penult is accented if it has a long vowel or a diphthong, or if its vowel is followed by two consonants before the next vowel is reached ; all other words of more than two syllables are accented on the antepenult.

2. **Inflection** (see E. G. **22**, 2).

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.

	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Nom.	lingu-a	lingu-ae	———	Gall-ī	omn-is	omn-ēs
Gen.	lingu-ae	lingu-ārum	———	Gall-ōrum	———	omn-ium
Dat.	lingu-ae	lingu-īs	———	Gall-īs	———	———
Accus.	lingu-am	lingu-ās	Gall-um	Gall-ōs	———	omn-ēs
Abl.	lingu-ā	lingu-īs	———	Gall-īs	———	omn-ibus

We have also met the ending **-a** as an accus. plur. neut., and **-ē** as an ending of the adverb.

<div align="center">

VERBS.

Active.

</div>

Sing.	**appell-a-t**	**pertin-e-t**	**dīvid-i-t**
Plur.	**appell-a-nt**	**pertin-e-nt**	**dīvid-u-nt**

<div align="center">

Passive.

</div>

Sing.	——	——	——
Plur.	**appell-a-ntur**	**(pertin-e-ntur)**[1]	**dīvid-u-ntur**

<div align="center">

OBSERVATIONS ON THE ABOVE.

</div>

Note that the declension of **lingua** above is complete. A vocative case, the same in use as the Eng. vocative (see E. G. **21**, 4), is very rarely found in Caesar. Its form, as in Eng., is the same as the nom., with an exception which will be learned later.

The dat. sing. and the dat. plur., of a noun with nom. sing. in **-a** has not yet been used, but the former is the same as the gen. sing., and the latter the same as the abl. plural. The accus. plur. ending, which has not yet been used, differs from the ending of **Gall-ōs** in the same respect that the ending of **lingu-ārum** differs from that of **Gall-ōrum**.

Note that the form **lingua** is found in all the cases except the dat. and abl. plural. Here the absence of **a** is only apparent, for **linguīs** is really a contracted form for **lingua-is**. A part of a word which, like **lingua**, remains unchanged throughout its inflection, is called its STEM. Nouns like **lingua** are often called **A** nouns, and belong to what is called the FIRST declension.

3. Use of cases. — The uses of the cases thus far met with are the same as in Eng., with these exceptions : (*a*) the abl. case, not found in Eng., is sometimes translated by the Eng. prep. *in*, and is used after the preps. **ā** or **ab**, and **cum** ; (*b*) the genitive has a partitive as well as a possessive use.

4. Agreement. — The four rules of agreement relating to the appositive, verb, pron., and adj. are the same as in Eng., except

---

[1] This verb, being intransitive, is never found in the passive.

that the adj. agrees with its noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case ; cf. E. G. **25.**

5. **Translation.** — In translating, two or more Eng. words may represent but one word of the Latin. Thus an Eng. prep. with its case may be required to represent the Lat. gen. or abl., the Eng. article with its noun to represent a Lat. noun, and an Eng. personal pron. with a verb or a verb phrase to represent a single verb form in Latin.[1]

On the other hand, but one Eng. word may be represented by two or more in Lat. ; thus, **mercātōrēs ad eōs commeant** may be translated, *merchants visit them.*

6. **Gender.** — In Lat. all names of males are masc., all names of females fem. ; the gender of other words, with a few apparent exceptions to be noticed later, is determined by their endings. All words in Cæsar having the nom. sing. ending -**a** are fem. (except names of males), and are declined like **lingua.** All nouns having the nom. plur. ending -**ī** are masc., and are declined like **Gallī.** Cf. gender in Eng., E. G. **42.**

7. **Peculiarities of certain words.** — (*a*) The prep. **cum** is appended to certain pronominal forms, but with other words has the usual position of preps. ; (*b*) -**que** is always appended to some other word ; (*c*) **ā** stands before words beginning with a consonant, **ab** before those beginning with a vowel.

3. WORD REVIEW.

Pupils should go very rapidly through the following lists, translating, and giving the case, number, and, so far as the lessons provide for it, the gender, of all nouns, prons., and adjectives.

VERB FORMS.

1. absunt	5. dīvidit	8. est	11. incolunt
2. appellantur	6. dīvīsa	9. gerunt	12. pertinent
3. commeant	7. effēminandōs	10. important	13. sunt
4. differunt			

---

[1] The hyphen, which has reminded the pupil of this fact, will be generally omitted in the Eng.-Lat. Exercises hereafter.

NOUN, PRONOMINAL, AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

1. aliam	13. eōs	25. ipsōrum	36. proximī
2. animōs	14. flūmen	26. lēgibus	37. quae
3. Aquītānī	15. fortissimī	27. linguā	38. quārum
4. Aquītānīs	16. Gallī	28. Mātrona	39. quī
5. Belgae	17. Gallia	29. mercātōrēs	40. quibus
6. Belgīs	18. Gallōs	30. nostrā	41. Rhēnum
7. bellum	19. Garumna	31. omnēs	42. sē
8. Celtae	20. Germānīs	32. omnis	43. Sēquana
9. cultū	21. hī	33. omnium	44. tertiam
10. dīvīsa	22. hōrum	34. partēs	45. trēs
11. ea	23. hūmānitāte	35. prōvinciae	46. ūnam
12. effēminandōs	24. īnstitūtīs		

ADVERBS.	PREPOSITIONS.	CONJUNCTIONS.
1. continenter	1. ā	1. atque
2. longissimē	2. ab	2. et
3. minimē	3. ad	3. -que
4. productereā	4. cum	4. quod
5. saepe	5. in	
	6. inter	
	7. trāns	

4. EXERCISES.

1. Conversation. — Quī Galliam incolunt?

Belgae et Celtae et Aquītānī Galliam incolunt.

Quī Gallōrum fortissimī sunt?

Belgae Gallōrum fortissimī sunt.

Cūr *(why)* Belgae fortissimī sunt?

Proptereā quod prōvincia, ā quā ea quae animōs effēminant mercātōrēs important, ab hīs longissimē abest, atque proximī Germānīs fortibus sunt.

Quōrum est prōvincia?

Nostra est prōvincia.

Quōrum linguā Celtae, quī trāns Garumnam incolunt, Gallī appellantur?

Nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur.

Quōrum linguam mercātōrēs important?

Nostram linguam important.

Quōrum est " nostra" lingua?

Rōmānōrum est.

2. For translation into Latin. — There are three parts of Gaul into which the Garumna and the Seine divide it.[1] These parts are inhabited by the Belgians, the Celts, and the Aquitanians, whose languages and laws differ from one another. The Seine river is between the Belgians and the Celts, the Garumna between the Celts and the Aquitanians. A Roman province is next to the Aquitanians, and very far distant from the Belgians. Merchants from the province often visit the nearest Gauls and weaken their minds. Cæsar calls the Belgians the bravest of all the Gauls. These Belgians stretch out to the Rhine, and are next to the Germans, with whom they wage war most bravely. The Germans differ in refinement from the Gauls who live nearest the province.

[1] Note the case and gender required for this word. The pron., of which we have had the forms **e-a**, neut. and **e-ōs** masc., is found in all genders.
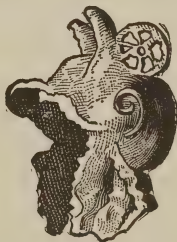
GALLIC HELMETS OF LEATHER.

LESSON X.

1. TEXT.

Quā	dē	causā	Hel-vē-ti-ī[1]	quoque	reliquōs
Which	*from*	*cause*	*the-Helvetians*	*also*	*the-rest-of*

Gallōs	virtūte	praecēdunt.
the-Gauls	*in-valor*	*surpass.*

2. NOTES.

1. quā dē causā, *for this reason:* (*a*) the diphthong **au** (in **causa**) is pronounced like *ow* in *how;* (*b*) **quā** is here a pronominal adj. agreeing with **causā**; (*c*) for its 1st decl. form, cf. **quārum** II. and IX. **2**, **2**; (*d*) note that the Lat. relative shows difference in gender by its endings; cf. **quī**, nom. plur. masc., VIII., and **quae**, nom. plur. neut., VII. How far is this so in Eng.? (*e*) note that the relative **quā** stands in the principal clause at the beginning of the sentence, and is translated by the demonstrative pron. (see E. G., **24**, 1) *this.* (*f*) Give the preps. used with the abl. so far as you now know them.

2. reliquōs Gallōs, *the-rest-of the-Gauls;* cf. *relique, relic:* (*a*) **reliquōs** is an adj. agreeing with **Gallōs**; (*b*) note its peculiar translation; *of* in this translation is part of the meaning of the adj. **reliquōs**, and not the translation of a genitive.

3. virtūte, *in-valor:* (*a*) an abl. sing.; cf. **hūmānitāte** VI.; (*b*) cf. its translation and use with those of **linguā** IV.; ablatives which, like **linguā** and **virtūte**, limit the verb by telling in what respect its action is true, are called abls. of RESPECT.

---

[1] Syllabication in the "Text" will hereafter be discontinued except in special cases. What difference in spelling between **Helvē-ti-ī** and other nouns in **-ī** like **Gallī** and **Germānī** does it here make prominent? Each pupil for himself will divide words into syllables according to the rules already learned.

4. **praecēdunt**, *they go before, surpass :* (*a*) compounded of **prae,** *before*, and **cēdunt**, *they go ;* cf. **absunt** VI. N. **9.** (*b*) What is its subject and what its object ? How do you know subject and object by their endings ? Could **Helvētiī** be the subject if it came AFTER **Gallōs ?** Cf. **ūnam incolunt Belgae** II.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The relative, like *which* and *what* in Eng., is sometimes an adj.

2. The relative has different forms for each of the three Latin genders.

3. The relative is not confined to subordinate clauses as it usually is in English ; it often stands in a principal clause at the beginning of a sentence, and must then be translated by the demonstrative or by the demonstrative with a connective.[1]

4. The preps. **ā**, **ab**, **cum**, and **dē** take the ablative.

5. The abl. without a prep. is used to show in what RESPECT a statement is true.

6. The prep. *of* is not always to be translated by the genitive.

7. The diphthong **au** is pronounced like *ow* in *how*.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **causa**, *cause, reason.*[2]
2. **dē**, prep. with abl., *from, down from, concerning, for.*
3. **Helvētiī**, nom. plur. masc., *the Helvetians ;* see map. What nation now occupies the territory formerly occupied by the Helvetians ?
4. **praecēdit**, *he goes before, surpasses.*
5. **quoque**, conj., *also.*
6. **reliquī**, adj., nom. plur. masc., *the rest of.*
7. **virtūte**, abl. sing., *virtue, valor.*

[1] The Lat. relative, like the Eng. (cf. E. G., **20**, 5), is always equivalent to a demonstrative or personal pron. and a connective, but a connective at the beginning of an Eng. sentence is often useless or even misleading. The teacher may consult on this point, A. S. Hill's Rhetoric, pp. 116 and 117.

[2] What is its gender ? See IX. **2**, 6.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **causa** completely.   (*b*) Decline **Helvētiī** in all the cases you know.   (*c*) Decline **reliquōs Gallōs** together in the plural. (*d*) Write all the forms you know of **praecēdunt.**

2. (*a*) Belgae et Helvētiī cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerunt. (*b*) Belgae et Helvētiī proximī Germānīs sunt.   (*c*) Reliquī Gallī ab Helvētiīs virtūte praecēduntur.   (*d*) Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs cultū minimē praecēdunt.

3. (*a*) Prōvincia, quam mercātōrēs incolunt, proxima Helvētiīs est. (*b*) Mercātōrēs ad Belgās minimē saepe commeant ; quā [1] dē causā Gallōrum Belgae fortissimī sunt.   (*c*) Aquītānī, ad quōs mercātōrēs saepissimē commeant, ā Belgīs animīs differunt.   (*d*) Helvētiī ā reliquīs Celtīs, ā quibus virtūte differunt, minimē absunt.

4. (*a*) The Helvetians are between the province and the Germans. (*b*) The river divides their province into parts.   (*c*) These excel [2] the-rest-of the Belgians in bravery.   (*d*) The Belgians are farthest distant from the civilization of the province.   For this reason they excel the Celts in valor.   (*e*) The province which they inhabit is ours.

5. (*a*) The Germans, who are distant from the province, wage war with the Helvetians.   (*b*) Cæsar wages war with those who surpass the Aquitanians in valor.   (*c*) He brings in these-things to those with whom he dwells.   (*d*) The bravest do not dwell nearest the province from which the merchants bring in these-things.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Pronunciation of diphthongs **ae** and **au**.   2. All the forms of the relative yet discovered.   3. The classification of these forms by gender.   4. The uses of the relative.   5. The meaning of **reliquī.**

---

[1] How may **quā** be best translated here ?

[2] The pupil will use the word for which the meaning *surpass* is given in the vocabulary. It would be impossible to give all possible Eng. meanings in the vocabularies, and the pupil is expected to use his intelligence. What is the word for *bravery* just beyond ?

6. All the preps. yet used.   7. Peculiarities in use of two of them.
8. Eng. words related to Lat. words in this lesson.   9. Two uses of
in the ablative.   10. Compounds of preps. in English and in Latin.
11. Variable position of object and subject in Latin.

LESSON XI.

1. TEXT.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte

praecēdunt,   quod   ferē   co-tī-di-ā-nīs proe-li-īs   cum
because almost   (in) daily   battles   with

Germānīs   contendunt.
the-Germans   they-contend.

2 NOTES.

1. ferē : (*a*) part of speech and ending? Cf. **minimē** VII.
N. **1**, *a ;* (*b*) limits the adj. **cotīdiānīs**.

2. proe-li-īs, *in* or *by, battles :* (*a*) diphthong **oe** $=$ *oi* in *coin ;*
(*b*) for case, cf. **īnstitūtīs** IV. and **Aquītānīs** V.; (*c*) what differ-
ence in the meaning of *in*, used to translate **proeliīs**, and the *in* used
to translate **īnstitūtīs** IV. ?

3. cum Germānīs : (*a*) note that **cum** here precedes its noun
and is not attached to it; cf. **quibuscum** VIII. N. **4**, *b.* (*b*) What
is its case ? What is the case of the same form **Germānīs** in VIII. ?

4. contendunt : (*a*) What is the subject of this verb ? (*b*) In
what part of its clause does **contendunt** stand ? What proportion of
the verbs thus far used have the same position in their clauses as this
verb ?[1] (*c*) Note that the verb of which **est** and **sunt** are forms does
not have the same position as the other verbs.

---

[1] Let the teacher see to it that the pupil gives a precise answer, secured by
actual count of the verbs. · The connected text on p. 363 should be referred to, not
the text at the head of each lesson.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The diphthong **oe** is pronounced like *oi* in *coin*.

2. The prep. *in* is not always represented in Latin by an abl. of respect.

3. Lat. verbs, except the verb of which **est** and **sunt** are forms, have a marked tendency to stand last in their clauses.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **contendit**, *he stretches vigorously, strives, contends, hastens.*

2. **cōtidiānī**, nom. plur. masc., *daily.*

3. **ferē**, adv., *almost.*

4. **proeliīs**, dat. or abl. plur., *battles.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Helvētiī cum Germānīs ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs contendunt. (*b*) Proximī sunt Germānīs quibuscum ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs contendunt. (*c*) Minimē cum Belgīs Aquītānī proeliīs contendunt. (*d*) Ad Rhēnum ā prōvinciā Rōmānōrum Cæsar contendit.

2. Conversation. — Quā dē causā Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt?

Quod proximī Germānīs sunt et cum hīs saepissimē proeliīs contendunt.

Ubi (*where*) Germānī incolunt?

Trāns Rhēnum Germānī incolunt.

Mercātōrēs-ne[1] ad Germānōs commeant?

Minimē saepe mercātōrēs ad Germānōs commeant.

Germānīne sunt fortēs?

Fortissimī sunt Germānī.

---

[1] **-ne**, an enclitic like **-que** VII., shows that a question is asked. It is not translated by any separate word. How is the question introduced in English? Cf. E. G. **68**, *j* and 5.

3. (*a*) The Germans are distant from the Romans. (*b*) The Germans contend with the Helvetians. (*c*) He contends with these. (*d*) The Germans are not weakened in courage (minds) by the merchants.

4. (*a*) The Germans, Belgians, and Helvetians are brave. (*b*) They very seldom bring in those things which tend to weaken (their) minds. (*c*) A river divides the Gauls from the Germans. (*d*) The Gauls, whom the Germans surpass in valor, are divided into parts.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Pronunciation of the three diphthongs, **ae**, **au**, **oe**. 2. An ending of the adv. 3. Two uses of the adverb. 4. Different meanings of the prep. *in*. 5. Position of **cum**. 6. Two or more uses of -**īs**, -**ae**, -**ēs**, -**a**. 7. Position of verbs. 8. Accent of the words in this lesson.

LESSON XII.

1. TEXT.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs
when either from-their-own boundaries them

prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum
they-keep-away or themselves in their boundaries war

gerunt.
wage.

2. NOTES.

1. cum, conj., *when :* (*a*) also written **quum** ; (*b*) not to be confounded with the prep. **cum** ; cf. XI.

2. suīs, *their* or *their own :* (*a*) possessive adj. limiting **fīnibus ;** (*b*) cf. the corresponding reflexive **sē** (IV. N. **6**) which always takes the place of a noun and has no adj. force.

3. fīnibus, *from boundaries ;* cf. *confines, finite :* (*a*) for case, cf. **lēgibus** IV. and **quibus** VIII. N. **4,** *c* and *d ;* (*b*) the nom. sing. is **fīnis,** *end, limit ;* cf. **omnis** I ; (*c*) note that the case here denotes removal or separation, and is used with **prohibent,** *they keep away ;* (*d*) cf. **ab Aquītānīs** V., **ā cultū** VI., and note that the abl. of separation is used sometimes with, and sometimes without, a preposition.

4. prohibent : for form, cf. **pertinent** VII., and all the verb forms in IX. **2, 2**

5. aut : (*a*) for diphthong **au,** cf. **causā** X. ; (*b*) note that **aut** is repeated in this sentence. What difference in its translation do you note ?

6. ipsī : cf. **ipsōrum** III. ; agrees with **Helvētiī,** the subject of **prohibent.**

7. eōrum, *of them, their ;* note that **eōrum** and also **eōs,** just before, refer to **Germānīs,** and not to the subject of the clause, while **suīs** in **suīs fīnibus** refers to **Helvētiī,** the subject of **prohibent ;** note further that **sē** IV. refers to the subject of **differunt,** while **eōs** and **ea** in VII. do not refer to the subject of the sentence in which they stand.

8. in fīnibus, *in boundaries ;* note the meaning of the prep. **in** and the case used after it ; cf. **in partēs** I.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. With the accusative, the preposition **in** expresses motion toward a place and is translated *into ;* with the ablative it expresses position in a place and is translated *in.*

2. The form **cum** may be a conj. meaning *when,* as well as a prep. meaning *with.*

3. The pron. of which the form **suī** is the nom. plur. masc., is an adj. (while referring to a noun or pron.), but the pron. of which **sē** is a form has no adj. force.

4. The pronouns of which **suī** and **sē** are forms must always refer

to the subject of some verb in the sentence, but the pron. having the gen. plur. form **eōrum**, *their*, need not so refer.

5. The abl. regularly expresses separation, sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition.

6. When the conj. **aut**, *or*, is repeated, the first **aut** is translated *either*.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **aut**, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

2. **cum**, conj., *when, since, although.*

3. **fīnis**, *an end;* **fīnēs**, plur., *boundaries, territory.*

4. **prohibet**, *he keeps out, keeps away.*

5. **suī**, nom. plur. masc., *his, her, its, their.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Write all the forms you know of **fīnibus**. (*b*) Of **ipsī**. (*c*) Of **prohibent**. (*d*) Of **gerunt**.

2. (*a*) Helvētiī aut suīs fīnibus Germānōs prohibent, aut ipsī in Germānōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. (*b*) Ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum Helvētiī contendunt. (*c*) Fīnēs eōrum ad Rhēnum pertinent. (*d*) Cum eīs quī virtūte Aquītānōs praecēdunt bellum gerunt.

3. (*a*) Fortissimī sunt Germānī quōs Helvētiī prohibent. (*b*) Germānī, quōrum fīnēs trāns Rhēnum sunt, ab Helvētiīs prohibentur. (*c*) Helvētiī, quōs Caesar fortissimōs appellat, in suīs fīnibus contendunt. (*d*) In eōrum fīnēs ea important.

4. (*a*) The Romans keep the Germans from the territory of the Celts. (*b*) The Germans continually wage war in the nearest territory. (*c*) The Aquitanians who are nearest the Garumna often visit the province. (*d*) In the province dwell the merchants by (ā) whom the minds of the Gauls are weakened.

5. The Helvetians, who live in Gaul, and the Germans, who live nearest them across the Rhine, contend continually. A river is between them. The Germans go back and forth to the Rhine and in almost

daily battles contend with the Helvetians. The Helvetians, who surpass the-rest-of the Gauls in valor, keep them out. Often they wage war across the Rhine.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two meanings of **cum**. 2. Two meanings of **in**. 3. Difference between **suīs and sē**. 4. Between **suīs** and **eōrum**. 5. Antecedent of each pron. in this Lesson. 6. Uses of abl. in last three lessons. 7. A Lat. plur. translated like a sing. 8. Three classes of verbs. 9. Meaning of **aut . . . aut**. 10. Declension of nouns or adjs. with nom. sing. in **-is**.

LESSON XIII.

1. TEXT.

Eōrum	ūna	pars,	quam	Gallōs	obtinēre
Of-these	*one*	*part,*	*which*	*the-Gauls*	*to-hold*

dictum-est,	initium	capit	ā	flūmine	Rhodanō.
it-has-been-said,	*beginning*	*takes*	*from*	*the-river*	*Rhone.*

2. NOTES.

1. **eōrum** : (*a*) possessive or partitive gen. ? Cf. VI. N. **3**, *c, d, e* ; (*b*) it refers to all the inhabitants of Gaul.

2. **pars** : (*a*) nom. sing. fem. Of what is it the subject ? (*b*) Cf. the nom. and accus. plur. form **partēs** I. ; the abl. plur. is **partibus**, like **fīnibus** XII. (*c*) What nom. sing. ending have **pars**, and **omnis** I. in common ?

3. **quam** : (*a*) for case, cf. **ūnam, aliam** II. ; it is the object of **obtinēre** ; (*b*) for other fem. forms of the same pron., cf. **quā** X., **quārum** II. (*c*) What is its antec. and how do you know it ? Cf. VIII. N. **4**, *e*, and Obs. **9**.

4. **obtinēre**, *to hold, occupy, possess*, and NOT "*to obtain*," as many pupils translate it : (*a*) cf. **pertine-nt** VII., **prohibe-nt** XII., **obtinē-re**. Barring quantity, in what letter do the stems (cf. IX., **2**, 2) of all three forms end ? (*b*) What is the ending of this form ? Judging from the translation, what form of the verb is this ? (*c*) for the use of the preceding word **Gallōs**, cf. E. G., **68**, 6.

5. **dictum**, *said* or *having been said* : cf. *diction, dictation ;* (*a*) together with **est**, translated *it is having-been-said ; i. e. it has been said* (*b*) nom. sing. neut. ; (*c*) a pass. participle ; cf. **dīvīsa** I. and E. G. **41** ; (*d*) **quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est**, *which it has been said the Gauls occupy ;* (*e*) the **Gallōs** referred to are the **Celtae** III.

6. **capit** ; cf. *capture :* (*a*) for ending, cf. **dīvidit** V. (*b*) What is its subject ? Its object ?

7. **ā flūmine Rhodanō** *:* (*a*) for case of **flūmine**, cf. **ā Belgīs** V. ; (*b*) for case of **Rhodanō**, cf. **Garumna flūmen** V. N. **3**. (*c*) What abl. sing. ending have **flūmine**, **hūmānitāte** VI., and **virtūte** X., in common ? (*d*) **flūmine** is a neut. ; its nom. sing. is **flūmen** V. ; its accus. plur. is **flūmina**, like the neut. accus. **e-a** VII. ; and its abl. plur. is **flūminibus**, like **lēgibus** IV. (*e*) What would be a better preposition than *from* in the free English translation ?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Noun and adjective endings : **-s**, nom. sing. ; **-e**, abl. sing.

2. Verb ending : **-re**, present active infinitive.

3. In Latin as in English, the accus. may be used as the subject of an infinitive.

4. Latin words do not always have the meaning of the English words which most nearly resemble them in form.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **capit**, *he takes.*
2. **dictum**, neut., *said* or *having been said.*
3. **initium**, accus. neut., *a beginning.*
4. **obtinet**, *he holds, occupies, possesses.*
5. **Rhodanō**, abl. sing. masc., *the Rhone;* see map.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Ūna pars, ad quam Gallōs commeāre dictum est, abest. (*b*) Alia pars, quam incolunt Aquītānī, ā Garumnā initium capit. (*c*) Tertia pars, quam Belgæ obtinent, ad Rhēnum pertinet. (*d*) Ūna Galliæ pars initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. (*e*) Ūnā in parte continenter bellum gerit.

2. Conversation. — Ā quibus ea importantur ?

Ab Aquītānīs, quī ad Garumnam pertinent, ea importantur.

Quae flūmina in Galliā sunt ?

Flūmina quae in Galliā sunt Garumnam, Sēquanam, Mātronam, Rhodanum Caesar appellat.

Omnēs-ne partēs Galliae hīs flūminibus proximae sunt ?

Partēs trēs Galliae ab hīs flūminibus minimē absunt.

Aquītānī-ne ea quae animōs effēminant important?

Aquītānōs in suōs fīnēs ea importāre dictum est.

3. (*a*) One part of Gaul stretches-out to the Helvetians. (*b*) The Garumna river divides the Gauls from the Aquitanians. (*c*) He hastens into the province. (*d*) He surpasses all these in valor.

4. (*a*) Those-things which are-brought-in enervate the minds of the Gauls. (*b*) The Helvetians are-called the bravest of those who inhabit this territory. (*c*) The Belgians keep the Germans from their (*i. e.* the Belgian) territory. (*d*) He keeps the merchants from their province. (*e*) The third part begins at the river Garumna.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Abl. endings thus far. 2. Uses of the ablative. 3. Neut. nouns. 4. Nom. endings. 5. Verb endings. 6. The translation of **obtin-ēre**. 7. Of **dictum est**. 8. Of **initium capit ā**. 9. Fem. end-ings of the relative. 10. The accus., dat., and abl. plur. of **eōrum**. 11. Two perfect pass. participles. 12. Accent of the words in this Lesson. 13. English derivatives from words in this Lesson.

LESSON XIV.

1. TEXT.

**Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,
initium   capit   ā   flūmine   Rhodanō; continētur**
                                              it-is-bounded

Garumnā	**flūmine,**	**Ōceanō,**	**fīnibus**
by-the-Garumna	*river,*	*by-the-ocean,*	*by-the-territory*

Belgārum.
of-the-Belgians.

2. NOTES.

1. continētur, *it-is-held-together, it-is-bounded*: cf. Eng. *continent*,
both noun and adj.: (*a*) for other compounds of the same verb, cf.
per-tinent VII. and **ob-tinēre** XIII. (*b*) Judging from **pertine-nt**
VII., **obtinē-re** XIII., **dīvidi-t** V. and **appella-ntur** III., what is
the ending of **continētur** and what is the meaning and use of this
ending?

2. Garumnā, *by* (*i. e. by means of*) *the Garumna*: (*a*) note that
the prep. expressed in the translation does not appear in the Latin;
cf. the meaning of **linguā** III., **linguā** IV., **prōvinciae** VI., **fīnibus**
XII.; (*b*) the abl. here expresses the means by which "*one part is
bounded*"; cf. **linguā** III. and **proeliīs** XI., which though translated
by *in* are really examples of the same use of the ablative.

3. Ōceanō: (*a*) for the form of this word, cf. **Rhodanō** XIII.;
(*b*) for its use, cf. the preceding **Garumnā** and the following **fīnibus**;
(*c*) position of accent and why?

4. Belgārum: note that this word though having a fem. ending
is masc. because it is a name of males; cf. III. N. **4.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Verb endings : **-t,** *he, she,* or *it,* act. ; **-tur,** *he, she,* or *it,* pass.
                -nt, *they,*   " ; **-ntur,** *they*   "
                -re, pres. inf.   " ;

2. An ending in Latin often expresses an idea which requires a preposition in English.

3. Means or instrument is expressed by the abl. without a prep.

4. Names of males are masc. and names of females are fem. in Latin as in English. The rules for gender by endings apply only to the names of things.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. continet, *it holds together, bounds.*

2. Ōceanō, abl. sing. masc., *the ocean.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Give all the forms you know of **fīnibus.** (*b*) Give all the plural forms of **Belgārum.** (*c*) Give five forms of **obtinēre.** (*d*) Four of **dīvidit.** (*e*) Five of **important.**

       Explain the uses of the ablative in the following sentences : —

2. (*a*) Prōvinciā Germānōs fortēs prohibet. (*b*) Fīnēs, ā quibus flūmen initium capit, ab Ōceanō absunt. (*c*) Eōs quī hōs fīnēs incolunt hūmānitāte præcēdunt. (*d*) Prōvincia ā Gallīs flūmine dīviditur.

3. (*a*) In parte fīnium quam pertinēre ad Ōceanum dictum est bellum gerunt. (*b*) Germānī cultū animōs minimē effēminant. (*c*) Fortissimī omnium quī Galliam incolunt flūminibus Mātronā et Sēquanā ā reliquīs Gallīs dīviduntur. (*d*) Tertia pars, quam Celtæ obtinent, inter flūmina est.

4. (*a*) He bears these-things into the province. (*b*) (There) are merchants in the province. (*c*) The territory is divided into parts by law. (*d*) The Germans with whom he wages war possess this territory. (*e*) They are nearest the Helvetians; and-therefore (for which reason) they fight with them continually.

5. (*a*) The river begins at their boundaries. (*b*) These are very far distant from the rivers which bound Gaul. (*c*) The Belgians who are farthest distant from the province are bounded by the ocean. (*d*) Their minds are kept from the refinement of the Aquitanians.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Five verb endings. 2. Four endings of the ablative. 3. Four uses of the ablative. 4. Likeness and difference of the abl. of means and abl. of respect. 5. Some compound words used thus far. 6. The use of an ending in Latin where in English we must use a separate word. 7. Why the abl. of means should be translated sometimes by *in*. 8. A word plur. in form but sing. in meaning. 9. Gender in Latin. 10. Likenesses and differences of the three classes of verbs.

LESSON XV.

1. TEXT.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō ; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum ; attingit etiam
               it-reaches also

 ab   Sēquanīs .et Helvētiīs flūmen
on-the-side-of the-Sequanians and the-Helvetians the-river

Rhēnum ; vergit ad sep-ten-tri-ō-nēs.
Rhine ; it-slopes toward the-north.

2. NOTES.

1. attingit ; for exact meaning, see Vocabulary below ; for form, cf. **dīvidit** V., **capit** XIII.

8

2. ab; note the meaning, and observe that the Eng. idiom does not allow a literal translation of the prep. here; cf. the free translation of **ā** in XIII.

3. Helvētiīs; the object of **ab** like **Sēquanīs**; cf. E. G. **53**, 1.

4. flūmen: (*a*) of the neut. gender: for another form, cf. **flūmine** XIV. (*b*) What is the case of **flūmen** here? What is the case of exactly the same form in V.? Cf. the neut. nom. **dict-um** and the neut. accus. **initi-um** XIII. Judging from these forms, what is true of the accus. of neuters as compared with the nom.?

5. Rhēnum; for case, cf. V. N. **3**; for ending, cf. VIII. N. **5**.

6. sep-ten-tri-ō-nēs: (*a*) for grammatical number and case, cf. **partēs** I.; (*b*) for explanation of the sing. meaning for its plur. form, see Vocab. below.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Neuter nouns and adjs. have the same form in the nom. and accusative.

2. In Latin as in English, two or more objects may follow the same preposition.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **attingit** (**ad** and **tangit**), *it touches upon, it reaches.*

2. **et**, *and.*

3. **etiam**, *even, also.*

4. **septentriōnēs** (also found in the sing. with the same meaning), *the seven stars, the constellation of the* *Great Bear,* " *the Great Dipper,*" which is situated in the northern part of the heavens, *the north.*

5. **Sēquanī**, nom. plur., *the Sequanians*; see map.

6. **vergit**, *it slopes, verges, is situated.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Ūna pars, ā quā flūmen initium capit, ad septentriōnēs vergit. (*b*) Germānī flūmine Rhēnō continentur. (*c*) Flūmina quae

Germānōs attingunt inter sē differunt. (*d*) Tertia pars flūminibus continētur. (*e*) Bella ab Helvētiīs geruntur.

2. Conversation. — Quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerit?

Germānōrum in fīnibus bellum gerit.

Quod flūmen est inter Gallōs et Germānōs?

Rhēnus flūmen est inter Gallōs et Germānōs.

Quam in partem (*direction*) fīnēs vergunt?

Fīnēs quōs obtinent ad septentriōnēs vergunt.

Flūmina-ne Galliam continent?

Flūmina trēs partēs Galliae continent.

3. (*a*) One part of Gaul reaches the river Rhine. (*b*) The Germans very seldom visit the province. (*c*) These surpass in valor those who dwell nearest the province. (*d*) He keeps the brave Germans from their territory. (*e*) The Germans are kept out by the Helvetians.

4. (*a*) The Belgians are the bravest of those who inhabit this territory. (*b*) The Germans very seldom bring in those things which weaken minds. (*c*) They keep out the merchants by whom these things are brought in. (*d*) For this reason they surpass all with whom they contend.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The nom. and accus. of neuter nouns. 2. The ending of these cases in the plur. 3. The list of neuter nouns and adjs. met thus far. 4. The composition and exact meaning of **attingit**. 5. The literal and the derived meaning of **septentriōnēs**. 6. Different meanings of the prep. **ab**. 7. The endings **-um** and **-a**. 8. The syllabication and accent of **septentriōnēs**. 9. The geographical situation of the Celts.

LESSON XVI.

1. TEXT.

Belgae	ab	extrēmīs	Galliae	fīnibus
The-Belgians	*from*	*the-remotest*	*of-Gaul*	*boundaries*

oriuntur;	pertinent	ad	īnferiōrem	partem
take-their-rise;	*they-extend*	*to*	*the-lower*	*part*

flūminis	Rhēnī;	spectant	in	septentriōnem
of-the-river	*Rhine;*	*they-look*	*into*	*the-north*

et	orientem	sōlem.
and	*the-rising*	*sun.*

2. NOTES.

1. Galliae; for case, cf. **prōvinciae** VI. N. **7.**

2. oriuntur; cf. *orient* and explain its meaning: (*a*) for form, cf. **appellantur** III. and **dīviduntur**; (*b*) note that, though this verb is pass. in form, it is act. in meaning; (*c*) for best meaning of preceding **ab** in connection with this verb, cf. **initium capit ā flūmine** XIII.

3. ad īnferiōrem partem: (*a*) What ending have the last two words in common? (*b*) Judging from the meaning, and from the use of **ad** in **ad eōs** VII., what is the case and what is the number of these two words? What, then, is an ending of this number and case? (*c*) Cf. **partēs** I. and **pars** XIII. Judging from **flūmine** XIII. and **fīnibus** above, what are its abls. sing. and plur.? (*d*) for use of **īnferiōrem**, cf. VI. N. **2**, *b*.

4. flūminis: (*a*) Judging from the meaning, what case and number is this? (*b*) What is the ending of this case? Cf. **flūmine** XIII. and **virtūte** X.; (*c*) for gender, and nom. and accus., cf. **flūmen** XV. N. **4.**; (*d*) for nom. and accus. plur. **flūmina**, cf. **ea**

VII. N. **6.** Cf. the masc. and fem. nom. and accus. plur. -**ēs** in **par-
tēs** I. and **mercātōrēs** VII.

5. **Rhēnī** : (*a*) in the gen. case. Why? It is of the masc.
gender. (*b*) the ending is -**ī**; cf. the accus. sing. ending -**um** in
Rhēnum VIII. What, then, are the gen. and accus. sing. of **animōs**
VII. ? (*c*) What other use has this ending? Cf. **Gallī** III.

6. **orientem** : (*a*) participle; cf. **dīvīsa** I., **dictum** XIII. ;
(*b*) from verb **oriuntur 2** ; (*c*) for case ending and for nom. **oriēns**,
cf. **partem 3** and **pars** XIII.

7. **sōlem** : (*a*) explain case and cf. XV. N. **3** ; (*b*) for meaning
of prep. **in** before it, cf. XII. N. **8**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Sing. endings of masc. nouns : -**ī**, gen. ; -**um**, accus. ; for plur.
endings, see IX. **2**, 2.

2. Sing. endings of nouns declined like **pars** : -**is**, gen. ; -**em**,
accus. ; -**e**, ablative.

3. Neuters differ from mascs. and fems. in two respects : (1) their
nominatives and accusatives are always alike ; (2) these cases in the
plur. end in -**a**.

4. Some verbs, passive in form, are active in meaning.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **extrēmī**, nom. plur. masc.,
   *extreme, remotest, the-end-
   of ;* cf. **reliquī**, *the-rest-of.*
2. **īnferiōrem**, accus. sing., *lower.*
3. **oriēns**, adj., *rising ;* **oriēns
   sōl**, *the east.*
4. **oriuntur**, *they rise, begin.*
5. **sōlem**, accus. sing. masc.,
   the sun.
6. **spectat**, *it looks, faces.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Write all the forms you know of **flūmen**; (*b*) **pars**;
(*c*) **sōlem**; (*d*) **animōs**; (*e*) **bellum**; (*f*) **Gallia**; (*g*) **spectant**.

2. (*a*) Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur. (*b*) Belgae

ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinent. (*c*) Belgae in septen-
triōnem et orientem sōlem spectant. (*d*) Fīnēs Belgārum ad flūmen
Rhēnum pertinent. (*e*) Pars fīnium Gallōrum flūmine Rhēnō conti-
nētur.

3. (*a*) Belgās in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem spectāre dictum
est. (*b*) Cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Belgīs contendit. (*c*) Bellō Ger-
mānī Gallōs praecēdunt. (*d*) Suōs fīnēs dīvidunt. (*e*) Eōrum
fīnēs capit. (*f*) Flūmina ā parte Galliae oriuntur.

4. (*a*) The Belgians keep the Germans from their boundaries.
(*b*) One part of the river is in the province. (*c*) The Belgians
touch-upon the part which the Celts occupy. (*d*) They often wage
war. (*e*) The Belgians inhabit the most-remote territory.

5. (*a*) The rest-of the territory is inhabited by the Belgians.
(*b*) The wars which he wages are-different from those which the Bel-
gians wage. (*c*) These merchants bring in refinement of mind.
(*d*) These-things enervate the mind of the Gaul. (*e*) The beginning
of the third part is next to the Belgians.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. New endings: **-is, -em, -ī**. 2. Difference in use of **-is** and **-īs**.
3. Two uses of **-is**. 4. Two uses of **-ī**. 5. Likenesses and differ-
ences of **-am, -um, -em**. 6. Three gen. sing. endings. 7. Three
gen. plur. endings. 8. Three accus. plur. endings. 9. Three nom.
plur. endings. 10. Peculiarities of neuters. 11. Three instances of
agreement of adjs. in this lesson. 12. Agreement of appositive in
this Lesson. 13. Four different translations of **ā** or **ab**, used thus far.
14. Case with **ad**. 15. With **ab**. 16. Cases with **in**. 17. Mean-
ings of **in**. 18. Difference in meaning of **orientem** and **oriuntur**.

LESSON XVII.

1. TEXT.

Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs
Aquitania from the-Garumna river to the-Pyrenean

montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad
mountains and that part of-the-ocean which is near

Hispāniam pertinet ; spectat inter occāsum sōlis
Spain extends ; it-looks between the-setting of-the-sun

et septentriōnēs.
and the-north.

2. NOTES.

1. eam partem : (*a*) **eam** is here an adj. agreeing with **partem** ; for another pronominal adj., cf. **quā** X ; (*b*) for ending, cf. **quam** XIII. ; (*c*) for other forms of the same pronoun, cf. **eōs** and **ea** VII., **eōrum** XII. (*d*) By what preposition is **partem** governed ?

2. Ōceanī ; for form, cf. **Rhēnī** XVI.

3. quae : (*a*) nom. sing. fem. (irregular ending). (*b*) Why may a masc. or fem. pron. in Lat. be translated by *which* or *it* ? Cf. IX. **2**, **6**, and E. G. **42**. (*c*) What is here the antecedent of **quae**, and how do you know it ? Cf. VIII., N. 4, *e*, and E. G. **65** ; (*d*) the same form **quae** is a neuter plur. in VII. ; cf. also **quārum** II., **quī** III., **quibus** VIII., **quā** X., and **quam** XIII.

4. ad ; note the meaning and cf. it with the meaning of the same prep. elsewhere.

5. inter ; note the meaning and cf. with its meaning in IV.

6. sōlis : (*a*) for case and ending, cf. **flūminis** XVI. ; (*b*) possessive or partitive gen. ? Cf. VI. N. **3** ; (*c*) cf. the grammatical relation of the two words in the phrase **occāsum sōlis**, *the west*, with that of the words in **orientem sōlem**, *the east*, XVI.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The form **quae** may be either the nom. sing. fem., or the nom. or accus. plur. neuter of the relative pronoun.

2. The prep. **ad** may mean *near* as well as *to;* the prep. **inter** either *between* or *among.*

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **Aquītānia,** *Aquitania,* the country of the *Aquitanians;* see map.
2. **Hispānia,** *Spain.*
3. **mōns,** masc., (declined like **pars**), *a mountain.*
4. **occāsum,** accus. sing. masc., *a falling, setting;* **occāsum sōlis,** *the west.*
5. **Pȳrēnaeī,** adj., nom. plur. masc., *Pyrenean, of the Pyrenees.*

5. EXERCISES.

Give the gender, number, case, and antecedent of every pronoun.

1. (*a*) Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs pertinet. (*b*) Aquītānia ad eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet. (*c*) Aquītānia inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs spectat. (*d*) Pȳrēnaeī montēs sunt Aquītānīs proximī. (*e*) Mercātōrēs ad eōs, quī Hispāniam incolunt, commeant.

2. (*a*) Hī fīnēs ab oriente sōle ad occāsum sōlis pertinent. (*b*) Fīnēs quibus proximī sunt ad septentriōnēs vergunt. (*c*) Pars ad quam mercātōrēs commeant Rōmānīs proxima est. (*d*) Hī omnēs montibus et flūmine continentur. (*e*) Ea flūmina ā montibus oriuntur.

3. (*a*) Aquitania is bounded by the Garumna river and the ocean. (*b*) One part of the river is near Spain. (*c*) These mountains are nearest their boundaries. (*d*) The rivers which extend to the west are the Garumna and the Seine. (*e*) They visit Spain, which is near Aquitania.

4. (*a*) The Aquitanians inhabit Aquitania. (*b*) That part of Aquitania extends to the ocean. (*c*) The Pyrenees mountains are between

Aquitania and Spain. (*d*) The Aquitanians and the Belgians, whose boundaries extend to the Rhine, differ from each other in refinement. (*e*) These inhabit three parts, of which one is Aquitania.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Different forms of the pron. **eōs**. 2. Of the pron. **quī**. 3. The form **quae**. 4. Difference between English and Latin gender. 5. Two meanings of **ad**. 6. Difference in meaning of **ad** and **proximī**. 7. Two meanings of **inter**. 8. Three Latin words or phrases for points of the compass. 9. Syllables of **Aquītānia**, **Pȳrēnaeōs**, **Ōceanī**, **septentriōnēs**. 10. The geographical boundaries of the three parts of Gaul.

LESSON XVIII.

REVIEW.

LESSONS X.–XVII.

Before taking up this Lesson read once more the note at the head of Lesson IX.

1. TEXT.

CÆSAR'S "GALLIC WAR," Book I., Chapter **1**.

Note that this review of the text includes the whole first chapter, and hence includes the text of the last review.

Follow strictly all the directions given under "Text" in Lesson IX.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Pronunciation.** — The diphthong **au** is pronounced like *ow ;* **oe**, like *oi.*

2. **Inflection.** — For the first decl. complete, see IX. **2**, 2.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	——	Gall-ī	omn-is	omn-ēs	par-s	part-ēs
Gen.	Gall-ī	Gall-ōrum	omn-is	omn-i-um	part-is	part-i-um
Dat.	——	Gall-īs	——	——	——	——
Accus.	Gall-um	Gall-ōs	omn-em	omn-ēs	part-em	part-ēs
Abl.	——	Gall-īs	——	omn-ibus	part-e	part-ibus

NEUTERS.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	bell-um	bell-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
Gen.	——	——	flūmin-is	——
Dat.	——	——	——	——
Accus.	bellum	bell-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
Abl.	——	bell-īs	flūmin-e	flūmin-ibus

VERBS.

Active.

Sing.	appell-a-t	prohib-e-t	dīvid-i-t
Plur.	appell-a-nt	prohib-e-nt	dīvid-u-nt
Inf.	appell-ā-re	prohib-ē-re	

Passive.

Sing.	appell-ā-tur	prohib-ē-tur	dīvid-i-tur
Plur.	appell-a-ntur	prohib-e-ntur	dīvid-u-ntur

Under what case are most of the blanks in the above paradigms?
How many times does this case occur in the text of Chapter **1**?

All nouns and adjs. with nom. plur. -ī are declined like **Gallī**; all adjs. with nom. sing. **-is** like **omnis**; all nouns in **-rs** and **-ns**, like **pars**; those in **-men**, like **flūmen**; and all nouns and adjs. in **-um** like **bellum**.

Gallī and **bellum** are of the second declension; **omnis**, **pars**, and **flūmen**, of the third declension.

3. **Uses of Cases**. — The accusative may be used as the subject of an infinitive.

The abl. is, in this chapter, used in the following ways: (*a*) with the preps. **ā** or **ab, cum, dē**, and **in**; (*b*) without a prep. to express the means or instrument; (*c*) without a prep. to express that in respect to which a thing is true; (*d*) sometimes with, sometimes without, a prep., to express separation.

4. **Translation**. — Lat. words are not always well translated by their Eng. derivatives.

The Lat. often expresses by a case ending what the Eng. must employ a prep. to express.

The prep. *of* is not always to be translated by a genitive; it is sometimes part of the meaning of an adjective. The Eng. prep. *in* may be represented by an abl. of respect, an abl. of means, or by the Lat. prep. **in**.

The conj. **aut**, when repeated, is translated *either . . . or*.

5. **Gender**. — All neuters have the nom. and accus. alike; in the plur. these cases end in -a.

6. **Pronouns**. — The forms of which the noms. plur. are **suī**, masc., **suae**, fem., **sua**, neut., are always pronominal adjs., while **sē** is never an adjective. **Suī, suae, sua**, and **sē** always refer to some subject; but the pron. of which the gen. plur. is **eōrum** need not refer to a subject.

The relative pron. has different forms for all three genders. It may be used at the beginning of principal clauses where the Eng. uses a demonstrative. The rel. form **quae** may be either a nom. sing. fem., or a nom. or accus. plur. neuter.

7. **Prepositions**. — Two or more objects may follow one preposition. The form **cum** may be a conjunction as well as a preposition.

With the abl. the prep. **in** means *in ;* with the accus. it means *into*. The prep. **ad** means *near* as well as *to ;* the prep. **inter**, *between* as well as *among*.

8. **Verbs**. — Verbs (except **est**, **sunt**) have a tendency to stand last in their clauses.

Some verbs are pass. in form but act. in meaning.

3. WORD REVIEW.

Follow the directions given under "Word Review," in IX.
Review once more the words in IX.
The last eight lessons contain the following new words:

VERB FORMS.

1. attingit	5. obtinēre	8. prohibent
2. capit	6. oriuntur	9. spectant
3. contendunt	7. praecēdunt	10. vergit
4. continētur		

NOUN, PRONOMINAL, AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

1st Decl.	*2nd Decl.*	*3d Decl.*	*Unclassified.*
1. Aquītānia	1. cotīdiānīs	1. fīnibus	occāsum
2. causā	2. dictum	2. īnferiōrem	
3. Hispāniam	3. extrēmīs	3. montēs	
	4. Helvētiīs	4. septentriōnēs	
	5. initium	5. sōlem	
	6. Ōceanō	6. virtūte	
	7. proeliīs		
	8. Pȳrēnaeōs		
	9. reliquōs		
	10. Rhodanō		
	11. Sēquanīs		
	12. suīs		

ADVERB.	PREPOSITION.	CONJUNCTIONS.
ferē	dē	1. aut
		2. cum
		3. et
		4. etiam
		5. quoque

4. EXERCISES.

The teacher should be particular to see that the pupil understands the subject-matter. The following exercises will be found a help to this end.

1. **Conversation.** — Ā quibus trēs partēs incoluntur?
Ab Aquītānīs et Celtīs et Belgīs incoluntur.
Quī cum Germānīs bellum gerunt?
Belgae et Helvētiī cum Germānīs bellum gerunt.
Cūr Helvētiī et Belgae cum Germānīs bellum gerunt?
Quod Germānīs proximī sunt et fortissimī.
Quōrum in fīnibus Helvētiī bellum gerunt?
Germānōrum in fīnibus et in suīs fīnibus bellum gerunt.
Ubi (*where*) sunt Pȳrēnaeī montēs?
Ad Hispāniam Pȳrēnaeī montēs sunt.

Answer the following questions in Latin.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt?
Quibus ā fīnibus Belgae oriuntur?
Quibus flūminibus tertia pars continētur?
Quā ā parte prōvincia longissimē abest?
Quae partēs flūmen Rhēnum attingunt?
Quam partem Helvētiī incolunt?

2. **For translation into Latin.** — The Belgians, the Celts, and the Aquitanians occupy Gaul. A Roman province is also in Gaul. The Aquitanians are next to Spain and to the province; the Celts occupy the territory which is between the Garumna and the Seine; the Belgians stretch into the north and touch the lower part of the river Rhine. The Germans are next to the Gauls across the Rhine. With these the brave Belgians and Helvetians contend continually, and often surpass them in valor. Merchants, who inhabit the province, visit the rest of the Gauls, and weaken their minds by the refinement[1] which they bring in.

---

[1] This word is fem. in Latin.

LESSON XIX.

1. TEXT.

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus et dītissimus
Among the-Helvetians far the-highest-born and the-richest

fuit   Orgetorix.   Is,   M.   Messālā   et   M.
was   Orgetorix.   He, Marcus   Messala   and Marcus

Pīsōne   cōnsulibus,   rēgnī   cupiditāte
Piso   (being) consuls, of-the-royal-power   by-a-desire

inductus   coniūrātiōnem [1]   nōbilitātis   fēcit.
led   a-conspiracy   of-the-nobility   made.

2. NOTES.

1. longē: (*a*) What shows that it is an adv.? Cf. VII. N. **1.**
(*b*) What is its superlative? Cf. VI. (*c*) What does it modify?

2. dītissimus: (*a*) nom. sing. masc., like the preceding **nōbilis-simus**; (*b*) for degree of comparison, cf. **fortissimī** and **longissimē** VI. What letters have all these forms in common?

3. fuit: (*a*) perfect tense of **est** I., equivalent, here, to a simple past; (*b*) cf. **est** I., **sunt** VI., and note the dissimilarity of form; cf. the conjug. of the English verb *be*, E. G. **37.**

4. Orgetorix: nom. sing. masc. Why? What adjs. agree with it?

5. is: (*a*) What does the translation show as to case, number, and gender? (*b*) What is its antec.? (*c*) Cf.[2] **eōs, ea** VII., **eōrum** XIII., **eam** XVII.

---

[1] The letter **i** (before **ū**) is here a consonant pronounced like *y* in *year*.

[2] The teacher, whenever this abbreviation is used, should see to it that pupils make the comparison directed. Here, the pupil should be able to state not only that the three forms belong to the same pron. **is**, but also the case, number and gender of each.

6. M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, freely translated, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso;* cf. the English phrase *in Polk's administration:* (*a*) **M.** in a Roman proper name always stands for some case of **Mārcus**; cf. Eng. *Mark;* (*b*) the consul was a Roman magistrate something like an American president; the year of an event was indicated by naming the consuls of that year; (*c*) the Latin phrase at the head of this note is grammatically unconnected with the rest of the sentence. (*d*) In what case are all the words of this phrase?

7. rēgnī: (*a*) in the neuter gender and declined like **bellum** XVIII. **2,** 2; (*b*) the case ending is the same as in mascs. of the 2d decl.; cf. **Rhēnī** XVI.

8. inductus: (*a*) nom. sing. masc. (*b*) What ending has it in common with the noms. sing. masc. **nōbilissimus** and **dītissimus**? (*c*) With what does it agree? (*d*) How does the preceding noun **cupiditāte** modify it?[1] Cf. **Garumnā** XIV. (*e*) In what respect is it like **dīvīsa** I. and **dictum** XIII.? E. G. **20,** 1.

9. fēcit: (*a*) a pf. ind, translated like a simple past; cf. **fuit** above; this same word is, however, in other sentences translated *he has made*, and **fuit** is translated *he has been*. (*b*) What is its object?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending **-us** is found in the nom. sing. masc.; **-ī** in the gen. sing. masc. and neuter.

2. The Latin perfect tense is often translated like a simple past.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **apud**, prep. with accus., *among.*

2. **coniūrātiōnem**, accus. sing. fem. (from **con** and **iūrāre**, *to swear, take oath*), a *swearing together, a conspiracy.*

3. **cōnsulēs**, *consuls;* cf. N. **6,** *b.*

4. **cupiditātem**, accus. sing. fem., *desire, cupidity.*

[1] Do not forget that the free translation, p. 387, is a great help in understanding the connection of the Latin words.

  5. **dītissimus**, *richest*.

  6. **fēcit**, *he has made* or *done*, *he made* or *did*.

  7. **fuit**, *he has been* or *was ;* cf. **est**, **sunt**.

  8. **inductus**, *having been led into*, *led*, *induced*.

  9. **is**, masc., *that*, *that one*, *he ;* cf. **eōs**, **eōrum**, **ea**, **eam**.

 10. **Mārcus**, a Roman name.

 11. **Messāla**, masc. by meaning, a Roman name.

 12. **nōbilissimus**, *highest-born ;* the positive is **nōbilis**, *high-born*.

 13. **nōbilitātem**, accus. sing. fem., *high-birth, the nobility*.

 14. **Orgetorix**, a Helvetian noble.

 15. **Pīsōnem**, accus. sing. masc., *Piso*, a Roman name.

 16. **rēgnum**, *royal power*, *kingdom*.

5. EXERCISES.

  1. (*a*) Give all the cases you now know of **inductus** ; (*b*) **rēgnum** ; (*c*) **coniūrātiōnem** ; (*d*) **cupiditāte**. (*e*) Latin words for *brave, very brave, very bravely*.

  2. (*a*) Helvētiōrum omnium longē nōbilissimus est Orgetorix. (*b*) Orgetorix, Messālā et Pīsōne cōnsulibus, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. (*c*) Helvētiī virtūte inductī bellum gerunt. (*d*) Mārcus fuit cōnsul. (*e*) Gallus hūmānitātis cupiditāte inductus ea, quae animōs effēminant, importat. (*f*) Hī sunt cōnsulēs nōbilēs.

  3. (*a*) Orgetorix Gallōrum partem capit. (*b*) Pars nōbilitātis ab Helvētiō dītissimō indūcitur. (*c*) Mārcus cōnsul appellātur. (*d*) Animus Gallī hūmānitāte animum Germānī praecēdit. (*e*) Mercātōrēs, quōs ea importāre dictum est, prōvinciam incolunt. (*f*) Eōs quibuscum contendit virtūte praecēdit.

  4. (*a*) Orgetorix is far the richest. (*b*) In the consulship of Marcus, a brave Helvetian made a conspiracy. (*c*) These (men), being influenced by a desire for (of) war, visit the province. (*d*) These (things) are imported by the merchants. (*e*) The province is next to the Aquitanians. (*f*) The province is very far distant from the Belgians.

  5. (*a*) The river Rhine, which separates the Gauls from the Ger-

mans, rises in the mountains. (*b*) The highest-born (men) possess
the kingdoms of Gaul. (*c*) Daily battles are waged in their boun-
daries.   (*d*) The mountains are divided into parts by rivers.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending **-us**. 2. The different uses of the ending **-ī.** 3. The
ending **-ē.** 4. Masc. nouns of the 2d decl. in the text thus far. [1]
5. The form of the superlative. 6. The verb *be* in Latin. 7. The
various forms of the pron. **is.** 8. Neuters in **-um.** 9. Agreement
of adjs. in this Lesson. 10. The new tense in this Lesson. 11. Two
translations of this tense. 12. The abl. of means in this Lesson.
13. The literal and the free translation of **Messālā et Pīsōne cōn-
sulibus.** 14. The free English translation of this Lesson. 15. Eng-
lish derivatives from words in this Lesson.

LESSON XX.

1. TEXT.

**Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupi-
ditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et**
*and*

cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum
the-citizens persuaded, that from boundaries their with

omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.
all   forces they-might-go-out.

2. NOTES.

1. cīvitātī; for meaning, see Vocab.: (*a*) cf. **hūmānitāte** VI.,
cupiditāte, nōbilitātis XIX. What three letters immediately pre-

[1] Each pupil should write out a list of such nouns.

cede the case endings in each word? (*b*) All such words form the
nom. by adding **s** to the stem (cf. IX. **2**, 2) and dropping the **t** which
precedes it; thus **cīvitāt-**, **cīvitāts**, **cīvitās**; cf. also **partēs** I., **pars**
XIII. What is the nom. of **virtūte** X.? (*c*) **cīvitātī** is a dat. sing.
What is its ending? This is the ending of the dat. sing. in all 3d
decl. nouns. Where else do we find the same ending?

2. persuāsit: (*a*) pf. ind. active; cf. **fēcit** XIX.; (*b*) used with
the dat. **cīvitātī**.

3. ut, *that, in-order-that*, conj.; introduces the verb **exīrent**.

4. suīs. How does its ending show its agreement?

5. persuāsit . . . ut . . . exīrent, *he-persuaded in-order-that they-
might-go-out*. (*a*) What would be a suitable free translation? See
free translation, p. 387. (*b*) How does the form show the number of
exīrent? [1] (*c*) Note that the preceding **suīs** refers to the subject of
this verb, and cf. XII. N. **7**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The dat. sing. of the 3d decl. always ends in **-ī**.

2. All stems of the 3d decl. ending in **t** form the nom. sing. by
adding **s** to the stem and dropping **t** before **s**.

3. The verb of which the pf. ind. act. is **persuāsit** is followed by
the dat. of the person who is *persuaded*, and not by the accus. of the
person, as we might expect.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **cīvitās**, fem., *citizenship, a
   state, the body-politic, citi-
   zens;* most frequently, *state.*
2. **cōpia**, in sing., *plenty, a
   supply;* in plur., *forces,
   troops.* It is fem. in plur.
   as well as in sing., since

   troops are not regarded as
   persons.
3. **exīre**, *to go out;* cf. **obtinēre**
   XIII. N. **4**.
4. **persuāsit**, *he persuaded* or *has
   persuaded.*
5. **ut** or **utī**, conj., *that, in order
   that, so that.*

---

[1] This is not a pres. indicative. It will be more fully explained later.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Orgetorix Helvetiīs persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent. (*b*) Aquītānia inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs spectat. (*c*) Belgae pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī. (*d*) Helvētiī montibus et flūminibus continentur.

2. (*a*) Fortissimī Helvētiī hōs fīnēs obtinent. (*b*) In hīs fīnibus Orgetorix incolit. (*c*) Omnēs Helvētiōrum cōpiae sunt proximae Germānīs. (*d*) Nōbilitātem coniūrātiōne inductam exīre dē cīvitāte dictum est. (*e*) Orgetorix dītissimīs persuāsit et initium coniūrātiōnis fēcit.

3. (*a*) That (man) persuaded a part of the state. (*b*) The state is next to the province. (*c*) These possess all the territory which is near the mountains. (*d*) The refinement of the province is kept out. (*e*) The state is bounded by a mountain and a river.

4. (*a*) They inhabit the state which is nearest to the river. (*b*) He persuaded those who are richest. (*c*) He visits that state in which the high-born Orgetorix dwells. (*d*) These (things) begin in the consulship of Marcus and Lucius.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Masc. and fem. endings of the 3d declension. 2. Different uses of the ending **-ī**. 3. Nom. sing. endings met thus far. 4. Two uses of the dative. 5. The meaning of **cīvitās**. 6. Of **ut**. 7. Of **cōpia** in sing. and plural. 8. The syllable **-tāt-**. 9. The use of **suīs** and **eōrum**. 10. Preps. with abl. thus far.

LESSON XXI.

1. TEXT.

Is, **M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupidi-
tāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī
persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs ex-
īrent:** perfacile   esse,   cum   virtūte   omnibus
very-easy   to-be,   since   in-valor   all

praestārent,   tōtīus Galliae   imperiō   potīrī.
they-stood-before,   of-entire   Gaul   the-supreme-power   to-obtain.

2. NOTES.

1. perfacile; for composition, see Vocab.; accus. sing. neuter.
What is the nom. sing? Cf. XV. N. **4**.

2. esse; pres. inf. of **est, sunt**.

3. cum: (*a*) subordinate conj. followed by verb **praestārent**;
(*b*) cf. **cum**, conj., *when*, XII., and **cum**, prep., *with*, VIII.

4. omnibus: (*a*) dat. plur. with **praestārent**. What is its end-
ing? Cf. **omn-is** I., **omn-ēs** IV. (*b*) Here a noun, though often an
adjective.

5. praestārent: (*a*) for meaning, see Vocab.; (*b*) cf. **ex-ī-re-nt**
and **prae-stā-re-nt**. In what respects are they alike?

6. tōtīus; an irregular gen. singular. What does it limit?

7. potīrī: (*a*) an inf.; cf. **esse 2, obtinēre** XIII.; (*b*) pass. in
form, act. in meaning; cf. **oriuntur** XVI.; (*c*) the preceding abl.
sing. neut. **imperiō** is used with it, with practically the same force
as an object accus.; (*d*) **potīrī** is the subj. of the inf. **esse** and
is limited by the adj. **perfacile**; cf. E. G. **68**, *e* and 3; (*e*) for
free translation of this Lesson, see p. 387.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending of the dat. sing. in the 3d decl. is **-ī**; of the dat. plur. **-ibus.**

2. The form **cum** may be either a conj., meaning *when* or *since*, or a prep., meaning *with* and taking the ablative.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **imperium**, neuter, *supreme power.*

2. **perfacile** (**per**, *very* and **facile**), neuter, *very easy.*

3. **potīrī**, *to obtain;* **potitur**, *he obtains;* **potiuntur**, (cf. **oriuntur**) *they obtain.*

4. **praestāre** (**prae**, *before* and **stāre**), *to stand before, to excel.*

5. **tōtus** (gen. **tōtīus**), *the whole, the whole of, entire.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Perfacile est tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. (*b*) Virtūte omnibus Helvētiī praestant. (*c*) Dictum est Helvētiōs tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. (*d*) Ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. (*e*) Rēgnum in cīvitāte suā obtinet. (*f*) Prōvincia ā montibus oritur et ad flūmen pertinet.

2. Conversation. — Quis (*who*) fuit Orgetorix ?

Orgetorix nōbilissimus et dītissimus Helvētiōrum fuit.

Quid (*what*) Orgetorix fēcit ?

Coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit.

Cūr coniūrātiōnem fēcit ?

Quod rēgnī cupiditāte inductus est.

Ubi (*when*) coniūrātiōnem fēcit ?

Messālā et Pīsōne cōnsulibus, eam fēcit.

Quibus persuāsit ut exīrent ?

Omnibus Helvētiīs persuāsit.

Quid ab Orgetorige dictum est ?

Perfacile est, quod Helvētiī virtūte reliquīs Gallīs praestant, tōtīus Galliae potīrī.

3. (*a*) It was easy to keep the Sequanians from the territory of the Helvetians. (*b*) The high-born Orgetorix, influenced by his desire for (of) the-rest-of Gaul, made a beginning of conspiracy. (*c*) The merchants resort to almost all the states. (*d*) The Helvetians are bounded by rivers and mountains.

4. (*a*) The nearest states differ from the most remote (states). (*b*) In the consulship of Pompeius and Crassus, the Romans obtain a part of Gaul. (*c*) He persuaded the richest (men) who inhabit the state.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two uses of the ending **-ibus**. 2. Three meanings for **cum**. 3. The datives used thus far in the text. 4. Four forms of the Lat. verb corresponding to *be*. 5. Compound words in text so far. 6. The inf. as subj. in English and Latin. 7. Infs. in text so far. 8. Two neuters in this Lesson. 9. Eng. derivatives from words in this Lesson. 10. Difference in meaning between **rēgnum** and **imperium**.

LESSON XXII.

1. TEXT.

Id	hōc	facilius	eīs	persuāsit,	quod
This	*on-this-account*	*more-easily*	*to-them*	*he-persuaded,*	*because*

undique	locī	nātūrā	Helvētiī
on-all-sides	*of-the-place*	*by-the-nature*	*the-Helvetians*

continentur.
are-hemmed-in.[1]

2. NOTES.

1. **id**, *that* (*thing*), *that, this, it ;* cf. Eng. *i. e.* for **id est**, *that is :* (*a*) accus. sing. neut., direct object of **persuāsit**; (*b*) cf. the nom.

[1] The pupil should not forget that great assistance in understanding the meaning of the Latin is given by the free translation, p. 387.

sing. masc. **is,** *this (man),* *he,* XIX.; (*c*) the accus. sing. fem. is **eam** XVII. Judging from **ūnam, ūna,** what is its nom. sing. fem.? (*d*) For nom. and accus. plur. of the neut. **id,** cf. **ea** VII. (*e*) What is the antec. of **id** ?

2. **hōc,** *because-of-this, on-this-account ;* abl. sing. neut.; cf. the masc. forms **hī** IV., **hōrum** VI.

3. **facilius** : (*a*) adv. in comparative degree. What does it modify? (*b*) Cf. the neut. adj. **perfacile** XXI.

4. **eīs** : (*a*) dat. plur. masc., indir. obj. of **persuāsit** ; cf. **cīvitātī** XX. Obs. 3 ; (*b*) the direct object is **id** ; *he persuaded this to them,* or better, *he persuaded them of this ;* cf. E. G. **62,** 4. ; (*c*) cf. the other masc. forms **eōs, eōrum** XII. and **is** XIX., and give the case and meaning of each.

5. **locī** ; cf. *local, locate ;* for case, number, and gender, cf. **Rhēnī** XVI.

6. **continentur** : (*a*) for voice, cf. **appellantur** III. ; (*b*) for the reason for the case of preceding **nātūrā,** cf. **continētur Garumnā** XIV.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Latin has a pron. which is both demonstrative like the English *this* and *that,* and personal like *he, she, it, they.*

2. This pron. is found in all three genders ; we have met the following forms : masc. **is, eōrum, eīs, eōs** ; fem. **eam** ; neut. **id, ea.**

3. The verb **persuāsit** takes the accus. of the thing as direct object, the dat. of the person as indirect object.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **facilius,** adv. in comparative degree, *more easily.*

2. **locus,** *a place.*

3. **nātūra,** *nature, character, disposition.*

4. **undique,** adv., *from all sides, on all sides.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **nātūra**. (*b*) Decline **Helvētiī** in plural. (*c*) Decline **locus** in sing. as far as possible. (*d*) Write all the forms you know of **continentur**.

2. (*a*) Helvētiīs et nōbilitātī Helvētiōrum persuāsit. (*b*) Omnibus ut exīrent persuāsit. (*c*) Messālā cōnsule, coniūrātiōnem omnium dītissimōrum fēcit. (*d*) Cum proximīs cīvitātibus bellum gerit. (*e*) Id bellum cum eīs quī ad Rhēnum incolunt geritur.

3. (*a*) Hōc coniūrātiōnem fēcit, quod fortissimus omnium fuit. (*b*) Omnēs quōrum fīnēs sunt proximī prohibent. (*c*) Eum locum, quod virtūte omnibus praestat, obtinet. (*d*) Helvētiōs esse fortissimōs dictum est. (*e*) Virtūte Helvētiī hōc locō potiuntur.

4. (*a*) He persuades them of this more-easily on this account. (*b*) He persuaded these to go-out[1] from one part. (*c*) The character of the place hems-in the Helvetians. (*d*) This is brought between the mountain and the river into the territory. (*e*) The rivers hem-in all parts of Gaul.

5. (*a*) It is easy to hold this place. (*b*) The valor[2] of the Helvetians surpasses the valor of the Sequanians. (*c*) The nobility is the richest and bravest. (*d*) The forces of the Helvetians contend with those whose boundaries reach the river. (*e*) Influenced by their desire for refinement, they often visit the province in which it has been said the merchants dwell.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The masc. forms of **is**. 2. The fem. forms. 3. The neut. forms. 4. The noms. singular. 5. Different uses of this pronoun. 6. Difference between act. and pass. verb forms. 7. Between sing. and plur. verb forms. 8. Two cases after **persuāsit**. 9. Different uses of abl. thus far. 10. Syllables of **facilius, undique, Helvētiī**.

---

[1] Cf. **ut . . . . exīrent** XX.   [2] For form, cf. XX. N. **1**.

LESSON XXIII.

1. TEXT.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā
Helvētiī continentur ; ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō,
one   on   side   by-the-river   Rhine,

lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium
very-broad   and   very-deep, which the-country Helvetian

ā Germānīs dīvidit.
from the-Germans divides.

2. NOTES.

1. ūnā ex parte : (*a*) **ūnā** agrees with **parte** ; *on one side.* What
is the case, number and gender of each ? (*b*) **ex**, which is here
translated *on*, is more frequently translated *out-of, from.* (*c*) What
Latin preps. have been used with the abl. case in the text thus far ?

2. flūmine : (*a*) for nom. and accus. sing. and gender, cf. XV.
N. **4**. What change of vowel in syllable **-men** in passing from the nom.
or the accus. sing. to the other cases ? (*b*) Used with **continentur**
in preceding Lesson. Why then ablative ?

3. altissimō : (*a*) What degree of comparison ? Cf. **fortissimī** VI.
Note that this degree is here translated by *very ; very-deep*, not
deepest ; cf. E. G. **29**, 3. (*b*) What is the case, number and gender
of **altissimō**, and why ? (*c*) Cf. **altissimō** and **Rhēnō**. What is
the case of each ? What ending have they in common ? (*d*) Cf.
also the neut. abl. **imperiō** XXI., from the nom. **imperium**.

4. quī : (*a*) nom. sing. masc. Why nom. ? What is the number
of the same form in VIII. ? (*b*) What is the antec. of **quī** in this
Lesson, and how do you know it ? (*c*) Why is it correct to translate
the Lat. masc. **quī** by the English so-called neuter *which* ?

5. agrum : (*a*) for case, number, and gender, cf. **Rhēnum** XV.; (*b*) reason for its case ?

6. Helvētium, *Helvetian;* note that it is here an adj. limiting **agrum** ; the same form might be a noun meaning *a Helvetian;* cf. **Helvētiī**, *the Helvetians*, X. and the English expressions, *American* territory, an *American*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending of the abl. sing. masc. and neuter is **-ō**.

2. Neuters in **-men** of the 3d decl. change **e** to **i** in all cases which contain more syllables than the nominative.

3. The form **quī** may be either a nom. plur. or a nom. singular.

4. In Latin, as in English, the name of the people of a nation and the adj. meaning *belonging to* that nation are often the same in form.

5. The preps. thus far used with the abl. are **ā** or **ab**, **ex**, **cum**, **dē**, and **in** when it means *in*.

6. The Latin superlative ending may be translated by *very*, as well as by an English superlative ending or by *most*.

7. A masc. or fem. relative pron. in Latin may be translated by the English so-called neut. *which*. This is because masculines or feminines in Latin are often names of things.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **agrum**, accus. sing. masc., *a field, territory.*
2. **altus**, *high, deep;* **altissimus**, *highest, very high.*
3. **ex** or **ē**, *out-of, from;* **ex** is used before both vowels and consonants, **ē** only before consonants.
4. **Helvētius**, *a Helvetian;* or as adj., *Helvetian.*
5. **lātus**, *wide.* Cf. first syllable with first syllable of **al-tus.** What is the difference ?

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **parte**; (*b*) **flūmine**; (*c*) **latissimō** in masc.; (*d*) **quī**, so far as possible; (*e*) all the forms of **dīvidit** yet discovered.

2. (*a*) Ūnā ex parte Helvētiī continentur flūmine Rhēnō. (*b*) Flūmen Rhēnus agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit. (*c*) Rhēnus flūmen est lātissimus atque altissimus. (*d*) Nātūrā locī Helvētiī ā reliquīs Gallīs dīvīsī sunt. (*e*) Cum hīs mercātōribus ad eam partem Galliae saepe commeat.

3. (*a*) Germānōs ab agrō Helvētiō flūmen Rhēnus dīvidit. (*b*) Helvētiī, quī ad Rhēnum incolunt, ā Rōmānīs minimē longē absunt. (*c*) Trium partium Galliae ūnam incolunt Belgae. (*d*) Orgetorix, quī apud Helvētiōs dītissimus est, nōbilitātī persuāsit. (*e*) Hī montēs, quī sunt altissimī, proximī Helvētiīs sunt.

4. (*a*) The Helvetians are-hemmed-in by a broad and deep river. (*b*) Our province extends from the mountains to the river Rhone. (*c*) The Helvetians begin at the province and face north-east. (*d*) The Gauls and the Germans differ from one another in valor.

5. (*a*) To-obtain the-supreme-power of-the-whole-of Spain is very-easy. (*b*) These extend towards the north and west. (*c*) They surpass in refinement all who inhabit the-rest-of Gaul. (*d*) The rivers which are in Gaul are the Seine, the Garumna, the Rhine, the Rhone. (*e*) Aquitania, which is near the ocean, is-inhabited by (**ab**) the Aquitanians. (*f*) The part which the Celts inhabit is very wide.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending **-ō**. 2. Declension of nouns in **-men**. 3. Two translations of the Latin superlative. 4. Difference between Latin and English gender, and the result of this difference, as seen in the translation of pronouns. 5. Preps. with the ablative. 6. Two uses for **quī**. 7. For **quae**. 8. Two parts of speech possible for **Helvētius**; for *Helvetian*. 9. Difference in form and meaning of **lātus** and **altus**. 10. Illustrations of four kinds of agreement in this Lesson.

LESSON XXIV.

1. TEXT.

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā
Helvētiī continentur; ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, latis-
simō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs
dīvidit; alterā ex parte   monte   Iūra altissimō,
the-second on   side by-the-mountain Jura   very-high,

quī   est   inter   Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs;
which is   between the-Sequanians and the-Helvetians;

     tertiā   lacū Lemannō et flūmine
(on) the-third (side) by-the-lake Geneva   and by-the-river

Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab   Helvētiīs
Rhone, which province   our   from the-Helvetians

dīvidit.
divides.

2. NOTES.

1. alterā ex parte: (*a*) for meaning of **ex** and agreement of
alterā, cf. XXIII., N. **1**; (*b*) cf. the order — adj., prep., noun —
with the order in **quā dē causā** X., **ūnā ex parte** XXIII. How
many syllables has the prep. in each case? Is this order always
observed in such phrases? Cf. examples in XVI., XVII., XX.

2. monte: (*a*) What verb, brought forward from XXII., is
limited by this word? Why, then, is it an abl.? (*b*) What is the
nom. sing.? Cf. XX. N. **1**.

3. altissimō; cf. its meaning with that of the same word in
XXIII. and note that **altus** refers to vertical direction either up or
down.

4. inter; cf. its meaning with that in **inter sē** IV.

5. tertiā; limits **parte** in **ex parte** understood; cf. **alterā ex parte** above. For omission of noun, cf. **tertiam, nostrā** III.

6. lacū: (*a*) abl. sing. masc.; (*b*) for form, cf. the abl. sing. masc., **cultū** VI. What ending is common to both? (*c*) Cf. the endings of these abls. sing. with those of **alterā, parte,** and **altissimō** above. In what respect are these endings alike?

7. quī: (*a*) for form and translation, cf. XXIII. N. **4**. (*b*) How do you know whether its antecedent is **flūmine** or **Rhodanō**?

8. dīvidit: (*a*) subj. of this verb? (*b*) Cf., as to structure and meaning, the clause ending at this word with the text of V.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The abl. sing. sometimes ends in **-ū**.

2. All abls. sing. thus far met with end in a vowel.

3. A preposition of one syllable often stands between an adjective and its noun.

4. In Latin, as in English, the noun with which an adjective agrees is often omitted.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **altera**, fem., *one of two, the other, the second.*

2. **Iūra**,[1] a mountain chain in Gaul; see map.

3. **lacū**, abl. sing. masc., *a lake.*

4. **Lemannus,** the name of a lake, *Leman* or *Geneva.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Helvētiī tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō continentur. (*b*) Mōns Iūra est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; lacū Lemannō nostra prōvincia ab Helvētiīs dīvīsa est. (*c*) Nostra prōvincia ab Helvētiīs flūmine Rhodanō dīviditur. (*d*) Mōns Iūra ā

---

[1] The letter **I** is here a consonant, pronounced like *y* in *year;* cf. **coniūrātiōnem** XIX.

flūmine Rhodanō ad flūmen Rhēnum pertinet. (*e*) Pars nostrae prōvinciae Rhodanum attingit.

2. Conversation. — Cūr mercātōrēs facilius ad Celtās commeant ?

Hōc facilius commeant, quod flūmen est proximum.

Quō flūmine prōvincia continētur ?

Id flūmen quō prōvincia continētur est Rhodanus.

Quid Helvātiōs continet ?

Locī nātūra Helvētiōs continet.

Quot (*how many*) ex partibus Helvētiī nātūrā locī continentur ?

Tribus ex partibus Helvētiī lacū et flūminibus et montibus continentur.

Ea-ne in eōrum fīnēs importat ?

Ea in eōrum fīnēs importat.

3. (*a*) The very-high Mount Jura is between the Sequanians and the Helvetians. (*b*) Of all these mountains, the highest is Jura. (*c*) The Celts begin in the mountains and extend to the ocean. (*d*) (There) are three parts, of which Aquitania is one.

4. The Helvetians occupy that part of the territory of the Celts which extends towards the east. They touch the Rhine, the Rhone, and the mountain Jura. On one side they are bounded by a lake. The Germans inhabit the nearest territory, and wage war in the territory of the Helvetians. For this reason the Helvetians are the bravest of the Celts. The Helvetians are separated from our province, in which the merchants dwell.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending -**ū**. 2. All the endings of the abl. singular 3. The order in **alterā ex parte**. 4. Different uses of the abl. met with thus far. 5. Different preps. used to translate the ablative. 6. The meaning of **altus**. 7. Difference between **lātus** and **altus** in form and meaning. 8. Two meanings of **inter**. 9. Of **in**. 10. Of **ad**. 11. The agreement of the relative. 12. The geography of the Helvetian country.

LESSON XXV.

1. TEXT.

His   rēbus   fīēbat,   ut   et   minus
On-account-of-these things it-came-to-pass, that   both   less

lātē   vagārentur,   et   minus   facile   fīnitimīs
widely   they-wandered, and   less   easily   neighbors

bellum   īnferre   possent.
war   to-bear-upon   they-were-able.

2. NOTES.

1. hīs rēbus : (*a*) abl. plur. fem. ; (*b*) note that the abl. here gives the cause of the action expressed by the following verb **fīēbat** ; cf. **hōc** XXII., which gives the cause of **persuāsit** ; (*c*) **hīs** is here an adj. limiting **rēbus** ; cf. **quā** X., **eam** XVII., and E. G. **20**, 3 ; (*d*) for other forms of the same word, cf. **hī** IV., **hōrum** VI., **hōc** XXII.

2. ut, *that* : (*a*) cf. with the same word in XX. and note that in both cases **ut**, *that*, is a conj. ; (*b*) distinguish **ut** from the pronominal adj. **eam**, *that*, XVII. and the pron. **is**, *that-one*, *he*, XIX. ; (*c*) note also that the Eng. conj. *that*, used after the verb of saying **dictum est** in the free translation of XIII., has no corresponding word in Latin.

3. minus : (*a*) Eng. derivatives ? (*b*) Irregular comparative of an adverb ; (*c*) cf. irregular superlative **minimē**, *least*, VII. (*d*) What does **minus** limit ?

4. lātē, *widely* : (*a*) What part of speech ? (*b*) Cf. the adj. **lātus**, *wide*. How may the adv. be formed from the nom. plur. of the adj. ?

(*c*) What is the superlative of **lātē**? Cf. **lātissimō** XXIII. and **longissimē** VI.

5. vagārentur : (*a*) pass. in form, act. in meaning ; cf. **oriuntur** XVI., **potīrī** XXI. ; (*b*) cf. **exīrent** XX., **praestārent** XXI. What two letters are found in all three forms just before the personal endings? All these verbs are subjunctives and are past imperfects; cf. E. G. **39, 41**, and **70**.

6. facile, *easily :* (*a*) What part of speech, here? What part of speech is **perfacile** XXI.? (*b*) Cf. **facilius**, *more easily*, XXII. How, then, do you form the comparative of an adv. from the positive? What means *more widely?* Cf. E. G. **26, 30**.

7. īnferre : (*a*) compounded of prep. **in**, *into, upon*, and **ferre**, *to bear ;* cf. **praestārent** XXI., compounded of **prae**, *before*, and **stārent**, *they stood ;* (*b*) **īnferre** has the preceding dat. **fīnitimīs** as its indirect obj., just as **praestārent** has the dat. **omnibus** as its indirect object.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives ending in **-us** regularly form the corresponding adverbs by changing **-us** to **-ē**.

2. The following are adverbial endings : **-ē**, positive ; **-ius**, comparative ; **-issimē**, superlative. The comparative and superlative endings are not added to the positive, but take the place of the positive ending.

3. The past imperfect subjunctive is distinguished by the letters **-re-** immediately before the personal ending.

4. The Eng. word *that* is translated into Latin sometimes by **ut**, sometimes by some form of the pron. **is**, but sometimes it has no corresponding word at all.

5. The ablative is used without a preposition to express the cause of an action.

6. The dative is used as the indirect object of many verbs compounded with prepositions.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **fīēbat**, *it was being made* or *done, it was happening.*

2. **fīnitimus**, adj., (**fīnēs**, *borders, boundaries*), *bordering upon, neighboring*; in plur. masc., usually a noun meaning *neighbors.*

3. **īnferre**, *to bear into* or *upon, to wage upon.*

4. **lātē**, adv., *widely.*

5. **minus**, adv. in comparative, *less;* cf. **minimē**, *least.*

6. **posse** (compound of **esse**, *to be*), *to be able.*

7. **rēbus**, abl. plur. fem., *things;* cf. Eng. *rebus.*

8. **vagārī**, *to wander;* for form and meaning, cf. **potīrī** XXI.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Fīēbat ut Helvētiī minus lātē vagārentur. (*b*) Fīēbat ut mercātōrēs id importārent. (*c*) Helvētiī cum Germānīs contendunt. Quā dē causā reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. (*d*) Initium proeliī Mārcus fēcit. (*e*) Īnstitūta eōrum quī eōs fīnēs incolunt inter sē differunt.

2. (*a*) Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut mercātōrēs ad Aquītānōs commeārent. (*b*) Hīs facile persuāsit ut in fīnēs reliquōrum Gallōrum exīrent. (*c*) Fīnitimī proximīs in fīnibus vagantur. (*d*) Fīnitimōs quibuscum bellum gerunt virtūte praecēdunt. (*e*) Rēgna quae obtinent Helvētiae cīvitātī proxima sunt.

3. (*a*) On-account-of-these things the Helvetians wander less widely. (*b*) On-account-of-the-river and the mountain they very seldom visit our province. (*c*) Orgetorix goes-back-and-forth across the kingdoms of Gaul. (*d*) In the consulship of Messala and Piso, Orgetorix persuaded the neighboring nobility. (*e*) It came to pass that they went out-of their territory.

4. (*a*) Since he surpassed all in valor, he made a beginning of conspiracy. (*b*) The Germans contend with the Helvetians in daily battles. (*c*) It has been said that the Belgians are far distant from the refinement of these. (*d*) These (men), influenced by the desire for (of) the nearest fields, wage war very bravely. (*e*) They are farther distant from the river.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The comparison of adverbs. **2.** Difference in form of adjectives and adverbs. **3.** The personal endings in active. **4.** Personal endings in passive. **5.** The ending **-re** in verbs. **6.** The letters **-re-** when used before personal endings. **7.** Meaning of **vagārentur. 8.** How to say *that* in Latin. **9.** Three uses of the dative. **10.** Four uses of the ablative without a preposition. **11.** Two parts of speech possible for **hīs** or **quā. 12.** The words for *less* and *least*. **13.** Two meanings for **facile.**

LESSON XXVI.

1. TEXT.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus latē vagārentur, et mi-
nus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex
<div align="right">which in</div>

parte   hominēs   bellandī   cupidī   māgnō   dolōre
respect   men   of-warring   fond   with-great   grief

afficiēbantur.
were-affected.

2. NOTES.

1. quā ex parte, *from which consideration, in this respect;* for order of words and use of **quā,** cf. **ūnā ex parte** XXIII.

2. bellandī : (*a*) verbal noun, corresponding in many of its uses to the Eng. verbal *warring*; cf. E. G., **20,** 2 ; (*b*) gen. sing., depending on the following adj. **cupidī.**

3. cupidī : (*a*) nom. plur. masc. What does it limit? (*b*) Distinguish the ending **-ī** as used here from **-ī** in **bellandī** above, and **-ī** in **cīvitātī** XX.

4. **dolōre**: (*a*) Case and why? (*b*) What do you know about the gender of **dolōre** from the ending of **magnō**? (*c*) In what respect is it similar in form to **mercātōr-ēs** VII., **īnferiōr-em** XVI.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending **-ī** is found in the gen. sing. and the nom. plur. of the 2d decl., and in the dat. sing. of the 3d.

2. The Latin has a verbal noun like the English verbal in *-ing*. It has the endings of the 2d declension.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **afficiēbat**, *he affected* or *he was affecting*; **affēcit**, *he affected*; cf. **fēcit** XIX.
2. **bellat**, *he wars, wages war*.
3. **cupidus**, *desirous, fond*; cf. **cupiditās**, *desire, fondness*.
4. **dolōre**, abl. sing. masc., *pain, grief*.
5. **hominēs**, *men*.
6. **magnus**, *great*.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline the masc. **magnus**; (*b*) the fem. **magna**; (*c*) the neut. **magnum**. (*d*) Write all the forms you know of the pron. **quā**. (*e*) Write four sing. and four plur. cases of **dolōre**.

2. (*a*) Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut hominēs bellandī cupidī minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent. (*b*) Quā ex causā Helvētiī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. (*c*) Rēgnum in suā cīvitāte Mārcus obtinet. (*d*) Hīs causīs Germānī proeliīs contendunt. (*e*) Bella Germānōrum sunt magna.

3. Conversation.[1] — Quōs flūmina et montēs dīvidunt?
Mercātōrēs ab Helvētiīs montēs et flūmina dīvidunt.

---

[1] It is earnestly recommended that all of the class-room work on these "Conversations" and the review of other "Exercises" be conducted *viva voce*, in order to secure training for the ear. It is hoped, too, that every teacher will give frequent *impromptu* conversation exercises, framing questions of his own similar to those in the book.

Quid fīēbat ?

Hī hominēs cupiditāte bellandī inductī lātē vagābantur.

Quōs hōc locō prohibent ?

Eōs hominēs quī ea important hōc locō prohibent.

Quid Helvētiōs afficiēbat ?

Nātūra locī in quō incolunt Helvētiōs afficiēbat.

Flūmen-ne Helvētiōs continet ?

Lacum et flūmen agrum Helvētiōrum continēre dictum est.

4. (*a*) He persuaded them to wander[1] more-widely in the country of the-rest-of the Gauls. (*b*) The Germans contend with the Helvetians in daily battles. (*c*) That (man) is great. (*d*) These men are great. (*e*) He is fond of warring with his neighbors.

5. (*a*) It has been said that the Belgians are far distant from the refinement of those who inhabit the province. (*b*) These men, influenced by the desire for large fields, wage war with the Aquitanians. (*c*) The merchants bring-in these (things), because the Gauls to whom they are brought are fond of refinement. (*d*) A river divides the lower place from the highest mountains. (*e*) Our province, which is next to the Aquitanians, extends toward the east and reaches the mountains.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Three uses of the ending **-ī**. 2. Difference in part of speech of *skating* in *the boy is skating* and *the boy likes skating*. 3. Different translations of **pars**. 4. Difference between **cupidus** and **cupiditās**. 5. Abls. of means in text thus far. 6. Instances of agreement in this Lesson. 7. Words with **-ōr-** before the ending. 8. English derivatives from words in this Lesson. 9. Syllables of **afficiēbantur**.

[1] *To wander* = **ut vagārentur** ; cf. **ut exīrent** XX.

LESSON XXVII.

1. TEXT.

Prō	multitūdine	autem	hominum	et
Considering	*the-great-number*	*moreover*	*of-men*	*and*

prō	glōriā	bellī	atque	fortitūdinis
considering	*the-glory*	*of-war*	*and*	*of-bravery*

angustōs	sē	fīnīs	habēre	arbitrābantur.
narrow	*themselves*	*territory*	*to-have*	*they-thought.*

2. NOTES.

1. prō : (*a*) a prep. ; for meaning, see Vocab. (*b*) What case is used with it ? What other preps. have thus far been used with the ablative ?

2. hominum : (*a*) What is the case and what is its ending ? Cf. **hominēs** XXVI. (*b*) Cf. **omnium** VI., and note that the gen. plur. here appears to end in **-ium** not **-um**. The gen. plur. of **pars** XIII. and **orientem** XVI. is like that of **omnis**, while the gen. plur. of **flūmen** V. is like that of **hominum**.

3. sē ; for case, cf. **inter sē** IV.

4. fīnīs : (*a*) note that the first meaning is *boundaries ;* hence, what is enclosed within boundaries, *territory, land ;* (*b*) accus. plur. masc. What is the ending ? Cf. **fīnibus** XII. (*c*) The nom. sing. is **fīnis**, like **omnis** I. How does the ending of **fīnīs** differ from the nom. sing. ending ? (*d*) The ending **-īs** is found in the accus. plur. of such words as **omnis**, **pars**, **oriēns**, but even here the ending **-ēs** is also found ; cf. **partēs** I. (*e*) By what adj. is **fīnīs** limited ?

5. habēre ; for form and use, cf. **obtinēre** XIII. N. 4.

6. arbitrābantur : (*a*) note its translation and its personal ending ; cf. **oriuntur** XVI., **vagārentur** XXV.; (*b*) **sē habēre arbitrāban-**

tur, *they thought themselves to have,* or better, *they thought that they had* (cf. E. G. **68,** *c* and *d*) ; the thought in their minds was *we have ;* (*c*) cf. **Gallōs obtinēre dictum est** XIII., and note that in one instance a statement is made after a verb of thinking, in the other, after a verb of saying. (*d*) In what mode are both **obtinēre** and **habēre** ? In what case is the subject of each ? In the free translation what English mode is used ? Is there any word in Latin for the word *that* of the free translation ?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The gen. plur. of the 3d decl. ends in **-um,** but in words having the nom. sing. endings **-is, -rs, -ns,** and in some others, the **-um** is immediately preceded by **i.**

2. Third decl. forms with nom. sing. endings **-is, -ns,** and **-rs** have either **-ēs** or **īs** in the accus. plural.

3. The preps. **ā** or **ab, cum, dē, ex, in** translated *in* or *on,* and **prō,** are used with the ablative.

4. Some Latin verbs have an act. meaning with a pass. form ; such verbs are called " deponent."

5. After a verb of saying or thinking, (1) the verb of the principal statement is in the inf.; (2) this inf. may then be translated by the indicative ; (3) the subj. of the inf. is in the accus.; and (4) the English word *that,* which commonly introduces such a quotation, has no corresponding word in Latin.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **angustus,** *narrow.*
2. **arbitrārī** (cf. **potī-rī** XXI.), to judge, think.
3. **autem,** conj., *but, however, moreover.*
4. **fortitūdinis** (**fortis,** *brave*), *of bravery.*
5. **glōria,** *glory.*
6. **habēre,** *to have, hold.*
7. **multitūdine,** abl. sing., *a great number, a multitude.*
8. **prō,** prep. with abl., *in front of, in behalf of, instead of, for, in proportion to, considering;* cf. Eng. *for,* E. G. **72.**

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) All the forms of **habēre** which the pupil should know.
(*b*) Decl. of **glōriā**; (*c*) **bellī**; (*d*) **angustōs**; (*e*) **fīnīs**; (*f*) **hominum**, except nom. sing.; (*g*) **multitūdine**, except nom. singular.

2. (*a*) Prō multitūdine hominum angustōs fīnēs Helvētiī habent.
(*b*) Prō glōriā atque fortitūdine Helvētiī angustōs esse suōs fīnēs arbitrantur. (*c*) Quod Helvētiī lacū et flūminibus et montibus continentur, minus lātē vagantur. (*d*) Hominum multitūdinem habet. (*e*) Is trāns hōs fīnēs cum hominibus contendit.

3. (*a*) Gallum cupidum glōriae esse dictum est. (*b*) Eōrum fīnīs Aquītānī attingunt. (*c*) Hominēs quōs montēs continent māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. (*d*) Helvētiī, quod virtūte aliōs hominēs praecēdunt, cupidī bellī sunt. (*e*) Perfacile est fortēs hominēs māgnā glōriā potīrī.

4. (*a*) The territory of the Helvetians is narrow. (*b*) The Celts hold a third part of Gaul. (*c*) He holds the-supreme-power of a large state. (*d*) The mountain slopes to the river. (*e*) These brave men are-warring.

5. (*a*) He takes all his men, of-whom he has a-great-number.
(*b*) Considering the nature of the country, the Helvetians wander very-widely. (*c*) It came to pass that they went out-of their country with all their forces. (*d*) Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians of this. (*e*) The Helvetians have a great desire for (of) warring with their neighbors.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. All the uses of ending **-īs**. **2.** Distinction between **-īs** and **-is**. **3.** The ending of gen. plur. in 3d declension. **4.** Preps. with the ablative. **5.** Connection of the various meanings of **prō** with the first meaning *in-front-of*. **6.** Meaning of the word "deponent." **7.** Four very important facts about a statement after a verb of saying or thinking. **8.** The meaning of **fīnēs**. **9.** The ending of the act. infinitive. **10.** The reason why the Helvetians left their boundaries.

LESSON XXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnīs habēre arbitrābantur,

quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum ducenta
which in (into) length thousands of-paces two-hundred

et quadrāgintā, in lātitūdinem centum et
and forty, in (into) width a-hundred and

octōgintā patēbant.
eighty extended.

2. NOTES.

1. quī: (*a*) What is the antec., and how do you know it? (*b*) Why is it correct to translate the Lat. masc. **quī** by the Eng. so-called neuter *which*? Cf. IX. **2**, 6.

2. mīlia: (*a*) accus. plural. What is its gender? (*b*) Note that the ending **-a** is preceded by **i**, and cf. **omnium** VI.; (*c*) for explanation of case, cf. E. G. **60**, 1.

3. passuum: (*a*) What case? Note that **u** precedes the ending **-um**, as **i** precedes it in **omnium**, and cf. **cultū** VI., **lacū** XXIV.; (*b*) for explanation of case, cf. VI. N. **3**, *c*.

4. ducenta; accus. plur. neuter. With what does it agree?

5. lātitūdinem: (*a*) cf. its form with the form of **multitūdine**, **fortitūdinis** XXVII., and that of **longitūdinem** above. What five letters immediately before the ending in each of these words? (*b*) **in lātitūdinem** means strictly, *into width*, though translated properly *in width*; cf. the free translation of **ā flūmine** XIII., **ab Sēquanīs** XV., **ūnā ex parte** XXIII., and E. G. **74**, 1.

6. octōgintā; this is not an abl., as it seems to be from its ending, but an indeclinable adj.; *i. e.*, an adj. which (like all Eng. adjs. except *this* and *that*) remains unchanged in form, whatever it limits; cf. E. G. **25**. The preceding **centum** and **quadrāgintā** are also indeclinable. All these adjs. limit **mīlia.**

7. patēbant: (*a*) What is the subj. of this verb? (*b*) For form, cf. **fīēbat** XXV., **afficiēbantur** XXVI., **arbitrābantur** XXVII. What two letters are found in all these forms immediately before the personal ending? These letters distinguish the past imperfect tense in the indicative mode, and are called its sign; thus, **pate-nt**, *they extend*, **patē-ba-nt**, *they were extending*, or more indefinitely, *they extended;* for force of the past imperfect, cf. E. G. **39, 41.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The past imperfect tense represents the action as going on in past time. The word "imperfect" is understood to mean past imperfect, though an action may be represented as incomplete in the present or future.

2. A Lat. imperfect is often idiomatically but somewhat inaccurately translated by a simple Eng. past; cf. E. G. **74**, 2 and 3.

3. The sign of the imperfect indicative is -**ba**-, inserted between the stem and personal ending.

4. The Lat. has many 3d decl. nouns with stems ending in -**tūdin**-.

5. The Latin frequently uses a prep. denoting motion to or from a place where the English less accurately uses a prep. denoting position in a place.

6. Some Latin numeral adjectives are not declined.

7. In Latin, as in English, extent of space is expressed by the accusative.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **centum**, indecl. numeral adj., *one hundred.*

2. **ducentī**, numeral adj., *two hundred.*

3. **longitūdinem**, accus. sing.
      fem., *length.*
4. **lātitūdinem**, accus. sing.
      fem., *width ;* cf. **lātus,**
      wide.
5. **mīlia** or **mīllia**, neut. plur.,
      thousands.
6. **octōgintā**, indecl. num. adj.,
      eighty.

7. **passuum**, gen. plur. masc.,
      of paces (the Roman mile
      was a thousand paces, and
      the Roman pace was a little
      less than five feet).
8. **patēre**, *to lie open, extend.*
9. **quadrāgintā**, indecl. num.
      adj., *forty.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Fīnēs angustōs Helvētiī habent, quī in lātitūdinem mīlia passuum centum et octōgintā patent. (*b*) Quod Helvētiī lacū et flūminibus et montibus continēbantur, fīēbat ut minus lātē vagārī possent. (*c*) Fortium hominum multitūdinem habēbat. (*d*) Helvētiī cum omnibus cōpiīs vagābantur. (*e*) Helvētiōrum cōpiās Rōmānī praecēdunt.

2. (*a*) Cupiditāte glōriae inductī reliquīs cum Gallīs contendēbant. (*b*) Fīnēs Helvētiōrum ā lacū ad flūmen pertinēbant. (*c*) Hī fīnēs mīlia passuum ducenta et quadrāgintā pertinent. (*d*) Fīnēs quōs Belgae obtinent lātitūdine agrum Helvētium praecēdunt. (*e*) Is suīs cōpiīs quadrāgintā mīlia hominum capit.

3. (**a**) The Helvetian country extended two hundred and forty miles in length. (**b**) The mountains were sloping to the river. (**c**) The Helvetians surpass all their neighbors in valor. (**d**) Two hundred men are in the field which is near the river. (**e**) It has been said that the Celts possess a third part of Gaul.

4. (**a**) They think that the fields of the province are very-broad. (**b**) It has been said that the merchants very seldom visit the Belgians. (**c**) The Helvetians were greatly troubled (were affected with great sorrow) because they were-hemmed-in by the nature of the country. (**d**) They keep the Germans from the narrow boundaries. (**e**) They often hasten across the river Rhine and wage war with the nearest Germans.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The meaning of the word "imperfect" in naming a tense.
2. The exact translation of the imperfect. 3. The sign of the imperfect indicative. 4. The tense sign in **praestārent**. 5. Difference between Lat. and Eng. use of prepositions. 6. How to express extent of space, or answer question "how far?" 7. Likeness in spelling of **quadrāgintā** and **octōgintā**. 8. Likeness in respect to inflection. 9. Likeness in form of **mīlia** and **omnium**. 10. Of **omnium** and **passuum**. 11. Of **passuum** and **cultū**. 12. The stem ending -**tūdin**-. 13. Eng. derivatives from words in this Lesson.

GALLIC SWORDS OF BRONZE.

LESSON XXIX.

REVIEW

Lessons XIX.–XXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar's "Gallic War," Book I., Chapter **2**.
Follow strictly all the directions given under "Text" in IX.

2 GRAMMAR LESSON

1. **Inflection of Nouns and Adjectives**. — For 1st Decl., see IX.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Gall-us	Gall-ī	omn-is	omn-ēs	par-s	part-ēs
Gen.	Gall-ī	Gall-ōrum	omn-is	omn-ium	part-is	part-ium
Dat.	Gall-ō	Gall-īs	omn ī	omn-ibus	part-ī	part-ibus
Accus.	Gall-um	Gall-ōs	omn-em	omn-ēs (īs)	part-em	part-ēs (īs)
Abl.	Gall-ō	Gall-īs	——	omn-ibus	part-e	part-ibus

NEUTERS.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Gen.	bell-um	bell-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
Nom.	bell ī	bell-ōrum	flūmin-is	flūmin-um
Dat.	bell-ō	bell-īs	flūmin-ī	flumin-ibus
Accus.	bell-um	bell-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
Abl.	bell-ō	bell īs	flūmin-e	flūmin-ibus

OBSERVATIONS ON THE ABOVE.

Every form of nouns and adjs. in **-us** has been found in the text except the dat. sing., and this is the same as the abl. singular. Neuters in **-um** are declined like masculines in **-us** except in the nom. and accus. sing. and plural.

The decl. of nouns ending in **-rs** like **pars** is complete.   Nouns and adjs. in **-ns** are declined in the same way.   Nouns in **-tās** are

declined in the same way except that the gen. plur. often ends in **-um** instead of **-ium.** Note that in all these cases the final **t** of the stem is dropped before the nom. sing. ending **-s.**

Many 3d decl. nouns have the gen. plur. in **-um** (like **hominum** XXVII.). What change in a stem vowel of **flūmen** in decl. ?

The ending **-ū** has been met as an abl. sing. and **-uum,** as a genitive plural. Some Lat. numeral adjs. are not declined at all.

2. **Inflection of pronouns.** — In general, prons. have endings like those of nouns and adjs. already given, but the following peculiar forms have been discovered : —

is, nom. sing. masc. ; **id,** nom. and accus. sing. neuter.

hōc, abl. sing. neuter.

sē, accus. plur. masculine.

quī, as nom. sing. masc. ; **quae,** both nom. sing. fem. and nom. and accus. plur. neut. ; **quibus,** abl. plur. masc., a 3d decl. form, while most of the forms of the relative are of the 1st or 2d declension.

3. **Inflection of Verbs.**

Active.

PRES. IND.

Sing.	**appella-t**	**prohibe-t**	**dīvidi-t**
Plur.	**appella-nt**	**prohibe-nt**	**dīvidu-nt**

IMPF. IND.

Sing.	**appellā-ba-t**	**prohibē-ba-t**	——
Plur.	**appellā-ba-nt**	**prohibē-ba-nt**	——

IMPF. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing.	**appellā-re-t**	**prohibē-re-t**	——
Plur.	**appellā-re-nt**	**prohibē-re-nt**	——

PRES. INF.

	appellā-re	**prohibē-re**	——

Passive.

PRES. IND.

Sing.	**appellā-tur**	**prohibē-tur**	**dīvidi-tur**
Plur.	**appella-ntur**	**prohibe-ntur**	**dīvidu-ntur**

IMPF. IND.

Sing.	**appellā-bā-tur**	**prohibē-bā-tur**	——
Plur.	**appellā-ba-ntur**	**prohibē-ba-ntur**	——

IMPF. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing.	**appellā-rē-tur**	**prohibē-rē-tur**	——
Plur.	**appellā-re-ntur**	**prohibē-re-ntur**	——

PRES. INF.

——	——	——

The term "imperfect," as used in Lat. grammar, always means past imperfect. The impf. is often translated, however, like a simple past. We have had a few forms of a perfect (**fēcit**, **persuāsit**), which were translated like a simple past.

Some verbs which are pass. in form are act. in meaning.

4. Formation and inflection of adverbs. — Adjs. ending in **-us** in the nom. sing. masc. form the corresponding adv. by changing this ending to **-ē**. The comparative is formed by substituting the ending **-ius** for **-ē** of the positive, and the superlative by substituting **-issimē**.

5. Use of cases. — The verb **persuādēre**, *to persuade*, is followed by the accus. of the thing *to*, or *of*, which one is *persuaded*, and by the dat. of the person who is *persuaded*. The dat. is used after some verbs compounded with prepositions.

Extent of space is expressed by the accus., as in English, and the accus. is used as the subject of an infinitive.

The preps. **ā** or **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **in** and **prō** are used with the ablative. The abl. without a prep. is used to express cause.

6. Saying or thinking. — The principal statement after a verb of saying or thinking; (1) has its verb in the inf.; (2) which is then translated like the ind.; and (3) has an accus. for its subj.; (4) the word *that* which usually introduces such a statement does not appear in Latin.

7. Translation. — *Very* (rather than *most* or the ending *-est*) is often used to translate the superlative degree.

Since the names of things are often masc. or fem. in Latin, the English *which* may be used to translate a masc. or a fem. pronoun.

That is sometimes translated by the conj. **ut**, sometimes by a form of **is**, and sometimes has no corresponding word in Latin.

The Latin has a verbal noun which may be translated by the English verbal noun in *-ing*.

Latin preps. denoting motion *to* or *from* a place must often be translated by English preps. denoting rest in a place.

8. **Miscellaneous.** — In Latin (as in English), the name of a people and the adj. meaning belonging to that people often have the same form.

A single-syllable prep. often stands between an adj. and its noun. The noun with which an adj. agrees is often omitted if it can be readily supplied from the context.

3. WORD REVIEW.

Follow the directions given under "Word Review" in IX.
The last ten lessons contain the following new words.

VERB FORMS.

1. afficiēbantur	5. fīēbat	9. patēbant	13. praestārent
2. arbitrābantur	6. fuit	10. persuāsit	14. vagārentur
3. exīrent	7. habēre	11. possent	
4. fēcit	8. īnferre	12. potīrī	

NOUN, PRONOMINAL AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

1st Declension.   *2d Declension.*

1. alterā	1. agrum	10. inductus
2. cōpiīs	2. altissimō	11. lātissimō
3. glōriā	3. angustōs	12. Lemannō
4. Iūrā	4. bellandī	13. locī
5. nātūrā	5. cupidī	14. māgnō
	6. dītissimus	15. Mārcō
	7. ducenta	16. nōbilissimus
	8. fīnitimīs	17. rēgnī
	9. imperiō	18. tōtīus

3d *Declension.*

1. cīvitātī
2. coniūrātiōnem
3. cōnsulibus
4. cupiditāte
5. dolōre
6. fortitūdinis
7. hominēs
8. lātitūdinem
9. longitūdinem
10. mīlia
11. multitūdine
12. nōbilitātis
13. Orgetorix
14. perfacile
15. Pīsōne.

Unclassified.

1. lacū
2. passuum
3. rēbus

Indeclinable.

1. centum
2. octōgintā
3. quadrāgintā

ADVERBS.

1. autem
2. facile
3. lātē
4. minus
5. undique

PREPOSITIONS.

1. apud
2. ex
3. prō

CONJUNCTION.

ut

4 EXERCISES

1. Conversation. Answer in Latin the following questions : —

Quis (*who*) fuit Orgetorix ?

Quī fuērunt [1] cōnsulēs ubi (*when*) is coniūrātiōnem fēcit ?

Quibus persuāsit ?

Quid (*what*) eīs persuāsit ?

Cūr eīs facile persuāsit ?

Quō flūmine Helvētiī continentur ?

Quā ex parte flūmine continentur ?

Quō monte Helvētiī continentur ?

Quō lacū Helvētiī continentur ?

---

[1] This word has not been used before. The pupil by comparing it with **fuit** will see its meaning and agreement.

Quā ā prōvinciā Rhodanus Helvētiōs dīvidit?

Cūr Helvētiī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur?

Quam (*how*) longī sunt eōrum fīnēs?

Quam lātī sunt eōrum fīnēs?

2. Write in Latin. The Swiss, who are very brave, inhabit narrow boundaries. These boundaries extend from the Rhine river to Mount Jura, two hundred and forty miles from east to west. They dwell among the mountains, which are very high, or near Lake Geneva, which touches their country. Men who wander across the ocean and in places which are far distant from our country often visit the Swiss mountains. Very many people (a multitude of men) think that these mountains surpass all others (*i. e.*, other mountains).

LESSON XXX.

1. TEXT.

Hīs	rēbus	adductī	et	auctōritāte	Orgetorigis
By-these	*things*	*led*	*and*	*by-the-advice*	*of-Orgetorix*

permōtī	cōnstituērunt	ea,	quae	ad
deeply-moved	*they-determined*	*those-things,*	*which*	*to*

proficiscendum	pertinērent,	comparāre,	iūmen-
departing	*pertained,*	*to-prepare,*	*of-beasts-*

tōrum	et	carrōrum	quam	maximum	numerum
of-burden	*and*	*of-carts*	*as-much-as*	*the-greatest*	*number*

coëmere.
to-buy-up.

2 NOTE

1. Orgetorigis : (*a*) What is the case-ending? What the stem? (*b*) forms the nom. sing. by adding **-s**, like **cīvitās** and **pars** ; cf. XX. N. **1** ; (*c*) the final **g** of the stem is not dropped before **s**, like **t**,

but unites with it, and **gs** is always written **x**   What then is the nom. sing. of **Orgetorigis** ?   What of **lēgibus** in IV. ?

2. permōtī : (*a*) cf. **adductī** just before, **dictum** XIII., **inductus** XIX.   Judging from the translation, what is the voice and tense of each of these participles ?   Cf. E. G. **33.**   (*b*) How are they declined ?   (*c*) What letter has each before the case-ending ?   (*d*) Note that **dīvīsa** I. is of the 1st decl., and that the letter **s** precedes the case ending

3. cōnstituērunt : (*a*) How does the form of this verb show its number ?   (*b*) **adductī** and **permōtī** both agree with its subject. What, then, are the case, number, and gender of these participles ?

4. ea quae ; cf. **ea quae** VII.

5. proficiscendum : (*a*) the accus. of the Lat. gerund, which corresponds to the Eng. verbal noun in -*ing ;* cf. E. G. **20,** 2, and **bellandī** XXVI. N. **2.**   (*b*) What similarity of form have **proficiscendum** and **bellandī** ?

6. pertinērent ; mode and tense ?   Cf. **vagārentur** XXV. N. **5,** and the pres. ind. **pertinent** XVI.

7. comparāre : (*a*) for mode and ending, cf. **obtinēre** XIII. N. **4** ; (*b*) used to complete the meaning of **cōnstituērunt**, just as **īnferre** is used to complete the meaning of **possent** in XXV.

8. quam, adv., *how, as ;* with the superlative degree it is best translated *possible ;* thus, **quam maximum numerum**, *the greatest possible number.*

9. coëmere : (*a*) completes the meaning of **cōnstituērunt** like **comparāre 7** ; (*b*) cf. **coëmere** with **habēre**.   What difference in the quantity of the **e** before -**re** ?   (*c*) Those verbs which have short **e** in the penult of the inf. have **i** and **u** (instead of **e**) before the personal endings in the 3d person of the present tense ; cf. **dīvidit** V., **gerunt** VIII., and XXIX., **2,** 3.   (*d*) What vowel before -**re** in **comparāre** ?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Stems in -**g** of the 3d decl., as well as those in -**t**, form the nom. by adding -**s**.   The combination -**gs** thus formed is always represented in Latin by -**x**.

2. The perfect passive participle is declined like an adj. of the 1st and 2d decls. It is distinguished by the letter **t** (sometimes **s**) before the case-endings.

3. Verbs are divided into different classes, or conjugations. These are distinguished by the letter which precedes the **-re** of the pres. inf. active. This letter is called the CHARACTERISTIC.

4. The characteristic of the 1st conjug. is **ā**, of the 2d, **ē**; of the 3d, **e**. That of the 4th conjug. has yet to be learned.

5. The characteristic of the 3d conjug. is changed to **i** in the pres. ind. 3d sing., and to **u** in the pres. ind. 3d plural.

6. The adv. **quam** with the superlative denotes the highest degree possible.

7. The Latin gerund, corresponding in some respects to the English verbal in -*ing*, has the letters -**nd**- before the endings of the 2d declension.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **addūcere**, *to lead* or *draw to, to influence*.
2. **auctōritās**, *advice, authority, influence*.
3. **carrus**, *a cart*.
4. **coëmere**, *to buy up*.
5. **comparāre**, *to prepare, to make ready*.
6. **cōnstituere**, *to set together, arrange, determine*.
7. **iūmentum**, neut., *a yoke animal, beast of burden*.
8. **maximus** (irregular superlative of **māgnus**), *greatest*.
9. **numerus**, *a number*.
10. **permovēre**, *to move thoroughly* or *deeply*.
11. **proficiscendum**, *a departing, departure*.
12. **quam**, adv., *how, as;* with the superlative it may be translated *possible*.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Declension of **auctōritāte**; (*b*) **Orgetorigis**; (*c*) **carrōrum**; (*d*) **iūmentōrum**. (*e*) Write all the forms you know of **adductī**; (*f*) **coëmere**; (*g*) **comparāre**; (*h*) **pertinērent**, in the active.

2. (*a*) Helvētiī hīs rēbus permōtī cōnstituērunt dē fīnibus suīs
exīre. (*b*) Helvētiī cōnstituērunt iūmenta et carrōs coëmere.
(*c*) Auctōritās Orgetorigis, quā hī addūcēbantur, maxima fuit.
(*d*) Ea, quae ad bellandum pertinērent, comparābant. (*e*) Quam
maximus numerus carrōrum comparātur.

3. (*a*) Dictum est mercātōrēs ad Helvētiōs iūmenta minimē saepe
importāre. (*b*) Quod Helvētiī fortissimī fuērunt, proeliīs cum reli-
quīs Gallīs contendere cōnstituērunt. (*c*) Orgetorix eīs persuāsit ut
carrōs iūmentaque ex fīnitimīs importārent. (*d*) Hominēs bellandī
cupidī cum fīnitimīs bellum gerēbant. (*e*) Eōrum fīnēs ā montibus
altissimīs ad flūmen altum pertinēbant.

4. (*a*) The Helvetian state is nearest to Mount Jura. (*b*) The
advice of Orgetorix influences the Helvetians. (*c*) Those-things which
are prepared have-to-do with (pertain to) departure. (*d*) Orgetorix
persuaded them to prepare these-things. (*e*) They buy up the beasts-
of-burden which are imported.

5. (*a*) Large carts are-bought-up. (*b*) He persuaded the Helve-
tians to-buy-up carts. (*c*) The beasts-of-burden draw the carts which
are imported. (*d*) He was preparing the largest possible number
of men. (*e*) He determines to wage war upon those who live near
the ocean.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The equivalent of **x**. 2. Words which have the nom. sing.
ending **-s**. 3. The letter **t** before **s**. 4. The letter **g** before **s**.
5. Characteristic vowels **ā**, **ē**, **e**. 6. Pres. ind. of 3d conjugation.
7. The perfect passive participle. 8. **-t, -nt, -tur, -ntur, -ba-,
-re-, -re**. 9. Use of **quam**. 10. The Latin gerund.

LESSON XXXI.

1. TEXT.

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī
cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent,
comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum
numerum   coëmere,   sēmentēs   quam   maximās
                                  sowings *as-much-as* *the-greatest*

facere,   ut   in   itinere   cōpia   frūmentī
to-make, *in-order-that* *on* *the-journey* *plenty* *of-grain*

  suppeteret,   cum   proximīs   cīvitātibus
might-be-on-hand,   *with*   *the-nearest*   *states*

pācem   et   amīcitiam   cōnfirmāre.
peace   *and*   *friendship*   *to-establish.*

2. NOTES.

1. maximās : (*a*) What does it limit? (*b*) For force of pre-
ceding **quam** with it, cf. XXX. N. **8**. (*c*) What is the gender of
the adj. **maximās**, and of what decl. is it? What is the gender
and decl. of **maximum** (a form of the same word) in XXX. ? Cf.
also the neut. **ea** XXX. with the fem. **eam** XVII., and the masc.
eōs VII. What do these examples show about the gender of adjs.
and prons. ?

2. facere : (*a*) for its form, cf. **coëmere** XXX. ; (*b*) it completes
the meaning of **cōnstituērunt** XXX.

3. in itinere : (*a*) note that **in** is sometimes translated *on*.
(*b*) What, judging from the ending, is the case of **itinere**, and
what its declension ?

4. suppeteret : (*a*) mode, tense, number? (*b*) What is its con-
jugation ? Cf. XXX. N. **9**, *c* ; Obs. **4**. (*c*) What is its subject ?

(*d*) it denotes a state or condition, rather than an act; note its translation.

5. **pācem**: (*a*) stem **pāc-**; (*b*) the nom. is formed by adding **-s** to the stem; **pācs = pāx**; cf. **Orgetorigis** XXX. N. **1**.

6. **cōnfirmāre**: (*a*) for form and conjug., cf. **comparāre** XXX. (*b*) Of what does it complete the meaning? (*c*) What are its objects?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Third decl. stems in **-c**, like those in **-g**, form their nominatives by adding **s**. The **cs** thus formed is equivalent to **x**.

2. Since the same adjective must agree with nouns of different genders, the Lat. adj. is inflected for gender as well as for case and number. So, too, with most pronouns.

3. When the masc. and neut. of an adj. are of the 2d decl., the fem. is always of the 1st declension.

4. Many Latin verbs express state or condition rather than action. Such verbs are usually translated by English phrases, not by single words.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **amīcitia**, *friendship*.
2. **cōnfirmāre**, *to strengthen, establish, encourage, affirm*.
3. **cōpia**, *plenty, a supply*; in plur., *forces, troops*.
4. **frūmentum**, *grain*.
5. **itinere**, abl. sing. neut., *journey, route, march*.
6. **pāx**, fem. (**pācis**, gen.), *peace*.
7. **sēmentis**, fem., *a sowing, planting*.
8. **suppetere** (**sub** and **petere**), *to be on hand, to be in store*.

EXERCISES.

1. Decline together so that the adjs. will always agree with the nouns; (*a*) **maximus numerus**; (*b*) **maxima sēmentis**; (*c*) **maximum iūmentum**; (*d*) **proxima cīvitās**. (*e*) Write all the forms you know of **cōnfirmāre**; (*f*) **suppeteret**.

2. **Conversation.** Answer in Latin the following questions : —

Cūius auctōritāte Helvētiī permovēbantur ?

Quibus rēbus addūcēbantur ?

Quae ad proficiscendum pertinēbant ?

Quot (*how many*) iūmenta et carrōs coēmērunt ?

Cūr (*why*) quam maximās sēmentēs fēcērunt ?

Quibuscum cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmābant ?

Quī Helvētiīs proximī incolēbant ?

3. (*a*) It-came-to-pass because-of-the-influence of Orgetorix, that the Helvetians possessed a very-great supply-of-grain. (*b*) It was very-easy, since they surpassed all in-courage, to wage war upon their neighbors. (*c*) The Gauls whom they have determined to surpass are not-at-all (least) hemmed-in by the character of the country. (*d*) The highest mountains are nearest the province. (*e*) The very-wide river divides the Gauls from the Germans.

4. (*a*) The greatest wars were-being-waged in Gaul. (*b*) He contends with all the forces of the Helvetians. (*c*) They establish friendship with the state nearest the Rhine. (*d*) They-were-establishing friendship with their neighbors, so-that they-might-have peace on their march. (*e*) The greatest possible number of carts were-being-prepared so-that they-might-go-out with plenty of grain.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The equivalents of **x.** 2. The translation of the superlative. 3. The translation of **quam** with the superlative. 4. The decl. of adjs. 5. The masc., fem., and neut., of **proximīs** in nom. singular. 6. In nom. plural. 7. The translation of **suppetere.** 8. Of **cōpia** in the plural. 9. Of **in.** 10. English derivatives from words in this Lesson.

LESSON XXXII.

1. TEXT.

Ad	**eās**	**rēs**	**cōnficiendās**	**biennium**
For	*these*	*things*	*to-be-accomplished*	*two-years'-time*

sibi	**satis**	**esse**	**dūxērunt:**	**in**	**tertium annum**
for-them	*enough*	*to-be*	*they-thought:*	*for*	*the-third year*

profectiōnem	**lēge**	**cōnfirmant.**	**Ad**	**eās**	**rēs**
the-departure	*by-law*	*they-fix.*	*For*	*these*	*things*

cōnficiendās	**Orgetorix**	**dēligitur.**	**Is**	**sibi**
to-be-accomplished	*Orgetorix*	*is-chosen.*	*He*	*upon-himself*

lēgātiōnem	**ad**	**cīvitātēs**	**suscēpit.**
an-embassy	*to*	*the-states*	*took.*

2. NOTES.

1. eās : (*a*) case, number, and gender? (*b*) What part of speech in this instance? Cf. **eam** XVII. (*c*) for other genders of the same case, cf. **eōs** VII., **ea** XXX., and XXXI., Obs. **2, 3**.

2. rēs : case, and why? For another form of same word, cf. **rēbus** XXV.

3. ad eās cōnficiendās, *to* or *for these things to-be-accomplished* or *completed*,[1] freely translated, *to accomplish these things ;* for form and translation of **cōnficiendās**, cf. **ad effēminandōs animōs** VII. N. **8**.

4. sibi ; irreg. dat. plur. ; cf. accus. plur. **sē** IV.

5. satis ; here an indeclinable adj. limiting **biennium**.

---

[1] The writer is aware that the translation here given may be fairly questioned, but thinks it better to give an explanation to the beginner which may be modified later, than to give no explanation at all, — the alternative often adopted in books for beginners.

6. dūxērunt, *they-led, they-drew, they-thought ;* for the connection between *leading* or *drawing*, and *thinking*, cf. the Eng. expression *to draw an inference ;* also *a train of thought*, suggesting the fact that our thoughts are coupled together and drawn out like the cars of a train : (*a*) for form and tense, cf. **cōnstituērunt** XXX.; the tense in both cases is the past indefinite, but the Lat. has but one form for the past indefinite and the present perfect (in the same voice, number, and person), and the name " perfect " is given to this form ;[1] cf. XIX. N. **9**. (*b*) What ending is common to **dūxērunt** and **cōnstituērunt**? What, then, is the ending of the pf. ind. act., third plural ? (*c*) Note that the Eng. idiom in this instance allows the preceding **esse** to be translated by an Eng. inf., though it stands after a verb of *thinking ;* cf. E. G. **68**, *c* and *d*.

7. in tertium annum : (*a*) What is the more usual translation of **in** with the accus.? Cf. **in partēs** I. What is it translated here? (*b*) Cf. the accus. sing. masc. **tertium** here with accus. sing. fem. **tertiam** III., and cf. also XXXI. N. **1**.

8. lēge : (*a*) What, judging from the ending, is the case and number? Cf. abl. plur. **lēgibus** IV. (*b*) Judging from **Orgetorigis** XXX. N. **1**, what is the nom. sing. of **lēge** ? (*c*) Four kinds of abls. used without a prep. have already been met ; examples are **virtūte** X., abl. of respect; **fīnibus** XII., abl. of separation ; **Garumnā** XIV., abl. of means ; **rēbus** XXV., abl. of cause ; note the Eng. prep. used to translate each. (*d*) Which of these four classes of abls. seems most appropriate for **lēge** in this sentence ?

9. dēligitur : (*a*) act. or pass. voice ? Cf. **continētur** XIV. ; (*b*) tense and conjug. ? Cf. **dīvidit** V., and also XXIX. **2**, 3.

10. suscēpit : (*a*) for tense, cf. **fēcit** XIX. ; (*b*) its subject ? direct object ? (*c*) the indirect object is **sibi**, *himself, for-himself, upon-himself ;* the same form **sibi** (**4**, above) is translated *for-them*

---

[1] It is unfortunate that we are obliged by convention to use the name " perfect " for a tense which in the vast majority of cases is not perfect at all. This constant misuse of the word " perfect " will obliterate, in the pupil's mind, its true meaning, unless frequent drill in tense distinction is given on the basis of E. G. **41**. If this drill is given, the pupil will be able to use the Greek aorist and perfect intelligently when he reaches them.

or *for-themselves*; the pron. of which **sibi** is a case has the same case forms in sing. and plur.; (*d*) we know that here it is singular in meaning because it refers to the subject of the sing. verb **suscēpit**; above it referred to the subject of the plur. verb **dūxērunt**; cf. XII. N. **7**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Latin has but one set of forms for the past indefinite and the present perfect tenses. These forms are said to belong to the " perfect " tense.

2. The ending of the pf. ind. act. 3d plur. (including the personal ending) is -**ērunt**.

3. The pron. of which **sē** and **sibi** are the accus. and dat. has the same case forms in the sing. and plural. This pron. always agrees in number and gender with some subject in the sentence in which it stands. We ascertain its meaning by reference to this subject. It is therefore called a reflexive (*bending-back*) pronoun.

4. Abls. of means, respect, and cause are always used without Latin prepositions; the abl. of separation is often used without a preposition. The abl. of means is commonly translated by the English preps. *with* or *by;* the abl. of respect by *in;* the abl. of separation by *from* (sometimes *of*). The abl. of cause is commonly translated by the words *because-of, on-account-of*.

4 VOCABULARY.

1. **annus**, *a year.*
2. **biennium** (**bis**, *twice*, and **annus**), *two years' time, the space of two years.*
3. **cōnficere** (**con** and **facere**), *to accomplish, complete.*
4. **dēligere**, *to choose from, select.*
5. **dūcere**, *to lead, draw, think.*
6. **lēgātiōnem**, accus. sing. fem., *an embassy.*
7. **profectiōnem**, accus. sing. fem., *a setting out, a departure.*
8. **satis**, adv. or adj., *sufficiently, enough.*
9. **suscipere** (**sub**, *under*, and **capere**), *to take from underneath, to take up or upon, to undertake.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **profectiōnem**, omitting nom. sing. (*b*) Decline **tertium annum** in the sing. (*c*) Decline **eā lēge**. (*d*) Write as many forms as you know of **dēligitur.**

2. (*a*) Cum Haeduīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus Helvētiī pācem cōnfirmant. (*b*) Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Helvētiī Orgetorigem, quī apud eōs longē nōbilissimus fuit, dēligunt. (*c*) Ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important. (*d*) Ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinent, importantur. (*e*) Hominēs cupidōs bellandī māgnus dolor afficiēbat.

3. (*a*) Dūcunt, dūxērunt, dūcēbant. (*b*) Eīs persuāsit ut omnēs cōpiās dūcerent. (*c*) Ad omnēs rēs comparandās quattuor annōs Helvētiīs satis esse dūcit. (*d*) Virtūte suīs fīnitimīs praestābant. (*e*) Hominēs, quī in montibus incolēbant, sibi ea suscēpērunt.

4. (*a*) These (men) took upon-themselves an embassy. (*b*) A part of Gaul is separated from the Helvetians by-the-river Rhone. (*c*) Orgetorix was-leading his-own men to the war. (*d*) Their men were-being-led to the river. (*e*) The Helvetians, because they thought their boundaries to be narrow, determined to possess very-broad fields.

5. (*a*) Orgetorix, influenced by the desire for kingly-power, was-preparing grain for the third year. (*b*) It has been said that they fix the departure for the third year. (*c*) This (man) prepares these things for himself. (*d*) The Helvetians surpass their neighbors in number of men. (*e*) The mountains keep the merchants from the Helvetian country. (*f*) The merchants are-kept-out by the mountains. (*g*) The Helvetians choose Orgetorix because-of-his-influence (**auctōritās**).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending of the pf. tense in the plur. active. 2. The double meaning of the so-called "perfect." 3. The form of the reflexive substantive. 4. Where to look for the meaning of the reflexive pronoun. 5. Meaning of the word "reflexive." 6. Four ways to

translate an abl. used without a Lat. preposition. 7. Four kinds of
ablatives. 8. A new meaning for the prep. **in.** 9. The literal and
the free translation of **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās.** 10. The masc. and
neut. corresponding to the form **eās.** 11. The meaning of **dūcere.**
12. Vowel change in passing from **capit** to **suscēpit, facere** to
fēcit.

LESSON XXXIII.

1. TEXT.

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis
On this journey he-persuades Casticus, of-Catamantaloedes

fīliō,   Sēquanō,   cūius   pater   rēgnum
son,   a-Sequanian,   whose   father   the-kingly-power

in   Sēquanīs   multōs   annōs   obtinuerat,   et
among the-Sequanians   many   years   had-held,   and

ā   senātū   populī   Rōmānī   amīcus   appellātus-
by the-senate   of-the-people Roman   friend   had-been-

erat,   ut   rēgnum   in   cīvitāte   suā
called,   that   the-kingly-power   in   state   his

occupāret,   quod   pater   ante   habuerat.
he-might-seize,   which   (his) father   before   had-had.

2. NOTES.

1. **Casticō**: for case, cf. **cīvitātī** XX. Obs. 3.

2. **Sēquanō**; for case and also for that of preceding **fīliō,** cf.
flūmen V. and E. G. **57.**

3. **cūius,** *of whom, whose*: (*a*) **i** has the sound of *y* in *year;*
cf. **coniūrātiōnem** XIX., **Iūrā** XXIV. (*b*) Between what two

vowels does the letter **i** stand in **cūius**? Note that in **Iūra** it is initial before the vowel **u**. The letter **i** in such positions becomes a consonant, and is pronounced like *y* in *year*; the endings of **cū-ius** and **tōt-īus**, XXI. are, therefore, the same; (*c*) **cūius** is the gen. sing. masc. of the relative pron. **quī** XXIV.; the gen. sing. of **is** XXXII. is **ēius**, and of **hī** IV. is **hūius**; (*d*) antecedent of **cūius**?

4. obtinuerat: (*a*) What is the subject of this verb? Its object? (*b*) note that **multōs annōs** limits the verb like an adverb, not an object; cf. **mīlia** XXVIII. and E. G. **60**, 1.

5. appellātus-erat: (*a*) note that these two words are taken together and translated like one word. (*b*) In what voice is the phrase *had been called* in the above translation? Cf. E. G. **40**; (*c*) on reaching this verb the pupil will see that the preceding phrase, **ā senātū**, is more appropriately translated *by the senate* than *from the senate*, as previous uses of **ā** would lead him to translate it; (*d*) **a-mīcus** (the preceding word) is nom. like the subject **pater**, refers to the same person as **pater**, and is part of the predicate; cf. the case of **Gallī** and **quī** in **quī Gallī appellantur** III., and also E. G. **56**, 3.

6. ut — occupāret. *that he might seize*, or better, more freely, *to seize;* cf. E. G. **68**. 7: (*a*) mode, tense, and conjug.? Cf. XXIX. **2**, 3, and XXX., Obs. **3**, 4. (*b*) How does the number of **occupāret** determine the meaning of the preceding **suā**? Cf. XXXII. N. **10** and Obs. **3**.

7. quod: (*a*) accus. sing. neut. of the relative pronoun. In what respects is it like **id** XXII.? (*b*) Distinguish it from **quod**, the conj., *because*, XI.; (*c*) antecedent?

8. habuerat: (*a*) cf. with **obtinuerat**, above. What similarity of form do you notice? (*b*) What English word is used to translate each? What, judging from the translation, is the tense of each? Cf. E. G. **41**. (*c*) What is the conjug. of each? Cf. **obtinēre** XIII., **habēre** XXVII. What is the vowel **ē** of the inf. changed to in the forms of these verbs (denoting completed action) in this Lesson?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The vowel **i** between two vowels or at the beginning of a word [1] before **a**, **e**, **o**, or **u**, becomes a consonant, is pronounced like *y* in *year*, and is often written **j**.

2. The perfect stem, upon which as a base all tenses of completed action in the active voice are formed, may be found in the 2d conjugation by changing the final vowel of the present stem to **u**.

3. The past perfect ind. act., often called the pluperfect, is formed upon the perfect stem, and has (at least in the 2d conjug.) the tense sign -era-.

4. Two new irregular forms of the relative pronoun have been discovered : **cūius**, the gen. sing. of all genders, and **quod**, the nom. and accus. sing. neuter.

5. In Latin, as in English, extent, or duration, of time is expressed by the accusative.

6. In Latin, as in English, the predicate noun or adj. agrees with its subject in case.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **amīcus**, *a friend;* cf. **amī-citia**, *friendship*, XXXI.
2. **ante**, adv., and prep. with accus., *before*.
3. **Casticus**, a Sequanian chieftain.
4. **Catamantaloedēs**, **Catamantaloedis**, gen., a Gallic name.
5. **fīlius**, *son*.
6. **mult-us**, **-a**, **-um**, *much;* plur. *many*.
7. **occupāre**, *to seize, to take possession of*.
8. **pater**, *father*.
9. **populus**, *people*.
10. **Rōmānus**, adj., *belonging to the Romans, Roman;* also a noun, *a Roman*.
11. **senātū**, abl. sing. masc., *a body of old men, a senate*.

[1] The component words of a compound are here treated as separate words ; cf. **con-iūrātiōnem.**

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline together **cīvitāte suā**; (*b*) **rēgnum suum.**
(*c*) Write all the forms you know of **cūius** in all genders. (*d*) Write
all the forms you know of **habuerat**; (*e*) **occupāret.**

2. (*a*) Haeduī ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcī appellantur. (*b*) Pater
Casticī rēgnum multōs annōs obtinēbat. (*c*) In suō itinere Sēquanō
nōbilī persuāsit. (*d*) Multa rēgna quae ā hominibus nōbilissimīs
occupāta erant in Galliā erant. (*e*) Multae fuērunt cīvitātēs quās
occupāre cōnstituērunt.

3. (*a*) Caesar dūxit Orgetorigem Casticō persuādēre. (*b*) Casticus
auctōritāte Orgetorigis adductus rēgnum occupāre cōnstituit. (*c*) Hī
hominēs quī suīs fīnibus Germānōs prohibuerant fortissimī fuērunt.
(*d*) Ab Orgetorige Casticus inductus erat ut rēgnum occupāret.
(*e*) Sēquanī, quōrum fīnēs sunt proximī, amīcī ab hīs appellābantur.

4. (*a*) It-came-to-pass that the-kingly-power was-seized by Casti-
cus. (*b*) Orgetorix had-had many friends. (*c*) The friends of Or-
getorix were many. (*d*) Orgetorix persuaded his friends to seize the-
kingly-power in their states. (*e*) The country of the Sequanians is
bounded by the great Rhone river.

5. (*a*) They determined to wage war upon the nearest states.
(*b*) Rivers rise in the mountains and flow into the ocean. (*c*) Peace
and friendship are established by the Helvetians. (*d*) Orgetorix had
the largest possible number of friends, so that he might seize the
royal power of Gaul. (*e*) He thinks that his friends have great valor.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The use of the consonant **i**. 2. The use of the perfect stem.
3. The form of the perfect stem in the 2d conjugation. 4. The
meaning of the word pluperfect. 5. The sign of the pluperfect tense.
6. The difference between the act. and the pass. voice. 7. The
difference between the predicate noun and direct object. 8. The
difference between direct object and accus. of extent. 9. Construc-
tions with **persuādēre**. 10. Difference between predicate noun and
appositive. 11. Irreg. forms of **quī**, learned thus far. 12. Different
translations of prep. **in**.

LESSON XXXIV.

1. TEXT.

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō
Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs
obtinuerat, et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus
erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater
ante   habuerat;   itemque   Dumnorigī   Haeduō,
      and-also Dumnorix the-Haeduan,

frātrī   Divitiacī,   quī   eō   tempore   prīncipātum
brother of-Divitiacus, who at-that time the-chief-place

in   cīvitāte   obtinēbat   āc   maximē
in the-state was-holding and very-greatly

plēbī   acceptus   erat,   ut   idem
to-the-common-people acceptable was, that the-same (thing)

cōnārētur,   persuādet   eīque   fīliam   suam
he-might-try, he-persuades and-to-him daughter his

in   mātrimōnium   dat.
in (into) marriage he-gives.

2. NOTES.

1. Dumnorigī: (*a*) a 3d decl. noun; what case, then? (*b*) for
nom. sing., cf. **Orgetorigis** XXX. N. **1**.

2. frātrī: (*a*) a 3d decl. noun; case and why? (*b*) the nom.
sing. is **frāter**, like **pater** XXXIII., the genitive of which is **patris**.
The nom. sing. masc. of **nostrā** III. is **noster**; that of **agrum**
XXIII. is **ager**.

3. Divitiacī: (*a*) a 2d decl. noun. What then is its case? (*b*) Why is this case different from that of **frātrī**, which has the same ending? (*c*) Cf. **Dumnorigī Haeduō, fratrī Divitiacī** with a phrase of similar construction in XXXIII.

4. maximē; for formation, cf. XXV. N. **4**, Obs. **1**; for meaning, cf. **maximum** XXX.

5. plēbī: (*a*) of the 3d decl.; what case, then? (*b*) for explanation of case, cf. VIII. N. **2** and E. G. **62**, 2. (*c*) the nom. sing. is **plēbs**, formed by adding **-s**, like **cīvitās** and **lēx**; cf. XXX. N. **1**.

6. erat; impf. ind. of the Latin verb meaning *to be;* for other forms of the same verb, cf., giving mode and tense of each form, **est** I., **sunt** VI., **fuit** XIX., **esse** XXI.

7. idem, *the-same* (*thing*): (*a*) accus. sing. neut.; object of the deponent [1] verb **cōnārētur**; (*b*) for the word *thing* in the translation, cf. the neuter **ea**, *those* (*things*), VII.

8. persuādet: (*a*) for the use of the dat. **Dumnorigī** and the clause **ut — cōnārētur** with this verb, cf. the use of **persuādet** in XXXIII.; (*b*) for best translation of **ut — cōnārētur**, cf. XXXIII. N. **6**.

9. eī, *to him :* (*a*) dat. sing. masc. of **is** XIX.; the same form is also found in the fem. and neut.; (*b*) the same ending **-i** (differing in quantity) is found in **cui**,[2] the dat. sing. of the relative **quī**; (*c*) for translation, cf. E. G. **62**, 3 and **46**; (*d*) antecedent?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Stems in **-b** of the 3d decl., like those in **-t** and **-g**, form the nom. sing. by adding **s**.

2. A few noms. in **-er** of the 2d and 3d decls. have no **e** in the other cases.

3. The verb **persuādēre** takes a dat. of the person who is *persuaded*, and a clause with **ut** and the subjunctive to express what the person is *persuaded* to do. Instead of this clause the English often uses an infinitive.

---

[1] For meaning of this word, see XXVII., Obs. **4**.

[2] Pronounced as a monosyllable.

4. Collect from the text and arrange by genders all the forms which have been used of **is**, **ea**, **id**, and **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, and note: (*a*) that these forms are generally of the 1st and 2d decl.; (*b*) that the following have the endings of the 3d decl.: **is**, **eī**, **cui**, **quibus**, and **quem**, accus. sing. masc. (not yet used); (*c*) the following have peculiar endings: **quī**, as nom. sing. masc.; **quae**, as nom. sing. fem. and nom. and accus. plur. neut.; **id**, **quod**, **ēius**, **cūius**.[1]

5. As these prons. are difficult and yet the most frequently used in the language, the following points must be thoroughly mastered: (*a*) in both, the gen. sing., the dat. sing., and the dat. and abl. plur. have but one form for all genders; (*b*) **quae**, nom. sing. fem., is the same in form as the nom. plur. fem. and the nom. and accus. plur. neut.; (*c*) **quī**, nom. sing. masc., is the same in form as nom. plur. masc.; (*d*) **quam**, accus. sing. fem., is the same in form as the adv. **quam**.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **āc**, another form for **atque**, *and, and also*; it is used only before consonants.
2. **accept-us, -a, -um**, pf. pass. partic. (from **accipere**), *accepted, acceptable.*
3. **cōnātur**, deponent, *he tries.*
4. **dare**,[2] *to give.*
5. **Divitiacus**, the name of a Haeduan noble, a friend to the Romans.
6. **Dumnorix, -igis**,[3] the name of a Haeduan.
7. **fīlia**, *daughter.*
8. **frāter, -tris**, *brother.*
9. **Haeduus**, *a Haeduan, one of the Haedui.*
10. **idem**, nom. and accus. sing. neut., *the same (thing).*
11. **item**, adv., *likewise, also.*
12. **mātrimōnium**, *marriage.*
13. **maximē**, *very greatly, most, especially*; cf. **maxim-us, -a, -um.**
14. **plēbs, -bis**, *plebeians, common people.*
15. **prīncipātum**, accus. sing. masc., *leadership.*
16. **tempore**, abl. sing. neut., *time.*

---

[1] **iī** is commonly used instead of **eī** in the nom. plural.

[2] The **-a** of the stem of **dare** is short by exception.

[3] The final letters of the genitive.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Declension of **Dumnorigī**; (*b*) **frātrī**; (*c*) **Divitiacus**; (*d*) **cīvitāte**; (*e*) **plēbī**; (*f*) **fīliam**; (*g*) **fīlius**. (*h*) Write all the forms you know of **obtinēbat**.

2. (*a*) Divitiacus et Dumnorix frātrēs fuērunt.   (*b*) Orgetorix Helvētius Dumnorigī Haeduō persuāsit.   (*c*) Divitiacus in cīvitāte prīncipātum obtinuerat.   (*d*) Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur.   (*e*) Ēius fīlia hominī nōbilissimō data erat.

3. (*a*) Patrī persuāsit ut amīcō nōbilī fīliam in mātrimōnium daret.   (*b*) Imperiō Galliae tertiō annō potīrī cōnstituerant et biennium eās rēs comparābant.   (*c*) Dumnorix, cūius frāter erat Divitiacus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, prīncipātum in suā cīvitāte esse satis sibi minimē arbitrābātur.   (*d*) Dumnorix Orgetorigis fīliam, quae in Helvētiīs incolēbat, in mātrimōnium dūxerat.

4. (*a*) He persuaded them to try the-same (thing).   (*b*) The father of Casticus held the leadership many years in the territory of the Sequanians.   (*c*) Dumnorix had led in marriage out-of that state the daughter of Orgetorix.   (*d*) At that time Casticus was a friend of the Helvetians.   (*e*) These high-born (men), with-whom Orgetorix made the conspiracy, determined to possess the royal-power.

5. (*a*) The Sequanians send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Haeduan.   (*b*) The men with whom Orgetorix had made a conspiracy were desirous of warring.   (*c*) Those men who were seizing the kingly power in Gaul took the leadership upon themselves.   (*d*) Dumnorix was called friend by (**ab**) Orgetorix.   (*e*) Divitiacus, who it has been said was the brother of Dumnorix, was a friend of the Roman people.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Nouns and adjs. with the nom. sing. ending **-s**.   2. With the nom. sing. ending **-er**.   3. Three uses of the case ending **-ī**.   4. Likeness in decl. of **is** and **quī**.   5. Number of times each is used in the text thus far.   6. Datives in text thus far.   7. The formation of the adverb.   8. Translation of neuter pronouns.   9. The appositive. 10. The construction with **persuādēre**.

LESSON XXXV.

1. TEXT.

Perfacile   factū   esse   illīs   probat   cōnāta
Very-easy   in-doing   (it) is   to-them   he-proves   undertakings

perficere,   proptereā   quod   ipse   suae
to-accomplish,   on-account-of-this   because   himself   of-his-own

cīvitātis   imperium   obtentūrus   esset.
state   the-supreme-power   about-to-hold   he-was.

2. NOTES.

1. perfacile; neut. gender; cf. XXI. N. **1.**

2. factū, *in-doing*, or more freely, *to-do;* a verbal noun from the verb **facere** XXXI. For its case and the reason for it, cf. **lacū** XXIV. N. **6**, and X. N. **3**.

3. probat : (*a*) a verb of saying, using that term in its widest sense ; for the preceding **esse** and its translation, cf. XXVII. N. **6**, Obs. **5** ; (*b*) the preceding **illīs** is a dat. used with it ; *he proves to them*; cf. **eī dat**, *he gives to him*, XXXIV.

4. perficere : (*a*) What part of speech is **perficere** ? Cf. E. G. **20**, 2. (*b*) Of what is it the subject ? Cf. E. G. **51** and **68**, *e*. (*c*) What is its object ? (*d*) What adj. limits it ?

5. ipse ; a nom. sing. masc., limiting the subject of the verb which follows ; cf. **ipsōrum** III., **ipsī** XII.

6. suae. How does the preceding **ipse** show the meaning of this word ? Cf. XXXII. N. **10**, Obs. **3**.

7. obtentūrus : (*a*) a partic. agreeing with the subject of the following verb ; cf. **obtinēre** XIII., **obtinuerat** XXXIII. (*b*) What is its object ?

8. esset ; impf. subj. 3d sing. of the irregular verb **esse** ; cf. XXXIV. N. **6**.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. The Latin infinitive, like the English, is a noun which expresses action and may take an object.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **cōnātum** (**cōnātur**, *he tries*), *a thing tried, an attempt, undertaking.*

2. **illīs**, dat. plur., *to-them, for-them.*

3. **perficere** (**per**, *throughly* = *thoroughly,* and **facere**), *to do thoroughly, to accomplish, finish.*

4. **probāre**, *to test, prove, approve.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Perfacile factū est tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. (*b*) Perfacile factū erat cōnāta perficere. (*c*) Orgetorix Casticō et Dumnorigī probat perfacile esse ea facere. (*d*) Ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus est. (*e*) Perfacile fuit Helvētiōs virtūte omnibus praestāre.

2. (*a*) Belgae ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē aberant. (*b*) Dictum est Orgetorigem in suā cīvitāte imperium obtentūrum esse. (*c*) Quā dē causā Helvētiī ipsī bellum gerere cōnstituērunt. (*d*) Hīs rēbus inductī coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis factūrī sunt. (*e*) Probant ea cōnāta esse perfacilia.

3. (*a*) He is about-to-hold the-supreme-power in the Helvetian state. (*b*) Orgetorix was most-powerful among the Helvetians. (*c*) Orgetorix persuaded Casticus and Dumnorix to try to accomplish their undertakings. (*d*) Dumnorix, whose brother was a friend of the Roman people, was-trying the-same-thing. (*e*) Their state is about-to-hold the-leadership of Gaul.

4. (*a*) These men at this time were acceptable to the-common-people. (*b*) So-that he-might-persuade him, Orgetorix was-proving that the attempt was easy. (*c*) He determined to persuade the nobility in the largest possible states. (*d*) To seize the-whole-of Gaul is not (**nōn**) very-easy to-do. (*e*) Orgetorix persuaded them to-finish these undertakings.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The form of the infinitive. 2. The use of the infinitive. 3. The construction after verbs of saying and thinking. 4. Different forms of the verb **esse**. 5. Three words connected with **facere** in form. 6. A new ending for a verbal noun.   7. Different uses of the dative. 8. The use of the word *it* in the word-for-word parallel of this Lesson (cf. E. G. **51**). 9. The words for *royal-power* and *supreme-power*. 10. *About-to-hold*.

————

LESSON XXXVI.

1. TEXT.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus
esset: nōn   esse   dubium   quīn   tōtīus   Galliae
not (it) is   doubtful   that   of-the-whole-of   Gaul

plūrimum   Helvētiī   possent;   sē   suīs   cōpiīs
most   the-Helvetians were-able; he-himself with-his   forces

suōque   exercitū   illīs   rēgna   conciliātūrum
and-with-his   army   for-them   the-kingdoms   about-to-win (is)

cōnfirmat.
he-affirms.

2. NOTES.

1. esse; makes a statement after **probat**; cf. XXXV. N. **3**.

2. tōtīus Galliae: (*a*) for form of **tōtīus** cf. XXI. N. **6** and XXXIII. N. **3**; (*b*) **Galliae** is a partitive genitive (cf. VI. N. **3**) depending on the following adverb **plūrimum**.

3. possent: (*a*) cf. the same form in XXV.; it is an impf. subjunctive of an irregular verb. (*b*) By what adv. is it modified? (*c*) For free translation of the clause ending with this word, see p. 388.

4. conciliātūrum : (*a*) this partic. agrees with **sē**, the first word in the clause; (*b*) **cōpiīs** and **exercitū** are abls. of means (cf. XIV. N. 2) with **conciliātūrum ;** (*c*) the preceding **illīs** is a dat. with it ; cf. **illīs** XXXV. (*d*) What is the direct object of **conciliātūrum** ?

5. cōnfirmat: (*a*) cf. **cōnfirmāre** and its meaning in XXXI.; in this case the verb means *he establishes*, or *makes strong, by words, he affirms;* (*b*) **esse** is to be supplied with this verb. Why should an inf. be used after it ? Cf. XXVII. N. **6**, Obs. **5** ; (*c*) the preceding **sē** is the subject of this **esse**. (*d*) How does the number of **cōnfirmat** show the meaning of **sē**, **suīs**, and **suō** ? Cf. XXXII. N. **10**, Obs. **3**.

3. VOCABULARY.

1. **conciliāre**, *to bring together, to win over.*

2. **dubi-us, -a, -um,** *doubtful.*

3. **exercitū,** abl. sing. masc., *an exercised and disciplined body, an army.*

4. **nōn,** adv., *not.*

5. **plūrim-us, -a, -um** (irregular superlative of **multus**), *very much, most.*

6. **plūrimum,** adv., *very much, most.*

7. **quīn,** conj., *that, but that, that not.*

4. EXERCISES.

1. Answer from hearing and in Latin the following questions : —

Quibus nōbilibus Orgetorix persuāsit ?

Quōrum in fīnibus hī nōbilēs incolēbant ?

Cūius frāter fuit Dumnorix ?

Quid ut facerent Orgetorix hīs persuāsit ?

Quam Dumnorigī dat ?

Quid hīs probat ?

Cūr perficere cōnāta eōrum perfacile fuit ?

Quī prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae habent ?

Cūius cōpiae sunt rēgna conciliātūrae ?

2. (*a*) He-was-winning the kingdom for-them with his army. (*b*) He wins their kingdoms for-himself. (*c*) The kingdoms are-

being-seized. (*d*) They seize the kingdoms which these Gauls had held. (*e*) They think that they are the greatest men in Gaul.

3. (*a*) By-means-of-the-embassy these high-born Gauls were-being-won-over. (*b*) That was the embassy which Orgetorix undertook. (*c*) Orgetorix made a conspiracy so-that he-himself might seize the-kingly-power. (*d*) They seize the largest possible number of kingdoms. (*e*) There was no doubt (it was not doubtful) that Orgetorix was-able to persuade many high-born Gauls.

5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending of **tōtīus** and **cūius**.   2. The meaning of **possent**. 3. Of **conciliātūrum**.   4. Of **cōnfirmāre**.   5. Of **sē** in XXVII. 6. Of **sē** in this Lesson.   7. Why this difference of meaning? 8. English derivatives from words in this Lesson.   9. Construction after verbs of saying and thinking.   10. Free translation of **plūrimum possent**.   11. Meaning of the adj. **tōtus**.   12. In what respect like that of **reliquus** (cf. X. N. **2**).

LESSON XXXVII.

1. TEXT.

Hāc	ōrātiōne	adductī	inter	sē
By-this	*speech*	*influenced*	*among*	*themselves*

fidem	et	iūsiūrandum	dant	et,	rēgnō
a-pledge	*and*	*an-oath*	*they-give*	*and,*	*the-kingly-power*

occupātō,	per	trēs	potentissimōs	āc
having-been-seized,	*through*	*three*	*very-powerful*	*and*

firmissimōs	populōs	tōtīus	Galliae	sēsē
very-strong	*peoples*	*of-the-whole-of*	*Gaul*	*(that) they*

potīrī	posse	spērant.
to-be-masters	*are-able*	*they-hope.*

2. NOTES.

1. **hāc** ; abl. sing. fem. ; cf. **hōc**, abl. sing. neut., XXII.

2. **ōrātiōne** : (*a*) What similarity of form between this noun and **lēgātiōnem** XXXII. ? (*b*) What, judging from **hāc**, is its gender ?

3. **adductī** ; cf. its form and meaning with that of **inductus** XIX. and **permōtī** XXX. N. **2**, Obs. **2**.

4. **dant** : (*a*) How does the number of this verb explain that of the preceding **adductī** ? (*b*) What translation of **inter sē** seems most appropriate with this verb ? See free translation, p. 388, and cf. the free translation of **inter sē** in IV.

5. **occupātō** : (*a*) note that this pf. pass. partic. is formed from the pres. inf. **occupāre** by dropping -re, and by adding **t** and then the endings of the 2d decl. ; (*b*) but in the 3d conjug. verb **addū-cere** the final **e** of the stem vanishes when the **t** is added ; cf. **ad-ductī 3** ; (*c*) note that the phrase **rēgnō occupātō** is grammatically unconnected with the rest of the sentence, as shown by the punctuation in the text above. Both words are in the abl. case ; cf. XIX. N. **6**, *c* and *d*.

6. **potentissimōs** : (*a*) for ending -**issimōs** cf. VI. N. **3** and N. **8** ; (*b*) for meaning of this ending in this instance, cf. **altissimō** XXIII. ; (*c*) the nom. sing. masc. of the positive (cf. E. G. **26**) is **potēns**. What is the gen. sing. of **potēns** (cf. XXIX. **2**, 1 **pars** and Obs.), and to what is the ending of the superlative added ?

7. **potīrī** ; here followed grammatically by the gen. **Galliae** ; cf. its more common use with the abl. in XXI.

8. **posse** : (*a*) pres. inf. of the verb **possent** XXXVI. ; (*b*) its subj. is **sēsē**, another form for **sē**.

9. **spērant** ; a verb of thinking. How does it explain the mode and translation of **posse** ?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pf. pass. partic. may always be formed in the 1st conjug. by adding **t** and case-endings of the 1st or 2d decl. to the pres. stem.

2. The pf. pass. partic. may very often be formed in the 3d conjug.

by adding **t** (sometimes **s**) and the case-endings of the 1st or 2d decl. to the pres. stem less **e**.

3. The superlative of adjs. in **-ns** is formed by adding the ending **-issimus** to the gen. sing. less the ending **-is**.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **fidem**, accus. sing. fem., *faith, a promise, a promise of protection, protection.*

2. **firm-us, -a, -um**, *firm, strong.*

3. **iūsiūrandum** (really two words, the noun **iūs** and the partic. **iūrandum**), *an oath.*

4. **ōrātiōne**, abl. sing. fem., *a speech, oration.*

5. **per**, prep. with accus., *through.*

6. **potēns** (in form a pres. partic. from **posse**; cf. **oriēns** XVI.), *powerful.*

7. **spērāre**, *to hope, expect.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **ōrātiōne** so far as you can. (*b*) Decline **adductī** in all genders. (*c*) Decline together **rēgnō occupātō**; (*d*) **potēns populus**. (*e*) Write all the forms you know of **spērant**.

2. (*a*) Sibi ea rēgna conciliat. (*b*) Rēgna, quae Gallī multī obtinuerant, ab Orgetorige occupantur. (*c*) Potentissimī populī exercitū māgnō sē rēgnīs tōtīus Galliae potīrī posse spērant. (*d*) Sē omnia rēgna occupātūrōs esse arbitrantur.

3. (*a*) Imperiō conciliātō in aliās partēs fīnium cōpiae dūcēbantur. (*b*) Eā legātiōne quam ille suscēpit trēs Gallī nōbilēs conciliābantur. (*c*) Orgetorix coniūrātiōnem fēcit, ut ipse quam maximum numerum rēgnōrum occupāret. (*d*) Ad amīcitiam cōnfirmandam[1] inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dabant. (*e*) Amīcitiam cum fīnitimīs cōnfirmāre cōnantur.

4. (*a*) Influenced by these speeches, the men give a promise to one another. (*b*) The speeches of Orgetorix influence many highborn Gauls. (*c*) By-his-speech that (man) influences the nobility. (*d*) The nobility, being-influenced by the speech, persuaded the-

---

[1] Cf. **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās** XXXII. N. **3**.

common-people to wage war with their neighbors. (*e*) Because they-were-wandering widely, they thought that they had very-narrow boundaries.

5. (*a*) Orgetorix, by whose speech the Sequanian and Haeduan were-being-influenced, was very-rich. (*b*) Casticus seized the kingdom which his father had-held. (*c*) The kingdoms which they hope they are able to possess are not far distant. (*d*) The Haeduans, Sequanians, and Helvetians were very-powerful peoples. (*e*) The state was-giving the-leadership to Orgetorix.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. All the forms we have had in the text of the pron. **hāc.**
2. The genitive of **potēns.** 3. The superlative of **potēns.** 4. Two meanings for this superlative. 5. The formation of **factus** from **facere.** 6. Of **spērātus** from **spērāre.** 7. The voice of **spērātus.**
8. The meaning of **inter sē.** 9. Two cases used with **potīrī.**
10. The forms **posse, possent** and **potēns.**

LESSON XXXVIII.

REVIEW.

Lessons XXX.–XXXVII.

1. TEXT.

Cæsar's "Gallic War," Book I., Chapter **3**.
Follow strictly all the directions given under "Text" in IX.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Inflection of nouns and adjectives.** — Review once more the inflections in XXIX.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	duct-us [1]	duct-a	duct-um
Gen.	duct-ī	duct ae	duct-ī
Dat.	duct-ō	duct-ae	duct ō
Accus.	duct-um	duct-am	duct-um
Abl.	duct ō	duct ā	duct-ō

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	duct-ī	duct-ae	duct-a
Gen.	duct-ōrum	duct-ārum	duct-ōrum
Dat.	duct-īs	duct-īs	duct-īs
Accus.	duct-ōs	duct-ās	duct-a
Abl.	duct-īs	duct-īs	duct-īs

Singular.

Nom.	lēx [2]	plēb-s [4]	pāx [3]	pater [5]
Gen.	lēg-is	plēb-is	pāc-is	patr-is
Dat.	lēg ī	plēb-ī	pāc ī	patr-ī
Accus.	lēg-em	plēb-em	pāc-em	patr-em
Abl.	lēg-e	plēb-e	pāc-e	patr-e

Plural.

Nom.	lēg-ēs	plēb-ēs	pāc-ēs	patr-ēs
Gen.	lēg-um	plēb-ium	pāc-um	patr-um
Dat.	lēg-ibus	plēb-ibus	pāc-ibus	patr-ibus
Accus.	lēg-ēs	plēb-ēs	pāc-ēs	patr-ēs
Abl.	lēg-ibus	plēb-ibus	pāc-ibus	patr-ibus

For the comparison of adjs. in **-ns** see XXXVII. Obs. **3**.

[1] For explanation of decl., see XXXI. Obs. **2, 3**.
[2] XXX. Obs. **1**.   [3] XXXI. Obs. **1**.   [4] XXXIV. Obs. **1**.
[5] XXXIV. Obs. **2**. So also the 2d decl. noun **ager, agrī, agrō, agrum**, etc.

2. Inflection of pronouns.

	Sing.			*Sing.*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	i-s[1]	e-a	i-d	qu-ī	qu-ae	qu-od
Gen.	ē-ius	ē-ius	ē-ius	cū-ius	cū-ius	cū-ius
Dat.	e-ī	e-ī	e-ī	cu-i[2]	cu-i	cu-i
Accus.	e-um	e-am	i-d	qu-em	qu-am	qu-od
Abl.	e-ō	e-ā	e-ō	qu-ō	qu-ā	qu-ō
	Plur.			*Plur.*		
Nom.	i-ī (e-ī)	e-ae	e-a	qu-ī	qu-ae	qu-ae
Gen.	e-ōrum	e-ārum	e-ōrum	qu-ōrum	qu-ārum	qu-ōrum
Dat.	e-īs, i-īs	e-īs, i-īs	e-īs, i-īs	qu-ibus	qu-ibus	qu-ibus
Accus.	e-ōs	e-ās	e-a	qu-ōs	qu-ās	qu-ae
Abl.	e-īs, i-īs	e-īs, i-īs	e īs, i īs	qu-ibus	qu-ibus	qu-ibus

3. Inflection of verbs.

Review the verb forms in XXIX.; the following have been learned in addition.

	1st Conjug.	2d Conjug.	3d Conjug.
Pf. ind. act.	——	habu-erūnt[3]	——
Plpf. ind. act.	——	habu-erant[4]	——
Infs.	occupā-re[5]	habē-re[5]	dūce-re[5]
Gerunds	occupa-ndī[6]	habe-ndī	dūce-ndī
Pf. pass. partic.	occupāt-us[7]	——	duct-us[7]

4. Use of cases.

(*a*) Use and translation of the abl. without a prep., XXXII. Obs. **4**. (*b*) Duration of time, XXXIII. Obs. **5**. (*c*) Predicate noun, XXXIII. Obs. **6**.

5. Use of verbs.

(*a*) Translation of verbs expressing state or condition, XXXI. Obs. **4**. (*b*) Past indef. and pres. pf., XXXII. Obs. **1**. (*c*) The use of the inf., XXXV. Obs. **1**. (*d*) Use of **ut** with the subj. after **persuādēre**, XXXIV. Obs. **3**.

---

[1] For explanation of **is** and **quī**, see XXXIV. Obs. **4**, **5**.

[2] To be pronounced as one syllable.

[3] XXXII. Obs. **2**, and XXXIII. Obs. **2**.

[4] XXXIII. Obs. **3**.   [5] XXX. Obs. **3**, **4**.

[6] XXX. Obs. **7**.   [7] XXXVII. Obs. **1**, **2**.

6. **Miscellaneous**. (*a*) Use of **quam** with the superlative, XXX. Obs. **6**. (*b*) Meaning of **sē** and **suus**, XXXII. Obs. **3**. (*c*) The consonant **i**, XXXIII. Obs. **1**.

3. WORD REVIEW.

Follow the directions given under " Word Review " in IX.
The last eight lessons contain the following new words :

VERBS.

1st Conjugation.	2d Conjugation.	3d Conjugation.
1. cōnātur	permovēre	1. addūcere
2. comparāre		2. coëmere
3. conciliāre		3. cōnficere
4. cōnfirmāre		4. cōnstituere
5. dare		5. dēligere
6. occupāre		6. dūcere
7. probāre		7. perficere
8. spērāre		8. suppetere
		9. suscipere

NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.

1st Declension.	2d Declension.		3d Declension.
1. amīcitia	1. acceptus	13. Haeduus	1. auctōritās, *fem.*
2. cōpia	2. amīcus	14. illīs	2. Catamantaloedēs
3. fīlia	3. annus	15. iūmentum	3. Dumnorix
	4. biennium	16. mātrimōnium	4. frāter
Unclassified.	5. cōnātum	17. maximus	5. itinere, *neut.*
1. exercitū	6. carrus	18. multus	6. lēgātiōnem, *fem.*
2. fidem	7. Casticus	19. numerus	7. ōrātiōne, *fem.*
3. īdem	8. Divitiacus	20. plūrimus	8. pater
4. iūsiūrandum	9. dubius	21. populus	9. pāx, *fem.*
5. prīncipātum	10. fīlius	22. proficiscendum	10. plēbs, *fem.*
6. senātū	11. firmus	23. Rōmānus	11. potēns
	12. frūmentum		12. profectiōnem, *fem.*
			13. sēmentis, *fem.*
			14. tempore, *neut.*

ADVERBS.		PREPOSITIONS.	CONJUNCTIONS.
1. item	4. plūrimum	1. ante	1. āc
2. maximē	5. quam	2. per	2. quīn
3. nōn	6. satis		

4. EXERCISES.

1. Conversation. — Answer in Latin the following questions : —

Quā rē Helvētiī permōtī sunt ?

Quae ad proficiscendum pertinēbant ?

Quae coëmunt ?

Cūr quam maximās sēmentēs fēcērunt ?

Quibus cum cīvitātibus pacem cōnfirmant ?

Quem in annum profectiōnem cōnfirmant ?

Quis ad eās rēs cōnficiendās dēligitur ?

Quid is suscēpit ?

Quid eā lēgātiōne perfēcit ?

Quid Casticō et Dumnorigī cōnfirmat ?

Quī sunt trēs populī potentissimī Galliae ?

Quid Orgetorix eōs facere posse cōnfirmat ?

2. Write in Latin. — The Helvetians were preparing beasts-of-burden, carts, and grain, for their departure, because they thought they could all go-out (**exīre**) from their narrow boundaries into broad fields in the third year (abl., cf. **eō tempore** XXXIV.). They chose Orgetorix, who is the highest-born and richest among them, to get things ready. This (man) prepares things not for the Helvetians, but (**sed**) for himself and his high-born friends. He made a conspiracy of the nobility in his own state, in-order-that he might seize the kingly power, and persuaded his friends Casticus and Dumnorix, who were living in neighboring states, to try the-same-thing. They hope that they will win (are-about-to-win) the royal power in three states by-means-of-the-army of the Helvetians.

LESSON XXXIX.

1. TEXT.

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur.

To the Teacher. The word-for-word parallel, though still given on p. 382, and still to be used as directed under "Suggestions for Teachers," will no longer be given under "Text" in the Lessons. The pupil, henceforth, should be taught to translate the text for himself. But let the teacher see to it that the text is mastered in the order of the original, and not by finding first predicate, then subject, etc. A plan by which this may be accomplished is suggested in Appendix A, to which teachers are referred. The "Notes" of all later Lessons are adapted to the plan there suggested (see p. 390, Appendix A).

2. NOTES.

Appendix A ccntains all necessary notes on the above text.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending -ī is sometimes found as the ending of the abl. sing. in 3d decl. nouns in **-is.** It is almost always used as the ending of the abl. sing. in 3d decl. adjs. in **-is.**

2. The ending -ī is the ending of the pres. inf. pass. of the 3d conjug.; -rī, the ending of the same inf. in the 1st, 2d and 4th conjugations. In the 3d conjug. the final **e** of the stem disappears before -ī.

3. The 4th conjug. is distinguished by the characteristic letter -ī.

4. Stems ending in -ē form both the nom. sing. and the accus. plur. by adding **s,** the abl. plur. by adding **-bus.**

5. In a Latin clause the relation of words, and hence the sense, remain in doubt, as a rule, until the last word is reached. This last word is very frequently a verb.

6. In getting the sense of a Latin sentence, every new word tells us something about the words which precede or the words which follow, or both. It is likely to throw light both backward and forward.

7. In Latin an object almost always stands before its verb and very frequently stands before the subject.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.[1]

1. Masc. and fem. endings
   of adjs. in **-is** . . . . A. & G.[2] **84**, **levis**. H.[3] **154**, **tristis**.
2. Characteristics of the four
   conjugations . . . . A. & G. **122** and *a*. H. **201**.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **coēgērunt**, *they compelled, they collected,* or *they have compelled* or *collected*.
2. **cremāre**, *to burn*.
3. **damnāre**, *to condemn*.
4. **ēnūntiāre**, *to say out* or *openly, to make known*.
5. **īgnis**, masc., *fire*.
6. **indicium**, *information*.
7. **mōribus**, abl. plur. masc., *customs, manners, character*.
8. **oportet** (found only in 3d person sing.), *it is necessary, it behooves*.
9. **poena**, *punishment, penalty*.
10. **sequī**, pres. inf. of a deponent verb, *to follow ;* pf. partic., **secūtus**, *having followed*.
11. **vinculum** or **vinclum**, *that which binds,* hence, *a rope, chain, fetter*.

---

[1] It will be noticed that here for the first time the "Grammar Lesson" is made a distinct part of the work of the student, with references to standard Latin Grammars. The facts contained in the references under this heading are usually the same as those previously stated in the "Observations." The form of statement is often different. This book may be used either with or without a grammar. Those who do not wish to use the grammar may find it best to have pupils occasionally write out in a blank book, kept for the purpose, paradigms or syntactical statements not so fully given in the "Observations."

[2] i. e. Allen & Greenough's Lat. Grammar, edition of 1888.

[3] i. e. Harkness's Lat. Grammar, edition of 1881.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **indicium**. (*b*) Write all the forms you know of **est**. (*c*) Write all the forms you know of **cremārētur**. (*d*) Decline **ignī**. (*e*) Decline **mōribus suīs** together in every case except the nom. singular.

2. (*a*) Ēnūntiant Orgetorigem coniūrātiōnem facere.[1] (*b*) Ex vinculīs eum causam dīcere oportet. (*c*) Mōribus Helvētiōrum damnātōs [2] ignī cremārī oportēbat. (*d*) Fīēbat ut eō annō frāter Divitiacī prīncipātum obtinēret. (*e*) Fīnēs sunt in multās partēs dīvīsī.

3. (*a*) Dumnorix Haeduus, cui Orgetorix fīliam in mātrimōnium dat, plēbī acceptus est. (*b*) In eōrum cīvitātibus rēgna occupāre cōnābātur. (*c*) Multōs hominēs poena sequitur. (*d*) Dīcunt pācem cum proximīs cīvitātibus ab Helvētiīs cōnfirmārī. (*e*) Carrōs Helvētiī coēgērunt et arbitrābantur hōs iūmentīs dūcī posse.

4. (*a*) They hope that they can obtain the power of their states by-means-of-the-army. (*b*) Considering (in-proportion-to) his high-birth (**nōbilitās**), Orgetorix does not think that he possesses very-broad fields. (*c*) The Gauls, whom he persuaded to make a conspiracy, were very-high-born. (*d*) They-make-known to-the-Helvetians that thing which Orgetorix did. (*e*) The customs of the Helvetians are not acceptable to-condemned-men.

5. (*a*) The punishment, which was overtaking Orgetorix, was very-great. (*b*) Orgetorix says that it is necessary to seize these states. (*c*) Many (men) had-been-burned (cf. **appellātus erat** XXXIII.) by-fire. (*d*) They say that punishment must overtake Orgetorix. (*e*) Orgetorix pleads his cause in chains, because he has made a conspiracy. (*f*) In-our time and in our boundaries men very seldom plead their own causes.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending of the pres. act. inf. in all conjugations. 2. The endings of the pres. pass. infinitive. 3. Two new uses for the end-

---

[1] It is suggested that some of these Lat –Eng. sentences be reserved for sight reading. They are well adapted to this, since they contain no new forms or constructions.

[2] Here a noun, — *condemned men, the condemned ;* note the masc. ending.

ing -ī.   4. Five uses of the ending -ī.   5. The 4th conjugation.
6. Three cases of ē stems.   7. Why a verb helps us in determining
the meaning of a noun in the same clause, ending in -īs or -ibus.
8. What the Latin word-order does for us.   9. What it does NOT do
for us. 10. Two Helvetian customs. 11. How to say *must*.
12. How to say *the-condemned* or *a-condemned-man*.

LESSON XL.

1. TEXT.

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium
omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undi-
que coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum
māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit: per eōs,
nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit.

2. NOTES.[1]

1. diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis : (*a*) **diē**, *on the day ;* cf.
tempŏre XXXIV. ; both are in the abl. case.   What similarity in
their translations? What would you call this use of the ablative? For
other uses of the abl. without a prep., cf. XXXII. N. **8** ; (*b*) What
difference in the quantity of the final **e** in this word and in such
3d decl. abls. as **ōrātiōne** XXXVII. ? This word is declined like
rēs XXXIX.   What, then, is its nom. sing. ? (*c*) for **cōnstitūtā**, cf.
cōnstituĕrunt XXX. and XXXVII. N. 5, Obs. 2 ; (*d*) **dictiōnis** is
a gen. depending on **diē**, while **causae** depends on **dictiōnis**.   For
free translation of the phrase ending here, see p. 388.

2. ad hominum mīlia decem : (*a*) **ad** means here *about*.   What
is its object ?   Does this object follow immediately ? For order of

---

[1] The pupil must not forget that much information, additional to that in the
Notes, is contained in the Vocabulary of the Lesson.

words, cf. **in eōrum fīnibus** XII.; (*b*) for use of gen. **hominum**, cf.
mīlia passuum XXVIII.; (*c*) observe that the words at the head of
this note are joined by the sense into one group; so, too, with the
words at the head of **1**. Find, in preceding Lessons, examples of
similar groups of words.

3. coēgit, *he collected :* (*a*) cf. the meaning of the same verb in
XXXIX.; (*b*) note that both this form and **coēgērunt** XXXIX. are
in the pf. active. What is the difference in their number? How is
this difference expressed by the endings? Say in Latin *they made,
they persuaded ;* cf. **fēcit** XIX., **persuāsit** XX.; say *he determined,
he led ;* cf. **cōnstituērunt** XXX., **dūxērunt** XXXII.

4. condūxit : (*a*) pf. ind. act. 3d sing., 3d conjug.; (*b*) pres. inf.
act. **condūcere** (cf. **dīcere** XXXIX.), pres. stem **dūce-**; (*c*) pf.
stem may be found by cutting off **-it** in pf. ind. act. 3d sing. (thus,
condūx-it), or by adding **-s** to the pres. stem less characteristic **e ;**
thus, **dūcs- = dūx-**; cf. XXXI. N. **5** ; (*d*) the supine[1] stem may be
found by cutting off the ending of the pf. pass. partic. or supine (thus
induct-us XIX.), or by adding **-t** to the pres. stem less **e** ; (*e*) cf.
face-re XXXI., **fēc-it** XIX., **fact-ū** XXXV., and note that the pf.
stem is in this word formed in a different way.

5. nē . . dīceret, *in-order-that he might not plead :* (*a*) the single
word **nē** means *in order that not* or simply *that not*, but in translating
a sentence, the *not* contained in its meaning is separated from the
that ; see above translation; (*b*) cf. **ut cōpia suppeteret** XXXI.
and its translation. What is the mode of both **dīceret** and **suppe-
teret?** What seems to be the difference of meaning between **ut** and
nē ?

6. ēripuit : (*a*) the pf. stem here has the form of what conjugation ?
Cf. XXXIII. N. **8** ; (*b*) for ending **-it**, cf. **3** ; (*c*) antecs. of prece-
ding **eōs** and **sē?** (*d*) it will now be seen that **nē — dīceret** expressed
the PURPOSE of the action designated by **ēripuit**. In like manner
ut cōpia suppeteret XXXI. expresses the purpose of **cōnstitu-
ērunt sementēs quam maximās facere ;** cf. E. G. **69**, 3 and 5.

---

[1] So called because the base of the supine, a verbal noun of which we had an
example in **factū** XXXV.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Every form of the verb must have as its base some one of the three stems, — pres., pf., or supine.

2. In any conjug., the pres. stem may be found by cutting off **-re** of the pres. inf. act., the pf. stem by cutting off **-it** of the pf. ind. act. 3d sing., and the supine stem by cutting off **-us** of the nom. sing. masc. in the pf. pass. participle.

3. The stems of the 3d conjug. must in many cases be memorized. It is well, however, to remember that the pf. and supine stems may often be found by one of two methods : (*a*) by adding to the pres. stem less **e**, **-s** for the pf. stem and **-t** for the supine stem, or (*b*) by adding **-t** as before for the supine stem and by changing the first vowel of the pres. stem, and dropping the characteristic vowel, for the pf. stem ; [1] with the last method, cf. Eng. *fall, fell, fallen,* and E. G. **35,** 1.

4. The pf. ind. act. 3d sing. is formed in all conjugs. by adding **-it** to the pf. stem ; the 3d plur. by adding **-ērunt** to the same stem. Cf., for pres. ind. act. of the 3d conjug., XXX. Obs. **5**.

5. The abl. sing. of noun stems in **-ē** has the same form as the stem ; cf. XXXIX. Obs. **4**.

6. The time at which anything happens is expressed by the abl. without a prep.   Cf. XXXIII. Obs. **5**.

7. Purpose is often expressed in Lat. by **ut** with the subjunctive when the purpose is affirmative, by **nē** with the subjunctive when the purpose is negative.

8. In the Latin as in the English sentence, words are arranged in groups, the words of which should be closely connected in thought. When read aloud, the words in the same group should be pronounced together, almost like one compound word.

9. Words are often interposed between a prep. and its noun.

---

[1] It is not asserted here that the pf. stem is formed from the pres. stem. The statement simply suggests to the beginner an easy and practical method of finding the pf. stem when the pres. stem is known. The introduction of the verb stem, on which no form of the verb is directly based, would be confusing and unnecessary, at this point.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON

1. Time at which or when . . A & G. **256.**   H. **429.**
2. Purpose clauses   . . . . A & G. **317.**   H. **497** and II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **cliēns,** *a client, dependent.*

2. **condūcere, condūxit, con-**
   ductus,[1] *to bring together,*
   to hire.

3. **decem,** indeclinable numeral
   adj., *ten.*

4. **dictiōnem (dīcere),** fem., *a*
   saying, pleading.

5. **diēs,** masc. or fem., *day, time.*

6. **eōdem,** adv., *to the same place.*

7. **ēripere, ēripuit,**[2] **ēreptus,**
   to snatch away.

8. **familia,** *a body of slaves,*
   household, retinue.

9. **iūdicium,** *a judgment, a trial,*
   a court of justice.

10. **nē,** conj., *that . . . not, not*
    to, lest.

11. **obaerātus,** *one bound to ser-*
    vice for debt, a debtor.

6. EXERCISES.

1. Write all the forms you know of (*a*) **cōnstitūtā**; (*b*) **condūxit**;
(*c*) **habēbat**; (*d*) **ēnūntiātā**; (*e*) **dictiōnis**; (*f*) **diē.**

2. (*a*) Omnis ēius familia ad iūdicium condūcēbātur. (*b*) Orge-
torix, quod nōbilissimus erat et dītissimus, māgnum clientium nu-
merum habēbat. (*c*) Arbitrantur eum hominum quam maximum
numerum condūcere. (*d*) Dumnorix Haeduus, cui Orgetorix fīliam
in mātrimōnium dat, rēgnum occupāre cōnātur. (*e*) Eum ad iūdi-
cium, ut causam dīceret, dūxērunt.

3. (*a*) Familia Orgetorigis, quam ad iūdicium condūxit, maxima
fuit. (*b*) Clientium obaerātōrumque quam maximum numerum coē-
git. (*c*) Orgetorix, nē īgnī cremārētur, hōs obaerātōs coēgit.

---

[1] The pres. inf. act., pf. ind. act. and pf. pass. partic. of all 3d conjug. verbs will
be given in order to show the three stems; cf. Obs. **2** above.

[2] Note that this verb has an inf. of the 3d conjug., but that the pf. agrees in
form with that of the 2d conjugation. Some other peculiarities will be explained
later.

(d) Māgnā ex parte fīnium Helvētiōrum clientēs Orgetorigis ad hōc iūdicium contendēbant. (e) Eō diē ex Helvētiīs sē ēripuerat.

4. (a) Orgetorix brought-together ten thousand men so-that he-might-be-able to-snatch himself away. (b) A great part of the clients and debtors of Orgetorix were (was) many miles distant from court. (c) At the appointed time the forces of these men try the-same-thing. (d) They appoint the day for (of) the pleading of the case. (e) He himself had in Gaul three thousand very-brave men.

5. (a) That fact was made-known on the third day. (b) He persuaded his clients to follow him to the trial. (c) All these clients rescued (snatched away) Orgetorix. (d) They tried to condemn Orgetorix so-that they might burn him with fire. (e) Many condemned (men) used to be burned (were-being-burned).

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The three stems. 2. How to find them. 3. Their formation in the 3d conjugation. 4. The endings of the pf. ind. active. 5. Stems in -ē. 6. Time at which. 7. Time how long. 8. Purpose in Latin. 9. Purpose in English. 10. Grouping words to give the sense. 11. Order in **ad hominum mīlia**. 12. Peculiarity of **decem**. 13. Two meanings of **diēs**. 14. Meaning of **familia**. 15. Of **nē**.

GALLIC COINS such as were struck by powerful nobles, like Orgetorix. Many of them, like those above, contain the name of the noble who issued them and the figure of a wild boar, the symbol of liberty and war; cf. the American eagle.

LESSON XLI.

1. TEXT.

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

2. NOTES.

1. Cum; here a conj. meaning *when;* cf. XII. N. **1**.

2. cīvitās: for decl., cf. **cīvitātī** XX., XXIX. **2**. Observations.

3. incitāta: (*a*) How is it formed and from what verb? Cf. **occupātō** XXXVII. N. **5**; (*b*) it limits **cīvitās**. What does this fact show about the gender of **cīvitās**? All nouns in **-tās** are of this same gender.

4. exsequī; for explanation of form, cf. **sequī** XXXIX.

5. cōnārētur: (*a*) for mode, tense and voice, cf. the same form in XXXIV.; (*b*) its object is **iūs**, a neut. noun, which we had before in the compound word **iūsiūrandum** XXXVII. (*c*) What is its subject? (*d*) What kind of an abl. is the preceding **armīs**?

6. magistrātūs: (*a*) nom. plur. masc. of a **-u** stem; for other cases of **-u** stems, cf. **cultū** VI., **occāsum** XVII., **passuum** XXVIII. (*b*) What is the quantity of **u** in the nom. plur. ending?

7. cōgerent: (*a*) mode, tense, and conjug.? (*b*) formed on the pres. stem of the verb (for pf. stem, cf. **coēgit** XL. and XL. Obs. **3**); (*c*) its subj.? its obj.?

8. mortuus est, *he died:* (*a*) a compound tense of a deponent verb; (*b*) a pf. ind. pass. in form; (*c*) **mortuus**, a pf. partic. of peculiar form. In what respect is it peculiar?

9. suspīciō (or **suspītiō**): (*a*) a nom. sing. fem.; (*b*) other words declined in the same way are **septentriōnēs** XV., **coniūrā-**

tiōnem XIX., **dictiōnis** XL. What is the gen. sing. of **suspīciō**? What the nom. sing. of **dictiōnis**?

10. **arbitrantur**: (*a*) What is its mode and tense? It is introduced by **ut**, which here means *as*. (*b*) What mode follows **ut** when it means *that*, *so-that*, or *in-order-that*?

11. **cōnscīverit**: (*a*) a pf. subjv. act.; (*b*) of the 4th conjug. in its form: cf. XXXIX. Obs. **3**; (*c*) note that the pf. stem is formed by adding **v**, and that the tense sign is **-eri-**; thus, **cōnscī-v-eri-t**; (*d*) study carefully the literal and free translations of the clause ending here.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Stems in **u** have the following endings (including the **u** of the stem) so far as discovered in the text: accus. sing. **-um**; abl. sing. **-ū**; nom. plur. **-ūs**; gen. plur. **-uum**. Such stems are said to be of the 4th declension.

2. All 3d decl. stems in **-ōn** drop the **n** to form the nom. singular.

3. The pf. stem of the 4th conjug. may be found by adding **v** to the pres. stem.

4. The conj. **ut** when followed by the ind. means *as* or *when;* when followed by the subjv., *that*, *so-that*, *in-order-that*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The 3d decl.; stems in **-ōn**. A. & G. **49**, **leō**. H. **60**, **leō**.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **arma**, nom. plur. neut., *armor, arms*.

2. **cōnscīscere**,[1] **cōnscīvit**, **cōnscītus**, *to decree, to determine*.

3. **exsequī**, **exsecūtus**, *to follow out, follow up, enforce*.

4. **incitāre**, *to urge on, incite*.

5. **iūs**, neut., *right, law, justice*.

6. **magistrātūs**, nom. plur., *civil offices, civil officers, rulers, magistrates*.

7. **morī**, **mortuus**, *to die*.

[1] It should be noted that this verb, like **ēripuit** XL., has forms of two conjugs.

8. **mors**, fem., *death*.

9. **neque** or **nec**, adv. and conj., *and not*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.

10. **ob**, prep. with accus., *on account of*.

11. **suspīciō** (or **suspītiō**), fem., *suspicion*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Magistrātūs coniūrātiōne incitātī iūs cīvitātis exsequī cōnā-bantur. (*b*) Nōn dubium est quīn Orgetorix multitūdinem hominum coēgerit. (*c*) Orgetorix sibi mortem cōnscīvit, nē cīvitās iūs suum exsequerētur. (*d*) Dictum est cīvitātem incitātam ob cōnāta nōbili-tātis multitūdinem hominum cōgere.

2. (*a*) Orgetorix, quem esse nōbilem dictum est, mortuus est. (*b*) Is, quod plēbī maximē acceptus erat, maximam coniūrātiōnem fēcit. (*c*) Eōrum exercitus aliīs exercitibus praestābat. (*d*) Per-suādet Gallō cūius pater ā senātū amīcus appellātus est.

3. (*a*) A great number of men from the fields was-being-collected by (**ā**) the magistrates. (*b*) The Helvetians think that suspicion is not absent. (*c*) On-account-of the death of Orgetorix, the nobility did not try to seize the-supreme-power of Gaul.

4. (*a*) That state extended a hundred miles in length. (*b*) Orge-torix determined to bring together the largest possible number of men. (*c*) The magistrates affirm that it-is-necessary (for) Orgetorix to plead his cause. (*d*) It is not very-easy to compel the richest man of the state to plead his cause.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The gen. of all nouns in **-iō**. 2. The stem of the 4th declen-sion. 3. The endings of the 4th declension. 4. Two meanings of **ut**. 5. Two meanings of **cum**. 6. The formation of the pf. stem in the 4th conjugation. 7. The sign of the pf. subjv. active. 8. Gender of nouns in **-tās** and **-tiō**. 9. The pres. and the pf. stems of the verb meaning *to compel*. 10. The Lat. for *to commit suicide*. 11. Eng. derivatives from words in this Lesson.

LESSON XLII.

1. TEXT.

Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōn-
stituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant.
Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt,
oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quad-
ringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.[1]

2. NOTES.

1. Post ēius mortem ; for order, cf. XL. N. **2.**, Obs. **9**.

2. nihilō minus, *by-nothing the-less*, more freely, *nevertheless :*
(*a*) What is evidently the case of **nihilō**? (*b*) for **minus**, cf. the
same form in XXV. What means *least?* Cf. VII.

3. quod : (*a*) What two meanings may this word have? Cf. its
use in XXII. with that in XXXIII. (*b*) Considering that the
neuter **id** stands just before it, what is its probable meaning here?
Cf. the position of the neuter **rēgnum**, before **quod** in XXXIII., with
that of **id** in this Lesson.

4. cōnstituerant; for tense, cf. **habuerat** XXXIII. N. **8**; for
PERFECT ind. 3d plur. of the same verb, cf. **cōnstituērunt** XXX.
What are the exact differences between these forms?

5. ē fīnibus : (*a*) **ē** is occasionally used as another form of **ex**
XLI.; (*b*) for other preps. taking the abl., cf. **ā, ab** V., **dē** X., **cum**
XI., **in** XII., **prō** XXVII.

6. exeant : (*a*) a pres. subjv.; cf. the impf. subjv. of the same
verb in **exīrent** XX. (*b*) How is the difference of tense indicated in
the word-for-word parallel, p. 382 ? Cf. E. G. **37**, 3 ; (*c*) the clause
ending with this word is explanatory of the preceding **id**.

---

[1] Note the grouping of words in this text, and conform to it in pronouncing
the text aloud.

7. ad eam rem. Does the demonstrative (E. G. **24,** 1) adj. precede or follow its noun in this phrase? Examine the text of the lessons thus far and see if this is the rule. How is it with other adjectives?

8. parātōs. What is the only preceding word with which this adj. may agree?

9. arbitrātī sunt: (*a*) Of what two parts is this compound tense made up? Cf. **dictum est** XIII., and **mortuus est** XLI. (*b*) Judging from the translation in what tense is each? (*c*) How do you explain difference of ending in **arbitrāt-ī, dict-um, mortu-us**? (*d*) Cf. **appellātus erat** XXXIII. N. **5.** Judging from its translation, in what tense and what voice is this? Cf. E. G. **41.** How does it differ in form from the pf. pass.? (*e*) How does the meaning of **arbitrātī sunt** explain the meaning and use of the preceding **sē** and **esse**?

10. numerō; for explanation of this abl., cf. **virtūte** X. N. **3.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. In Latin as in English the tenses for completed action are formed in the pass. by combining the pf. pass. partic. and the verb *be*.

2. In the pf. pass., the pres. tense of **esse** is combined with the pf. partic.; in the plpf. pass. the impf. tense of **esse** is so combined.

3. It must be remembered that, in these compound tenses, the partic. still remains an adj. and, hence, agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

4. The following preps. have been used with the abl.: **ā** or **ab, cum, dē, ē** or **ex, in,** and **prō.**

5. The demonstrative adj. precedes its noun; other adjs. very often follow their nouns. [1]

---

[1] Some may expect the statement here that the adjective commonly follows its noun. In view of the fact, however, that in the first four chapters of Caesar the attributive adjective is used forty-one times before its noun and only nineteen times after, the statement would be out of place here.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The tenses of completed
   action in passive   .   A. & G. **126**, *g.*   H. **222**, III. 2.
2. Position of the demon-
   strative adjective   .   A. & G. **344**, *b.*   H. **569**, I.

5. VOCABULARY.

In this and later vocabularies the pf. ind. act. and the pf. pass. (or future act.) partic. of all 3d conjug. and of all irregular verbs will be given. The ending of the gen. sing. will also be given when the form of the nom. leaves the gen. in doubt. Only the nom. masc. of adjs. will be given.

1. **aedificium**, *a building.*
2. **duodecim** (**duo**, *two* and **de-cem**), indeclinable, *twelve.*
3. **ē** (or **ex**) prep. with abl., *out-of, from.*
4. **incendere, incendit, incēn-sus**, *to set fire to, to set on fire.* Note that it takes the accus., not the dative.
5. **iam**, adv., *at this time* (as contrasted with the past or future), *already, at last.*
6. **nihilum**, *nothing*; **nihil**, the indeclinable form, is more common.
7. **parātus** (pf. pass. partic. of **parāre**) *prepared, ready.*
8. **post**, prep. with accus., *after, behind.*
9. **prīvātus**, *belonging to an individual, private.*
10. **quadringentī**, adj., in nom. plur., *four hundred;* cf. **quadrāgintā**, indeclinable, *forty.*
11. **ubi**, *when, where.*
12. **vīcus,**[1] *a group of houses, a village, street.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Declension of **ēius** in all genders; (*b*) of **quod** in all genders. (*c*) Write all the act. forms you know of **cōnstituere**; (*d*) all the forms you know of the deponent verb **cōnantur**.

[1] Note that, of the thirty-nine words in this Lesson, only twelve, or less than one third, are new.

2. Conversation. Answer in Latin the following questions : —

Quibus coniūrātiō Orgetorigis ēnūntiāta est?

Quid hī fēcērunt?

Quae poena apud Helvētiōs damnātum sequēbātur?

Quōs ad jūdicium Orgetorix coēgit?

Quot (*how many*) hominēs coēgit?

Cūr sē ēripuit?

Quō tempore mortuus est?

Quid Helvētiī facere cōnstituērunt?

Fēcēruntne [1] id?

3. Write in Latin. When the conspiracy of Orgetorix was made known, the Helvetian rulers tried to enforce the law. Orgetorix led to the trial many clients and debtors, of whom he had ten-thousand. At that time it happened that the rulers were not able to wage war with these men whom Orgetorix had collected. When they were preparing a great army, Orgetorix committed suicide, as the Helvetians think. Nevertheless, those-things which had to do with departure (cf. XXX.) were prepared, and many things in the Helvetian country were set on fire.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Cf. the tenses of the passive. 2. Difference between pf. pass. and plpf. passive. 3. Two differences in form between pf. act. 3d plur., and plpf. act. 3d plural. 4. Two uses of **quod** and how to distinguish them. 5. Why **id ēnūntiātum est,** but **ea rēs ēnūntiāta est**? 6. Preps. with ablative. 7. Cf. the order of words in **ea rēs** and **populus Rōmānus.** 8. The Latin for *nevertheless;* 9. *ready for;* 10. *forty* and *four hundred;* 11. *death* and *to die;* 12. *that they-may-go-out* and *that they-might-go-out.* 13. Two words for *when.*

---

[1] The **ne** here appended is an enclitic used in asking questions. It needs no translation except the tone of voice.

LESSON XLIII.

1. TEXT.

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt,
oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quad-
ringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmen-
tum [1] omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant,
combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs
ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent, trium mēnsium mo-
lita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

2. NOTES.

1. omne : (*a*) this adj. limits **frūmentum**. What then must be
its gender? What two cases will its form and agreement admit?
For the same use of the ending -e, cf. **perfacile** XXXV.; (*b*) for
the nom. and accus. plur. neut., cf. **omnia** XLII., **mīlia** XL. The
abl. sing. is like **īgnī** XXXIX.

2. praeterquam : (*a*) a compound word made up of **praeter**,
further, and **quam**, *than*; (*b*) **id** and **erat** are understood after it,
and the complete sense, with **quod** following, is, *all the grain further
than that was which.*

3. sēcum ; **cum**, the prep., appended as in **quibuscum** VIII.

4. portātūrī : (*a*) for meaning, cf. **conciliātūrum** XXXVI.
(*b*) How does it show the meaning of the preceding **sē** in **sēcum**?
(*c*) What is its object?

5. spē sublātā : (*a*) for form of **spē**. cf. **diē** XL.; (*b*) **sublātā**
serves as a pf. pass. partic. of the verb **tollere**; (*c*) for meaning and
use of **spē sublātā**, cf. **rēgnō occupātō** XXXVII.

---

[1] This Lesson begins with this word; what precedes is inserted that the pupil
may have the unbroken sentence before him.

6. parātiōrēs, *readier* or *more-ready :* (*a*) What degree of comparison, judging from the translation? Cf. E. G. **26.** (*b*) What is the nom. sing. masc.? Cf. **mercātōrēs** VII. The fem. is the same as the masculine. (*c*) Judging from **parātōs** XLII., what are the nominatives sing., masc. fem. and neut., in the positive? (*d*) Judging from **lātissimō** XXIII., what are the nominatives. sing., masc. fem. and neut., in the superlative?

7. ad perīcula subeunda,[1] *for dangers to-be-undergone,* or better, *to undergo dangers :* (*a*) cf. **ad effēminandōs animōs** VII. and **ad rēs cōnficiendās** XXXII. In what respects are these three phrases translated alike? (*b*) In what respect are **effēminandōs, cōnficiendās** and **subeunda** alike in form? All three are participles, limiting the nouns which follow the prep. **ad.** What seems to be the time and voice of these participles?

8. essent : (*a*) for form, cf. XXXV. N. **8 ;** (*b*) for syntax, cf. XL. N. **5,** Obs. **7.**

9. molita : (*a*) a pf. pass. partic. with the form peculiar to the 2d conjug. ; so **habitus,** from **habēre** XXVII. What is the quantity of the **i** before the **t**? (*b*) What cases are possible for **molita**?

10. iubent : (*a*) used with the accus. **quemque** and the inf. **efferre,** *they-order each-one to-bear-out ;* (*b*) **sibi** refers to the subj. of **efferre,** not to that of **iubent ;** (*c*) cf. the literal and free translations of the clause ending with this word.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending **-e** is found in the nom. sing. neut., as well as in the abl. sing. of all genders.

2. Neut. nouns and adjs. in **-e** have the accus. sing. in **-e**, the abl. sing. in **-ī**, the nom. and accus. plur. in **-ia.** In other cases they are declined like nouns in **-is.**

3. Adjs. having, in the positive, the nom. masc. endings **-us** and **-is**, form the comparative and superlative by substituting **-ior** and **-issimus** for these endings ; for the comparison of adjs. in **-ns**, see XXXVII. Obs. **3 ;** for comparison of advs., see XXV. Obs. **2.**

---

[1] From **subīre ;** it is somewhat irregular in form.

4. The future pass. partic. (called also the gerundive) is distinguished by the letters **-nd-** between the pres. stem and the case endings of the 1st and 2d declensions.

5. The pf. pass. partic. of the 2d conjug. may be formed by adding **t** to the pres. stem and weakening **ē** to **i**.

6. The prep. **cum** when used with the abl. of a reflexive or relative pron. is placed after the pron. and united to it.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Adjs. in **-is** and **-e**. .	A. & G. **84**, lev-is, -e.	H. **154**, trīst-is, -e.
2. Nouns in **-e**. . . .	A. & G. **52**, sedīle.	H. **63**, mare.
3. Comparison of adjs. in masculine . .	A. & G. **89**.	H. **162**.
4. Position of **cum** with personal and relative pronouns . .	A. & G. **99**, *e;* **104**, *e.*	H. **184**, 6 ; **187**, 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **cibārius**, adj., *pertaining to food ;* **cibāria**, neut. plur. as noun, *provisions.*

2. **combūrere**, **combūssit**, **combūstus**, *to burn up, to consume.*

3. **domum** (accus. sing. masc.; cf. XLI. Obs. **1**,) fem., *a house, a home.*

4. **efferre**, **extulit**, **ēlātus**, irreg., *to bear out.*

5. **iubēre**, **iūssit**, **iūssus**, *to order.*

6. **mēnsis**, masc. by exception, *a month.*

7. **molere**, **moluit**, **molitus**, *to grind.*

8. **perīculum**, *that which tests, a trial, danger.*

9. **portāre**, *to carry.*

10. **praeterquam**, adv., *further than, beyond, besides.*

11. **quemque**, accus. sing. masc., *each one, every one.*

12. **reditiō** (**redīre**, *to go back*), fem., *a going back, return.*

13. **spēs** (stem, **spē**), fem., *hope.*

14. **subīre**, **subiit**, **subitus**, irreg., *to go under or near, to undergo.*

15. **tollere**, **sustulit**, **sublātus**, irreg., *to lift up, to remove, to destroy.*

14

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decl. of **omne** in all genders. (*b*) Decl. of **mēnsis**; (*c*) **reditiōnis**; (*d*) **perīculum**. (*e*) All the cases you know of **spē**. (*f*) Write all the forms you know of **habēre**.

2. (*a*) Omnia oppida ab Helvētiīs incendēbantur. (*b*) Ubi iam parātī fuērunt, carrīs, quōs coēmerant, multum frūmentum portant. (*c*) Orgetorix nōn arbitrātus est Helvētiōs post suam mortem exīre cōnātūrōs esse. (*d*) Helvētiī, aedificiīs combūstīs, aliās domōs occupāre cōnantur. (*e*) Oppida eōrum numerō duodecim īgnī cremāta erant.

3. (*a*) Omne frūmentum quod in vīcīs erat eōs combūrere iubent. (*b*) Ad maximum perīculum subeundum parātī sunt. (*c*) Omnia oppida sua combūssērunt nē domum redīre possent. (*d*) Vīcōs incendērunt ut spem reditiōnis tollerent.

4. (*a*) All the grain was not carried with them. (*b*) (There) were four hundred villages in Helvetia. (*c*) The-common-people were very-ready to undergo all dangers. (*d*) The-beasts-of-burden which they had bought were dragging the carts.

5. (*a*) Orgetorix was ready to make a conspiracy. (*b*) When Orgetorix died, the Helvetians tried to-go out-of their territory. (*c*) They burned all their buildings, so-that the hope of returning home might-be-taken-away. (*d*) The-space-of-two-years was sufficient for preparing all these things. (*e*) All hope was-taken-away when the buildings were set on fire.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two uses of the ending -e. **2.** Difference between *high-er* and **lat-ior** in the way the comparative ending is added to the positive. **3.** Explanation of **sēcum** and **quibuscum**. **4.** Irreg. superlatives of **māgnus** and **multus**. **5.** Translation of the fut. pass. participle. **6.** Free translation of a phrase containing **ad**, a noun, and a fut. pass. partic. limiting the noun. **7.** Parts of the verb with which **sublāta** is connected. **8.** All the forms of **esse** used thus far. **9.** Difference of conjug. as indicated in **occupātō**, **habitus**, and **ductus**. **10.** The Latin for *meal*. **11.** A new free translation of the genitive.

LESSON XLIV.

1. TEXT.

Persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovīcīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur.

2. NOTES.

1. Latovīcīs; for case of this word, cf. **cīvitātī persuāsit** XX.

2. utī; another form of **ut** XX.

3. eōdem: (*a*) here a pronominal adj., not an adv., which it is in XL.; (*b*) cf. also **idem**, accus. sing. neut., XXXIV., and note that the first part of the word is changed in inflection, while the syllable **-dem** remains unchanged.

4. ūsī; the pf. partic. of the deponent verb **ūtī**; see Vocabulary. What is the meaning of **ūsī**?

5. cōnsiliō; in the abl. case with **ūsī**, where we might expect the accusative. What other verb takes the abl. in the same way? Cf. XXI. N. **7**.

6. oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs; with this phrase, cf. **rēgnō occupātō** XXXVII. N. **5**, *c*, and **spē sublātā** XLIII. In what respects are these three phrases alike? Cf. also XIX. N. **6**, *c* and *d*, and E. G. **58**.

7. ūnā; this word is an adverb, not an adjective.

8. proficiscantur: (*a*) for meaning, cf. **proficiscendum** XXX.; for inf. and partic., see General Vocabulary at the end of this book; (*b*) a pres. subjv. of a deponent verb of the 3d conjug., after **utī**; (*c*) the clause **utī . . . proficiscantur** expresses the purpose of **persuādent**, and is in the accus. case as its direct obj., just as **id** is the direct obj. of **persuāsit** in XXII.; cf. E. G. **52**; (*d*) What partic. agrees with the subject of **proficiscantur**? Distinguish carefully between the voice and agreement of **ūsī** and **exūstīs**; cf. E. G. **58**, 2.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The abl. with the force of an obj. accus. is used after **potīrī** and **ūtī**.

2. In Latin as in English a noun may be used independently or absolutely. The ablative is the absolute case in Latin. When so used it is most frequently limited by a participle.

3. A purpose clause is often a noun used as the object of a verb.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Abl. absolute . . .	A. & G. **255** and *a*.	H. **431** and 1, 4.
2. The obj. clause of purpose	A. & G. **331**.	H. **498** and II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **cōnsilium**, *a plan.*
2. **exūrere**, -ūssit, -ūstus, *to burn up.*
3. **Latovīcī**, *the Latovicians ;* for location, see the text and map.
4. **Rauricī**, *the Rauricians.*
5. **Tulingī**, *the Tulingians.*
6. **ūnā**, adv., *together.*
7. **utī**; cf. *ut* XX. and XLI.
8. **ūtī, ūsus**, *to use, adopt ;* takes the ablative.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Helvētiī, omnibus rēbus parātīs, proficiscuntur.   (*b*) Persuāsērunt fīnitimīs ut, vīcīs incēnsīs, dē fīnibus exīrent.   (*c*) Raurici oppida sua combūrunt.   (*d*) Vīcī Tulingōrum exūstī sunt. (*e*) Hīs ut eōdem cōnsiliō ūtantur persuādent.

2. (*a*) Idem cōnātī domō profectī sunt.   (*b*) Fīēbat ut Latovīcī quoque suōs vīcōs exūrerent.   (*c*) Helvētiī maximīs agrīs potīrī cōnantur.   (*d*) Frūmentō combūstō, spēs reditiōnis domum tollēbātur. (*e*) M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, angustīs ex fīnibus Helvētiī quemque exīre iubent.

3. (*a*) The Helvetians are about-to-carry with-them meal (sufficient) for-three months. (*b*) The Tulingians attempt the same-thing. (*c*) They collected all their forces so-that they-might-be-able-to-wage war with their neighbors. (*d*) They-order all the soldiers to-obtain their-own provisions. (*e*) The Helvetians prove that it-is-fitting that the Latovicians adopt the same plan.

4. (*a*) They used the carts which they had. (*b*) They are ready to burn the towns. (*c*) Much grain was burned by fire. (*d*) Therest-of the grain was carried with them. (*e*) They persuaded their neighbors to carry a part of their grain and to burn the-rest-of (it).

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference in form and meaning of **utī** and **ūtī**. **2.** The names of peoples with nom. plur. ending **-ī** in text thus far. **3.** Construction with **persuādēre**. **4.** The word meaning *the-same*. **5.** Meaning of the pf. partic. of a deponent verb. **6.** The absolute construction. **7.** Different appropriate free translations for it. **8.** The clause as a noun in the Latin text thus far. **9.** Appropriate meaning for **ūtī** in this Lesson. **10.** Exact location of the three tribes mentioned in this Lesson.

LESSON XLV.

1. TEXT.

Persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovīcīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur, Boiōsque,[1] quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

[1] Lesson XLV. begins at this point; for the text which precedes, see XLIV.

2. NOTES.

1. oppūgnārant: (*a*) this is a contracted form; the full form is **oppūgnāv-era-nt.** What letters does the shorter form omit? (*b*) for tense and sign, cf. **habuerat** XXXIII., **incoluerant** and **trānsierant** above; (*c*) **oppūgnāv-era-nt** is of the 1st conjugation. How may the pf. stem be formed from the pres.?

2. receptōs: (*a*) part of speech and translation? Cf. XXXVII. N. 5; (*b*) agrees with **Boiōs**, from which it seems to be widely separated; if, however, the clauses **quī . . . oppūgnārant** be read according to the direction in XL. Obs. **8**, and as a parenthetical statement, it will be seen that the partic. is closely connected with its noun.

3. adsciscunt: (*a*) What is the direct obj. of this verb? (*b*) note that **sibi** is the indirect object and hence is in the dat. case; cf. E. G. **62** and XXV. N. **7.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pf. stem of the 1st conjug. may be found by adding **v** to the pres. stem.

2. The plpf. ind. act. is, in all conjugs., formed on the pf. stem, and has the tense sign -**erā**-.[1]

3. Forms based on the pf. stem of the 1st conjug. sometimes drop out **ve** (or **vi**).

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **adscīscere, -scīvit. -scītus,** *to take to one's self, unite.*
2. **Boiī,** *the Boians,* a wandering tribe of Gaul and Germany; the modern Bohemians are descended from some of them.
3. **Nōrēia,** *Noreia,* town in what is now Western Austria.
4. **Nōricus,** adj., *Noric,* pertaining to the Noricans, a people of what is now Western Austria.
5. **oppūgnāre,** *to fight against, to storm.*
6. **recipere, -cēpit, -ceptus,** *to take back, receive.*
7. **socius,** *an ally.*
8. **trānsīre, trānsiit, trānsitus,** *to go across, to cross.*

---

[1] When the **ā** of this sign stands before the personal endings -**t** and -**nt** it is treated as short.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Declension of **quī**; (*b*) **agrum** (cf. XXXIV. N. 2);
(*c*) **sociōs.** (*d*) Write all the forms you know of **incoluerant**;
(*e*) **oppūgnārant.**

2. (*a*) Boiī ab Helvētiīs receptī sunt. (*b*) Boiī, quī in Galliam ā
Germaniā vagātī erant, amīcī appellābantur. (*c*) Ager Nōricus ab
fīnibus Belgārum longē abest. (*d*) Nōrēia nōn proxima fīnibus
Helvētiōrum est.

3. (*a*) Helvētiī, Boiīs receptīs, parātī ad profectiōnem sunt.
(*b*) Boiīs ut Rhēnum trānsīrent persuāsērunt. (*c*) Id oppidum ā
Boiīs oppūgnātum erat. (*d*) Frūmentum trium mēnsium sēcum por-
tāvērunt. (*e*) Boiīs suum cōnsilium ēnūntiāverant.

4. (*a*) They-are-using the carts which they-have-prepared.
(*b*) Those who used-to-dwell (were-dwelling) across the Rhine, are
dwelling in Gaul. (*c*) Nōrēia had been stormed by the Boians.
(*d*) The Boians, after-wandering [1] in many territories and storming [1]
one large town, are at-length the allies of the Helvetians.

5. (*a*) The Helvetians think it is fitting that Orgetorix be
condemned. (*b*) They persuaded many thousand men [2] to depart
with them. (*c*) The Boians had-gone-back-and-forth through Gaul
and Germany. (*d*) They did not persuade the Haeduans because
they were friends of the Roman people.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The pf. stem of the 1st conjugation. 2. Of the 2d. 3. Ot the
3d. 4. Of the 4th. 5. Names of countries and towns ending in -**a**
in text thus far. 6. The pf. ind. active. 7. The plpf. ind. active.
8. The pf. ind. passive. 9. The plpf. ind. passive. 10. Use of dat.
in this Lesson. 11. Order of words in this Lesson. 12. Eng.
derivatives from words in this Lesson.

---

[1] Use a partic.; cf. XLIV.

[2] For *thousand men*, cf. a phrase in XL.

LESSON XLVI.

1. TEXT.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō ex-
īre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,
inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā sin-
gulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendē-
bat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent.

2. NOTES.

1. erant, *there were;* the Eng. expletive *there* (cf. E. G. **51**)
has no corresponding word in Latin.

2. duo; limits **itinera,** *ways;* peculiar in form. What ending
would you expect?

3. domō, *from-home:* (*a*) cf. the same word and its translation
in XLIII. Is it usual to omit the Lat. preps. meaning *in* and *from*
when speaking of places on the earth's surface? Cf. examples
in XII., XIII., XVI., XVII., XX., XXIII., XXXIII., XLII.
(*b*) Note that **domum** meaning *home* in the sense of *to-home* is used
in XLIII. without a prep., just as in Eng.; cf. E. G. **60**, 2.

4. possent: (*a*) for form, cf. XXXVI. N. **3**. (*b*) Why is
itineribus an abl.? What adj. limits it? Cf. X. N. **1**. (*c*) May
any Latin word in this clause be properly omitted in translating into
English?

5. difficile; a neut. sing. limiting, like the preceding **ūnum** and
angustum, the Lat. word for *way* to be supplied in thought; for
decl., cf. **omne** XLIII. N. **1**.

6. quā; here an adv., meaning *where*, not a relative pronoun.

7. ut . . . perpaucī . . . possent, *so that very-few could;*
(*a*) Does the clause express the purpose or the result of **mōns
impendēbat**? Cf. E. G. **69**, 3, 4, and 6; (*b*) the form of the

preceding **facile** allows it to be either one of two parts of speech.
What are they? Cf. **facile** XXV., **perfacile** XXXV. Which is it
here? (c) The obj. of the preceding **prohibēre** is **eōs** to be
supplied.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The place *in which* and the place *from which* are regularly
expressed in Latin by the abl. with a prep., when the place referred
to is any locality on the earth's surface.

2. The Lat. accus. **domum** is used as the limit of motion like the
Eng. *home*, and the Lat. abl. **domō**, without a prep., often means
from home.

3. RESULT, as well as purpose, is often expressed by **ut** (**utī**)
with the subjunctive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The place *in which*
  and *from which* A. & G. **258**, and *c*, **1**. H. **425**, I.; **412**, I.
2. The subjv. of re-
  sult . . . . A. & G. **319**. H. **500** and II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **difficilis**, *difficult.*
2. **duo**, irreg., *two.*
3. **impendēre**, no pf. ind.
   act. and no pf. pass. par-
   tic., intransitive, *to over-
   hang.*
4. **omnīnō**, adv., *altogether,
   in all.*

5. **perpaucus**, *very little;*
   in plur., *very few.*
6. **quā**, adv., *where.*
7. **singulī**, adj. in nom. plur.
   masc., *one to each, one at
   a time.*
8. **vix**, adv., *with effort, with
   difficulty, scarcely.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Decline completely **difficilis**; (b) **angustum**; (c) **singulī**.
(d) Write all the forms you can of **dūcerentur**; (e) **prohibēre**.

2. (*a*) Flūmen quod sē posse trānsīre spērābant, erat Rhodanus. (*b*) Nostra prōvincia Rhodanō flūmine continētur. (*c*) Quam maximus numerus carrōrum itinere angustō inter flūmen et montem dūcēbātur. (*d*) Allobroges, quibuscum Rōmānī contenderant, proximī Sēquanīs fuērunt.

3. (*a*) Belgae longē aberant ut ad eōs mercātōrēs minimē saepe commeārent. (*b*) Hōc itinere singulōs carrōs dūcēbant. (*c*) Duo itinera ad occāsum sōlis dūcunt. (*d*) Multōs carrōs, ut eīs multum frūmentum portārent, comparābant.

4. (*a*) Jura was the mountain which was-overhanging. (*b*) It happened that the Helvetians could go-out from home by these ways. (*c*) They thought that the high mountain was-overhanging. (*d*) They try to drag their carts to the river. (*e*) The sun is higher.

5. (*a*) They did not try at this time to-go-out by the narrow way. (*b*) It-was-necessary to drag the carts so-that grain might-be-at-hand. (*c*) The very-high mountain reaches from the lake to the river. (*d*) The noble-(man) whose death was made-known was the richest in his state. (*e*) For many days the carts were-being-dragged from the Helvetian boundaries into the country of the Sequanians.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. When to use a Lat. preposition. 2. When an Eng. prep. has no corresponding Lat. preposition. 3. The comparative frequency of preps. in English and Latin. 4. An Eng. expletive with no corresponding word in Latin. 5. A Lat. noun in the text with no corresponding word in the free Eng. translation. 6. Why the two neut. singulars **angustum** and **difficile** have different endings. 7. Why the 3d decl. accus. **flūmen** does not end in **-em** like the 3d decl. accus. **montem**. 8. Two possible meanings for **quā**, so far as the form is concerned. 9. Difference in thought between a purpose and a result. 10. Similarity of meaning of **per-** and **-issimus** in **perpaucī** and **altissimus**.

LESSON XLVII.

1. TEXT.

Alterum [1] per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.   Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva.   Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.

2. NOTES.

1. alterum, *the other (way)*, *the second;* cf. **ūnum** XLVI. and **ūnā . . . alterā** in XXIII. and XXIV.   How does **alterum** differ in meaning from **aliam** II. ?

2. multō facilius, *easier by-much, much easier;* cf. **nihilō minus** XLII. : (*a*) **facilius** is here the neut. comparative of the adj., in the nom. case.   What else might it be, so far as the form is concerned ? Cf. **facilius** XXII.   What is the positive? Cf. XLVI. N. **7**, *b;* (*b*) for decl., cf. **tempore** XXXIV., the nom. sing. of which is **tempus** ; **facilius**, however, has a long **o** in the stem — **faciliōr-e** — unlike **tempore**; (*c*) the nom. and accus. plur. of both end in **-a**; cf. the neuters **ea** VII., **cōnāta** XXXV., **itinera** XLVI.; (*d*) the gen. plur. ending is **-um** not **-ium**.   (*e*) What is the nom. sing. masc. ? Cf. XLIII. N. **6**.

3. expedītius : (*a*) for degree of comparison and decl., cf. **2** ; (*b*) the neut. positive is **expedītum**. What is the superlative ? Cf. XLIII. N. **6**, *d ;* (*c*) **expedītum** is, in form, the pf. pass. partic. of the 4th conjug. verb **expedīre**.   How is it formed ?   Cf. **occupātō** XXXVII., 1st conjug. ; **molita** XLIII., 2d conjug. ; **adductī** XXX., 3d conjugation.   How does the pf. partic. of the 4th differ from that of the 2d conjug. ?

---

[1] The pupil should review the text of the last Lesson to see how this text is connected with what precedes.

4. pācā꞉ī erant ; cf. **appellātus erat** XXXIII., and XLII. Obs. **1, 2, 3.**

5. is : (*a*) What is its antec. ? (*b*) Why is it that this masc. pron. must be translated by an Eng. neut. ? Cf. XXIII. N. **4**, Obs. **7.**

6. locīs ; exceptionally omits the prep. ; cf. XLVI. N. **3.**

7. trānsītur ; from the inf. **trānsīre,** *to go across, to cross ;* cf. **exīrent** XX., **trānsierant** XLV., **exīre** XLVI.

8. pōns ; for decl., cf. **orientem** XVI. N. **6.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The adj. **altera** means *the other, the second, one of two,* while **alia** means *another, one of any number.*

2. Neut. adjs. are compared with the endings **-ius,** comparative, and **-issimum,** superlative. The neut. comparative of the adj. is the same in form as the comparative of the adverb.

3. The neut. comparative in **-ius** has **-ōris** in the gen. ; some neut. nouns in **-us** have **-oris.**

4. The pf. pass. partic. of the 1st and 4th conjugs. may be found by adding **t** and the case ending to the pres. stem ; that of the 2d conjug. by doing the same and weakening the final **ē** of the stem to **i** ; that of the 3d, in many cases, by doing the same and dropping out the final **e** of the stem.

5. The words **locō** and **locīs** when used to express a place *in which* exceptionally omit the preposition.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Alius** and **alter** . .	A. & G. **203,** *a.*	H. **459.**
2. Comparison of adjs. in all genders . . .	A. & G. **89.**	H. **162.**
3. Decls. of comparatives complete	A. & G. **86, melior, melius.**	H. **154, trīstior, trīstius.**
4. Decl. of neut. nouns in **-us,** gen. **-oris** . .	A. & G. **49, corpus.**	H. **61, corpus.**
5. Prep. omitted with **locō** and **locīs** . .	A. & G. **258,** *f,* 1.	H. **425,** II., 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **Allobroges,**[1] **-um,** *the Allo-broges,* a Gallic people ; see map.

2. **expedīre, -pedīvit, -pedītus,** 4th conjug., *to set free from* something ; the pf. pass. partic. is commonly used without verbal force and means *unencumbered, without baggage, open.*

3. **fluere, flūxit, fluxus,** *to flow.*

4. **Genāva,** *Geneva,* a town on Lake Geneva ; see map.

5. **nōnnūllus,** *not none, some.*

6. **nūper,** *recently.*

7. **pācāre,** *to pacify, to subdue.*

8. **pōns,** masc. by exception, *a bridge.*

9. **vadum,** *a ford, a shallow.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **fīnēs** ; (*b*) **expedītius** in all genders ; (*c*) **is** in all genders. (*d*) Decline **oppidum** ; (*e*) **pōns.** (*f*) Write all the forms you know of **pācātī erant.**

2. Conversation.[2] Answer in Latin the following questions : —

Quot (*how many*) itinera ē fīnibus Helvētiōrum erant ?

Cūr ūnō itinere carrī dūcēbantur singulī ?

Quam per prōvinciam alterum dūcit ?

Cūr id facilius est ?

Quōrum fīnēs erant angustī ?

Quī mōns impendēbat ?

Quod flūmen proximum huic montī erat ?

3. (*a*) The Helvetians were much braver than (**quam**) the Allobroges. (*b*) At another time it happened that the Allobroges were-being-subdued. (*c*) Two [3] states were very-near so-that (only) the river, which was not deep, divided them. (*d*) Many were kept out by (**ā**) few in that place. (*e*) They were trying to draw their carts by the easier way.

---

[1] Note that the **e** of the ending **-es** is short in this word.

[2] It should now be easy for the pupil to answer these questions orally and without previously studying them. The teacher is advised in subsequent Lessons to frame others similar to them for *extempore* conversation.

[3] Here regular and of the 1st declension.

4. (*a*) The Helvetians are more-fond of-warring than the Sequa-nians. (*b*) The highest mountains are not often very near to deep rivers. (*c*) The river which was called the Rhone is crossed by many fords. (*d*) The Helvetians tried to go out into the territory of the Allobroges in-order-that they might cross the Rhone by the fords.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference between masc. and neut. adjs. in the comparative; 2. in the positive. 3. To what decl. the comparative belongs; 4. the superlative. 5. To what are comparative and superlative endings added? 6. Latin for *another, the other;* 7. for *nevertheless, much easier.* 8. The similarity between pf. pass. partic. in the 1st and 4th conjugations. 9. An exception to the rule for place *in which.* 10. One for place *from which.*

LESSON XLVIII.

1. TEXT.

Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur.[1]

2. NOTES.

1. persuāsūrōs, *about-to-persuade :* (*a*) How does this word ex-plain the case of the preceding **Allobrogibus** ? (*b*) it is a partici-ple. With what does it agree? (*c*) **esse,** of which the preceding **sēsē** is the subj., is understood with it.

2. vidērentur : (*a*) mode and tense, and voice? (*b*) note the meaning of the verb in both act. and pass. ; (*c*) the preceding **bonō**

[1] The pupil must not forget to study the word-for-word parallel on p. 383.

animō is in the abl. case; *with-good-mind, of-good-disposition, well-disposed.*

3. exīstimābant. How is the **esse** mentioned in **1,** *c* to be translated? Cf. XXVII. N. **6.**

4. coāctūrōs, *about-to-compel:* (*a*) from **cōgere,** *to compel;* cf. **cōgerent** XLI.; (*b*) **esse** understood, as with **persuāsūrōs** above and with **conciliātūrum** XXXVI.; cf. E. G. **75,** 1, (1).   (*c*) What similarity in form between **persuāsūrōs, coāctūrōs, conciliātūrum** XXXVI., **portātūrī** XLIII.? What two conjugs. are represented in these forms? How do they differ in form from pf. pass. partics.? (*d*) In what respect are they alike in meaning? Are they act. or pass.? (*e*) the preceding **vī** is an abl.; cf. **īgnī** XXXIX.

5. ut . . . paterentur: (*a*) for use of clause, cf. XLIV. N. **8,** *c.* (*b*) Is the verb **cōgere** always followed by an **ut**-clause? Cf. XXXIX. (*c*) What are the antecs. of the preceding **suōs** and **eōs?**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The fut. act. partic. of all conjugs. may be found by adding the letters **ūr** and the case endings of the 1st and 2d decls. to the supine[1] stem; or by inserting the letters -**ūr**- before the case endings of the pf. pass. participle.

2. The fut. act. inf. is found by combining **esse** with the fut. act. partic.; this **esse** often omitted without affecting the sense.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **bonus,** *good.*	6. **vel,** *or ;* **vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or.*
2. **exīstimāre** (**ex** and **aestimāre**) *to estimate, think.*	7. **vidēre, vīdit, vīsus,** *to see ;* in pass., often, *to seem.*
3. **īre, īvit, itum,** *to go.*	8. **vīs,** fem., *force, violence ;* in plur. **vīrēs,** *strength.*
4. **nōndum,** *not yet.*	
5. **patī, passus,** *to endure, permit.*	

[1] i. e. the base to which the endings of the pf. pass. partic. are added.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Write all the forms you can of **vidērentur** ; (*b*) **exīsti-mābant**, (*c*) **coāctūrōs.** (*d*) Decline together **suōs fīnēs.**

2. (*a*) Exīstimant sē rēgna conciliātūrōs esse. (*b*) Ēnūntiātum est flūmen, quod esset proximum, sē vadō trānsīre posse. (*c*) Fīni-timīs ut eōdem cōnsiliō ūterentur persuāsērunt. (*d*) Allobrogēs in Rōmānōs, quī eōs nūper pācāvērunt, bonō animō nōndum sunt.

3. (*a*) Quod sē Allobrogibus persuādēre posse arbitrābantur, hōc itinere profectī sunt. (*b*) Populus Rōmānus Helvētiōs expedītiōre itinere exīre nōn passus est. (*c*) Multī exīstimant Allobrogēs Helvētiōs īre passūrōs esse. (*d*) Dīxērunt agrōs quōs Allobrogēs obtinērent esse bonōs.

4. (*a*) The Helvetians thought that the Allobroges would allow them to draw the carts through their territory. (*b*) They determined to compel the Allobroges to allow these wagons to cross the fields. (*c*) They tried to depart on the appointed day. (*d*) The town Geneva is very-near Lake Geneva. (*e*) They collected all their (men) in-order-to go-out by the easier way.

5. (*a*) Geneva, which is very-near the Helvetians, is very-far distant from the towns of the Belgians. (*b*) After-trying (partic.) to-take-away the hope of-return, they persuade their neighbors. (*c*) These things tend to weaken minds. (*d*) They think that these-things will weaken minds. (*e*) They did not think that a brave Roman would lead an army into Gaul.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending **-ūrus.** 2. Difference in the form of pf. pass. and fut. act. participle. 3. Difference in meaning. 4. The form and translation of fut. pass. participle. (Cf. XLIII. N. **7**, Obs. **4.**) 5. A frequently omitted word in Latin. 6. Best translation of fut. act. infinitive. 7. Pass. meaning of **vidēre.** 8. Verbs meaning *to think.* 9. Likeness in form between **vīs, vī** and **īgnis, īgnī.** 10. Noun clauses.

LESSON XLIX.

1. TEXT.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs, L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

2. NOTES.

1. **dīcunt,** *they appoint :* (*a*) cf. the meaning of **dictum** XIII. and **dīcere** XXXIX.; (*b*) for preceding phrase **rēbus . . . comparātīs,** cf. **rēgnō occupātō** XXXVII. By what clause may it be appropriately translated ?

2. **quā diē . . . omnēs conveniant,** *that-on-this day all may-come-together :* (*a*) **quā** is equivalent to **ut eā**; cf. X. N. **1,** *e* and Obs. **3**; for use of clause, cf. XL. N. **5**; (*b*) for use of **diē,** cf. **diē** XL.; (*c*) **conveniant** is a pres. subjv. of the 4th conjug.; note the characteristic **i**; cf. the pres.subjv. **proficiscantur** (XLIV.) of the 3d conjug. How is each formed from the pres. stem ? (*d*) for other 4th conjug. forms, cf. **oriuntur, orientem** XVI., **exīrent** XX., **potīrī** XXI., **afficiēbantur** XXVI., **cōnficiendās** XXXII., **cōnscīverit** XLI., **trānsītur, expedītius** XLVII., **īre** XLVIII. Name each one of these forms and explain its formation. How does each differ from the corresponding form of the 3d conjug. ? Of the 1st ?

3. **ante diem** [1] **quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs,** a peculiar expression for **diēs quīntus ante Kalendās Aprīlēs,** *the fifth day before the April Calends :* (*a*) **Aprīlēs** is an adj.; (*b*) **Kalendae,** nom. plur. fem., is the Latin for the first day of the month; (*c*) the reckoning

---

[1] Note that **diem** is here masculine.   What is the gender of **diē 2** ?

is backward from the first day of the month instead of forward as with us; (*d*) in reckoning the time between two dates, both extremes are counted, thus: April 1, March 31, 30, 29, 28; the fifth day before the April Calends is, therefore, March 28, not March 27, as our way of reckoning would make it.

4 cōnsulibus; on the phrase ending with this word, cf. a similar phrase in XIX.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pres. subjv. of the 4th conjug. may be formed by inserting **-a-** between the characteristic and the personal ending; that of the 3d conjug. by changing the characteristic to **a**.

2. In forms based on the pres. stem, the 4th conjug. is similar to the 3d; the 4th conjug., however, always retains its characteristic **ī**, while the 3d conjug. loses or weakens its characteristic **e** in several places.

3. In forms based on the pf. and supine stems, the 4th and 1st conjugs. differ only in their characteristic letters.

4. Purpose clauses are often introduced by relative prons., which are then equivalent to **ut** and a demonstrative having the gender, number, and case, of the given relative.

5. Dīcere may mean *to say*, *to plead*, or *to appoint*. The meaning of a Latin word varies with the context (*i. e.* the words in connection with it) just as that of an Eng. word varies. No Latin sentence can be even tolerably translated without attention to this fact.

6. The Romans reckoned the days of the month backward instead of forward, and in reckoning the time between two dates counted both the day from which and the day to which.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Purpose clauses intro-
      duced by a relative   A. & G. **317**, 2 and N. under 3. H. **497**, I.[1]

---

[1] Study examples.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **Aprīlis**, adj. (probably from **aperīre**, *to open*), *of the month of April, April.*

2. **Aulus**, a Roman first or individual name; generally represented in Latin authors by the initial **A**.

3. **convenīre**, -**vēnit**,[1] -**ventus**, *to come together, to meet.*

4. **Gabīnius**, a Roman name.

5. **Kalendae**, -**ārum**, *the Calends, the first day of a month.*

6. **Lūcius**, a Roman first name usually represented by **L**.

7. **quīntus**, *fifth.*

8. **rīpa**, *a bank of a river.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Give all the cases you know of **rēbus**. (*b*) Write all the forms you know of **dīcunt**; (*c*) **conveniant**; (*d*) **comparātīs**; (*e*) **erat**. (*f*) Decline **profectiōnem**.

2. (*a*) Omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparātae sunt. (*b*) Spērant omnēs cōnstitūtā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī conventūrōs esse. (*c*) Eō tempore L. Pīso et A. Gabīnius erant cōnsulēs Rōmānī. (*d*) Ut ad occāsum sōlis proficiscerentur, omnēs convēnērunt.

3. (*a*) Omnia ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinēbant coācta erant. (*b*) Duōrum itinerum ūnum perfacile, alterum multō difficilius erat. (*c*) Allobrogēs nōn amīcī Rōmānīs sunt. (*d*) Persuādent omnī plēbī ut ūnā diē ad rīpam flūminis conveniat. (*e*) Dēligunt eum hominem quī exercitum dūcat.

4. The Helvetians were neighbors to the Allobroges, who were not far distant from the Romans. The Allobroges were not well-disposed to the Romans because they had been recently subdued by (**ab**) them. The Helvetians think that the Allobroges will allow them to go through their territory and that the Romans cannot keep them out. For this reason they name a day for departure and prepare all things.

---

[1] Of the 4th conjug. only in the forms based on the pres. stem.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Likeness and difference in form of **conveniant** and **proficiscantur**; 2. **potīrī** and **sequī**; 3. **dēligitur** and **trānsītur**; 4. **comparāre** and **īre**; 5. **cōnscīvit** and **oppūgnāvit**; 6. **occupātus** and **expedītus**. 7. The free translation of every abl. absolute used in the text thus far. 8. Examples in English of the variation in the meaning of a word because of a different context; e. g. " the House of Representatives," " a brick house." 9. Two meanings for **altissimus**; cf. XXIII. and XXIV.; 10. **cōnfirmāre**; cf. XXXI. and XXXVI.; 11. **dūcere**; cf. XXXII. and XLVI. 12. To what are the following relatives equivalent when they introduce purpose clauses: **quī**, sing.; **quī**, plur.; **quō, quam, cūius**?

GALLIC ARMS.

Pick out the shields? The spears? The animal in the picture is carried on the top of a pole as a military standard. What is the animal, and what does it symbolize? Cf. the coins on p. 199; cf. also the Roman standard, p. 269. The four queer heads at the ends of tubes form the mouths of trumpets.

LESSON L.

REVIEW.

Lessons XXXIX.– XLIX.

The student who thoroughly masters the first fifty lessons of this book may congratulate himself upon having learned the most difficult things about the forms of the language. There is nothing else in the forms of the language so hard as the 3d declension, the 3d conjugation, and the decl. of pronouns, and nothing more necessary in using the language than a thorough knowledge of these three things. Remember that you will pay dearly for any neglect in learning them thoroughly. Read the note at the head of Lesson IX.

1. TEXT.

CÆSAR'S "GALLIC WAR," Book I., Chapters **4, 5, 6**.

1, 2, 3, 5. Follow implicitly the directions given in IX. under "Text," 1, 2, 3 and 5.

4. Write out a grammatical analysis of the material of the text of Chaps. **4, 5**, and **6**, under the following heads : (1) noun, pronominal and adj. forms, classifying separately in both sing. and plur. (*a*) nom. forms, (*b*) gen. forms, (*c*) dat. forms, (*d*) accus. forms, (*e*) abl. forms ; (2) verb forms, classifying separately, (*a*) pres. inds., (*b*) impf. inds., (*c*) pf. inds., (*d*) plpf. inds., (*e*) pres. subjvs., (*f*) impf. subjvs., (*g*) pres. infs., (*h*) pf. pass. partics., (*i*) fut. act. partics., (*j*) fut. pass. participles.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Inflection** [1] **of nouns and adjectives.** (*a*) The abl. sing. of nouns and adjs. in **-is**, XXXIX. Obs. **1**; A. & G. **84, levis**; H. **154, trīstis.** (*b*) Stems in **-e**, XXXIX. Obs. **4**, XL. Obs. **5**. (*c*) Stems in **-u**, XLI. Obs. **1**. (*d*) Stems in **-ōn**, XLI. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **49, leō**; H. **60, leō.** (*e*) Decl. of nouns and adjs. in **-e**, XLIII. Obs. **1, 2**; A. & G. **52, 84**; H. **63, 154**. (*f*) Comparison of adjs., all genders, XLIII. Obs. **3**, XLVII. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **89**; H. **162**. (*g*) Decl. of neut. nouns and adjs. in **-us**, gen. **-oris** and **-ōris**, XLVII. Obs. **3**; A. & G. **49, 86**; H. **61, 154**.

---

[1] Review all the inflections in XXIX. and XXXVIII.

2. **Verb stems**. (*a*) Characteristic of the 4th conjug., XXXIX. Obs. **3** ; A. & G. **122** and *a ;* H. **201**. (*b*) The three stems of the verb, XL. Obs. **1, 2**. (*c*) The pf. and supine stems of the 3d conjug., XL. Obs. **3**. (*d*) The pf. stem of the 4th conjug., XLI. Obs. **3**. (*e*) pf. stem 1st conjug., XLV. Obs. **1**. (*f*) Stems of different conjugs. compared, XLIX. Obs. **2, 3**.

3. **Formation of verb forms.** (*a*) The pres. inf. pass., XXXIX. Obs. **2**. (*b*) Pf. ind. act., XL. Obs. **4**. (*c*) Pf. and plpf. pass., XLII. Obs. **1, 2** ; A. & G. **126**, *g ;* H. **222**, II., 2. (*d*) Partics., XLII. Obs. **3** ; XLIII. Obs. **4, 5** ; XLVII. Obs. **4** ; XLVIII. Obs. **1**. (*e*) Plpf. ind. act., XLV. Obs. **2**. (*f*) Dropping of **ve** or **vi** in pf. tenses, XLV. Obs. **3**. (*g*) Fut. act. inf., XLVIII. Obs. **2**. (*h*) Pres. subjv. of 3d and 4th conjugs., XLIX. Obs. **1**.

4. **Use of cases.** (*a*) The time *at which*, XL. Obs. **6** ; A. & G. **256** ; H. **429**. (*b*) The place *in* or *from which*, XLVI. Obs. **1** ; A. & G **258** and *c*, 1 ; H. **425**, I. ; **412**, I. (*c*) Exceptions to the above, XLVI. Obs. **2** ; XLVII. Obs. **5** ; A. & G. **258**, *f*, 1 ; H. **425**, II., 2. (*d*) Preps. with abl., XLII. Obs. **4**. (*e*) Abl. with **potīrī** and **ūtī**, XLIV. Obs. **1**. (*f*) Abl. absolute, XLIV. Obs. **2** ; A. & G. **255** and *a ;* H. **431** and 1, 4.

5. **Use of verbs.** (*a*) Purpose with **ut** and **nē**, XL. Obs. **7** ; A. & G. **317** ; H. **497** and II. (*b*) Obj. clause of purpose, XLIV. Obs. **3** ; A. & G. **331** ; H. **498** and 2. (*c*) Relative clause of purpose, XLIX. Obs. **4** ; A. & G. **317**, 2 and N. under 3 ; H. **497**, I. (*d*) Result clauses, XLVI. Obs. **3** ; A. & G. **319** ; H. **500** and II.

6. **Meaning of words.** (*a*) Of **ut**, XLI. Obs. **4**. (*b*) Of **alterum** and **alium**, XLVII. Obs. **1** ; A. & G. **203**, *a ;* H. **459**. (*c*) Variation of meaning with context, XLIX. Obs. **5**. (*d*) Meaning of Roman expressions for the day of the month, XLIX. Obs. **6**.

7. **Order of words.** (*a*) Force of the last word, XXXIX. Obs. **5**. (*b*) Of every new word, XXXIX. Obs. **6**. (*c*) Grouping of words, XL. Obs. **8**. (*d*) Position of obj., XXXIX. Obs. **7**. (*e*) Of prep., XL. Obs. **9**. (*f*) Of demonstrative and other adjs., XLII. Obs. **5** ; A. & G. **344**, *b ;* H. **569**, I. (*g*) Of the prep. **cum**, XLIII. Obs. **6** ; A. & G. **99**, *e ;* **104**, *e ;* H. **184**, 6 ; **187**, 2.

Diagram showing by examples in the third person singular every regular form of the Latin verb learned thus far.

	First Conj. Active	First Conj. Passive	Second Conj. Active	Second Conj. Passive	Third Conj. Active	Third Conj. Passive	Fourth Conj. Active	Fourth Conj. Passive
Indicative Mode.								
Prs.	cremā-t	cremā-tur	habē-t	habē-tur	dūci-t	dūci-tur	expedi-t	expedī-tur
Impf.	cremā-ba-t	cremā-bā-tur	habē-ba-t	habē-bā-tur	dūcē-ba-t	dūcē-bā-tur	expedi-ē-ba-t	expedi-ē-bā-tur
Pf.	cremāv-i-t	cremāt-us est	habu-i-t	habit-us est	dūx-i-t	duct-us est	expediv-i-t	expedīt-us est
Plpf.	cremāv-era-t	cremāt-us erat	habu-era-t	habit-us erat	dūx-era-t	duct-us erat	expediv-era-t	expedīt-us erat
Subjunctive Mode.								
Pres	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	dūca-t	dūcā-tur	expedi-a-t	expedi-ā-tur
Impf.	cremā-re-t	cremā-rē-tur	habē-re-t	habē-rē-tur	dūce-re-t	dūce-rē-tur	expedi-re-t	expedi-rē-tur
Pf.	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	expediv-eri-t	. . . . .
Infinitive Mode.								
Pres.	cremā-re	cremā-rī	habē-re	habē-rī	dūce-re	dūc-ī	expedī-re	expedī-rī
Fut.	cremat-ūrus esse	. . . . .	habit-ūrus esse	. . . . .	duct-ūrus esse	. . . . .	expedit-ūrus esse	. . . . .
Participles.								
Pres.	. . . . .	cremā-ndus	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	expedi-ēns	expedi-e-ndus
Fut.	cremāt-ūrus	cremāt-us	habit-ūrus	. . . . .	duct-ūrus	. . . . .	expedit-ūrus	. . . . .
Pf.	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	habit-us	. . . . .	duct-us	expedit-us	. . . . .
Gerunds (gen. sing.)								
	cremā-ndī	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	dūce-ndī	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .

SUGGESTIONS AND QUESTIONS ON THE DIAGRAM.

The supine, of which we have an example in **factū** XXXV., is found with a few verbs.

Note that in the 4th conjug. the vowel **ē** is inserted between the pres. stem and the tense sign.

Remember that all the partics. having a masc. in **-us** have fem. and neut. endings also.

How does the 3d person plur. differ as a rule from the 3d sing. and what exceptions to this rule?

Give in classified form the three stems of each conjugation.

Give all the tense signs. What signs and endings are the same for all conjugs.?

The pres. inf., the pf. ind. act., and the pf. pass. (or fut. act.) partic., since they are very commonly found and invariably show the three stems of the verb, may properly be called the principal parts (or the parts) of the verb.[1]

3. WORD REVIEW.

Classified alphabetical list of all the new words occurring in Chapters **4**, **5** and **6**, of CAESAR's "GALLIC WAR."

Let the pupil give the meaning of each word, and be prepared to decline every noun and adj. and to give the principal parts of every verb.

VERBS.

1st Conjugation.	3d Conjugation.		4th Conjugation.
1. cremāre	1. adscīscere	10. incendere	1. convenīre
2. damnāre	2. cōgere	11. molere	2. expedīre
3. ēnūntiāre	3. combūrere	12. morī	3. īre
4. exīstimāre	4. condūcere	13. patī	4. subīre
5. incitāre	5. cōnscīscere	14. recipere	5. trānsīre
6. oppūgnāre	(pf. cōnscīvit)	15. sequī	
7. pācāre	6. ēripere	16. tollere (pf. partic.	*Irregular.*
8. parāre	7. exsequī	sublātus)	1. efferre
9. portāre	8. exūrere	17. ūtī	
	9. fluere		

[1] These principal parts, though not the same as those usually given, will answer the purpose equally well. The 1st pers. sing. of the pres. ind., which is usually included, is almost never found in Caesar, and in many cases does not show the pres. stem.

2d Conjugation.

1. impendēre	2. iubēre	3. oportet	4. vidēre

NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.

1st Declension.

1. familia	3. Kalendae, *pl.*	5. poena
2. Genāva	4. Nōrēia	6. rīpa

2d Declension.

1. aedificium	8. Gabīnius	15. Nōricus	22. Rauricī
2. arma, *pl.*	9. indicium	16. obaerātus	23. singulī, *plur.*
3. Aulus	10. iūdicium	17. perīculum	24. socius
4. Boiī	11. Latovīcī	18. perpaucus	25. Tulingī
5. bonus	12. Lūcius	19. prīvātus	26. vadum
6. cibāria, *pl.*	13. nihilum	20. quadringentī, *vl.*	27. vīcus
7. cōnsilium	14. nōnnūllus	21. quīntus	28. vinculum

3d Declension.

1. Allobroges	6. īgnis, *masc.*, by exception	10. mors, *fem.*
2. Aprīlis, *m. & f.* Aprīle, *neut.*	7. iūs, *neut.*	11. pōns, *masc.* by exception
3. cliēns	8. mēnsis, *masc.* by exception	12. reditiō, *fem.*
4. dictiō, *fem.*	9. mōrēs, *masc.*	13. suspīciō, *fem.*
5. difficilis, *m. & f.* difficile, *neut.*		14. vīs, *fem.*

-u STEMS.	-ē STEMS.	UNCLASSIFIED.
1. domum, *accus. sing.*	1. diēs	1 decem, *indeclinable*
2. magistrātūs, *nom. plur.*	2. spēs	2. duo, *irregular*
		3. duodecim, *indeclinable*
		4. quemque, *accus. sing.*

ADVERBS.		PREPOSITIONS.	CONJUNCTIONS.
1. eōdem	6. praeterquam	1. ob	1. nē
2. iam	7. quā	2. post	2. neque
3. nōndum	8. ūnā		3. ubi
4. nūper	9. vix		4. utī
5. omnīnō			5. vel

4. EXERCISES.

1. Conversation. Quōs ad iūdicium Orgetorix condūxit?
Quid hī fēcērunt?
Cūr magistrātūs hominēs ex agrīs coēgērunt?
Magistrātūsne [1] Orgetorigem cēpērunt?
Quam ob rem Helvētiī vīcōs suōs incendērunt?
Quōs sociōs recēpērunt?
Quot (*how many*) itineribus sē exīre posse arbitrātī sunt?
Quōrum per fīnēs difficile erat?
Quōrum per fīnēs facilius erat?
Allobrogesne bonō animō in Rōmānōs erant?
Quem diem ad profectiōnem dīxērunt? [2]

2. Write in Latin. When the conspiracy of Orgetorix was made
known to the Helvetians, they tried to compel him to plead his cause.
He escaped, through (the presence of) his many clients and debtors
whom he brought to the trial, and committed suicide, as many
Helvetians think. The Helvetians after his death, having prepared all
things for departure, burned their villages and all the grain which
was not carried with them. Grain enough for three months was
carried in the carts. They persuaded three neighboring peoples to
go out with them, and said that they would come together from-
all-sides on the 28th of March. They thought they were able to
persuade the Allobroges, who lived in the Roman province, to allow
them to go through their boundaries by the easy way which was very
near the Rhone.

---

[1] The **-ne** here appended indicates that a question is asked; it is not translated
by any separate English word. Answer this question by a complete sentence, not
by a single word.

[2] In later lessons the teacher should give *ex tempore* conversation exercises of his
own framing.

LESSON LI.

1. TEXT.

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit, et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.

2. NOTES.

1. Caesarī: (*a*) dat. case; (*b*) other uses of the ending -**ī**? Cf. XXVI. N. **3**; XXXIX. Obs. **1, 2**.

2. nūntiātum esset: (*a*) a new compound tense, the plpf. subjunctive passive. What are its two component parts? Cf., for **esset**, XXXV. N. **8**. (*b*) How does it differ from the plpf. ind. pass.? Cf. **appellātus erat** XXXIII; (*c*) the preceding dat. **Caesarī**, though standing before the conj. **cum**, is used with this verb; cf. this use of the dat. with its use with **dat** XXXIV., **probat** XXXV., **ēnūntiāta** XXXIX., **cōnscīverit** XLI. Under what two heads may these verbs be classified? Cf. E. G. **62**, 1.

3. iter facere, *to make a journey, to march* (when used of an army); **iter** (**īre**, *to go*) is the accus. sing. neut., shortened form of stem **itiner**- ; cf. **itiner-e** XXXI., **itiner-a, itiner-ibus** XLVI.

4. eōs . . . cōnārī; the clause is in apposition with **id** preceding. How should it be translated after the preceding verb of saying?

5. proficiscī; for form and meaning, cf. XLIV. N. **8**.

6. quam maximīs potest itineribus; a peculiar shortened expression for **tam māgnīs itineribus quam potest maximīs itineribus**, *by so great journeys as he is able (to hasten) by means of the greatest journeys,* i. e., *by the longest possible stages;* cf. **quam maximum numerum** XXX., where **possunt**, *they are able*, is omitted; for **potest**, cf. **est** I., **possent** XXXVI., **posse** XXXVII.

7. **tōtī**; peculiar dat. of **tōtus**; it is the same for all genders; cf. **tōtīus** XXI., **ēius** XLII., **cūius** XXXIII, also **eī** XXXIV. and **cui** XXXIV. N. 9, *b*.

8. **imperat**; takes dat. of the person, **prōvinciae**; cf. **persuādēre**.

9. **iubet**; note in this Lesson the rapid succession of pres. indicatives, impressing us with the energy and rapidity of Caesar's movements. It was Caesar who said "I came, I saw, I conquered."

10. **rescind-ī**; cf. the ending **-ī** in this verb and in **proficisc-ī** with **-rī** in **cōnā-rī**. Where is each of these forms found?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The plpf. subjunctive pass. is formed in all conjugs. by combining the pf. pass. partic. with the impf. subjunctive of **esse**.

2. The 3d decl. noun **iter** is neuter by exception, and its stem is **itiner-**.

3. The use of **quam** with the superlative, where the translation *possible* may be added to that of the superlative, involves the omission of **tam**, *so*, of the positive of the adj., and sometimes of the verb **posse**.

4. The ending **-īus** (or **-ius**) occurs as a gen. sing. and **-ī** (or **-i**) as a dat. sing. ending in **tōtus** and the prons. **is** and **quī**.

5. **Imperāre**, like **persuādēre**, is followed by the dat. of the person.

6. The dat. is used with verbs of *giving* and *saying* to designate the person to whom something is *given* or *said*.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **Caesar**, **Caesaris**, full name **Gāius Iūlius Caesar**, a great Roman, — writer, general, statesman.

2. **imperāre**,[1] *to command;* **prō-vinciae mīlitēs imperāre**, *to levy soldiers upon the province.*

---

[1] The pupil must not forget that all verbs with inf. in **-āre** form pf. regularly in **-āvit**, and partic. in **-āt-us**, **-a**, **-um**.

3. **legiō,** fem., (for decl., cf. XLI. N. 9), *a legion;* the Roman legion was a body of soldiers, numbering in the army of Caesar about 3600 men.

4. **mātūrāre,** *to hasten.*

5. **mīlitēs,** *soldiers.*

6. **nūntiāre,** *to announce.*

7. **pervenīre,** *to come through, to arrive.*

8. **rescindere, -scidit, -scissus,** *to break down.*

9. **ulterior,** adj., positive wanting, *farther.*

10. **urbs,** fem., for decl., cf. XXXIV. N. 5, *a city;* to a Roman, often *the city of Rome,* just as " the city " means *Boston* to one living in the suburbs of that city.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Caesarī nūntiant Helvētiōs faciliōre itinere exīre cōnātūrōs esse. (*b*) Caesar, ut prōvinciā Helvētiōs prohibēret, quam maximās cōpiās cōgere mātūrābat. (*c*) Erat omnīnō pōns ūnus quō ad Genāvam iter facere possent. (*d*) Caesar, factīs itineribus māgnīs, Gallīs quī prōvinciam incolēbant mīlitēs multōs imperāvit. (*e*) Cum quam maximae cōpiae coāctae essent, in prōvinciam mātūrāvit. (*f*) Pōns rescinditur. (*g*) Dīcit pontem rescindī.

2. (*a*) He-sets-out from Rome, makes (his) way through the farther province, and comes to [1] Geneva. (*b*) After the bridge had been broken down (abl. absolute) by (**ā**) Caesar, the Helvetians tried to cross the Rhone by-a-ford. (*c*) Caesar, who was at-that time in the city, hastened to the Rhone, which was many miles distant. (*d*) When they had-set-out, they marched through our province.

3. (*a*) Caesar tries to keep out the Helvetians by breaking down the bridge (abl. absolute), and levies soldiers upon the province. (*b*) Many who lived in our province were well-disposed (of good mind) toward Caesar. (*c*) The Helvetians hope to be able to seize the bridge, so-that by-this bridge they-may-cross into the province. (*d*) He-is-able to-bring-together a large number of soldiers. (*e*) He

---

[1] It is a safe rule for the beginner in Latin composition to use **ad** with the accus. wherever *to* is used in English unless there has been special instruction to the contrary. Note that here *to* means *to the vicinity of,* like **ad** in the text.

says he is-able to-bring-together a-very-large number of soldiers.
(*f*) Caesar tells them that there is one legion in farther **Gaul**.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Latin for *to set out, to march, to come, to go, to go back and forth, to arrive at.* **2.** A word with two more syllables in the gen. than in the nom. singular. **3.** Lat. for *a great number, a very great number, the greatest number, the greatest possible number.* **4.** Formation, pronunciation, and meaning of **tōtīus, ēius,** and **cūius.** **5.** Comparison of the English expression *to arrive at* and the Latin **pervenīre ad.**[1] **6.** Similarity in formation of plpf. ind. pass. and plpf. subjv. passive. **7.** Different uses of the dative. **8.** The expanded form of **quam maximum numerum coëmunt.** **9.** English derivatives from words in this Lesson.

[1] *To* or *at* in English like **ad** in Latin often means *toward, to the vicinity of.*

ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

Why is this picture appropriately given with the above Lesson? What offensive weapons has this soldier? What defensive? What does he wear on his feet? What is the position of his sword belt? Cf the Gallic foot-soldier, p. 364.

LESSON LII.

1. TEXT.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgā-
tōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiō-
nis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinē-
bant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō
iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter
habērent nūllum : rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere
liceat.

2. NOTES.

1. certiōrēs factī sunt, *they-are having-been-made more-certain,
they were made more certain, they were informed :* (*a*) for factī sunt
cf. facere and arbitrātī sunt XLII.; (*b*) factī and certiōrēs are
both pred. adjs. agreeing with the subj. of sunt; cf. XXXIII. N. 5, *d.*
(*c*) in dē adventū, modifying this phrase, dē means *of* in sense of
concerning.

2. cūius lēgātiōnis ; cūius is here an adj.; cf. quā dē causā X.

3. quī dīcerent, *that they might say, to say ;* cf. XLIX. Obs. **4.**
To what is quī equivalent here ?

4. sine maleficiō ; a new prep. with the abl.; for other preps.
with abl., cf. XLII. N. **5.**

5. sibi esse in animō, *it is to them in mind, they have (it) in mind,
they intend ;* antec. of. sibi ?

6. aliud, neut. accus. sing., limiting iter; for ending -d, cf. i-d,
quo-d.

7. proptereā quod . . . habērent; cf. proptereā quod . . .
absunt VI., quod . . . contendunt XI., quod . . . continentur
XXII., proptereā quod . . . fluit XLVII., with proptereā quod
. . . obtentūrus esset XXXV., quod . . . vidērentur XLVIII.,

and the present instance. Which of the above verbs are in the subjunctive? Which stand after a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, or in indirect discourse? All these **quod** clauses are of course subordinate (cf. E. G. **49**, 2).

8. rogāre; **sē** is to be supplied as its subject.

9. ut . . . liceat: (*a*) an obj. clause of purpose; cf. XLIV. N. **8**, *c*; (*b*) **liceat** is a pres. subjunctive of the 2d conjugation. In what respect is it like that of the 4th? Cf. XLIX. Obs. **1**; (*c*) subj. of **liceat**? (*d*) antec. of **ēius** and **sibi**? (*e*) the translation of what the Helvetians actually said, beginning with **rogāre**, is, " We ask that it may be permitted to us to do this with your consent; " freely " We ask permission etc."

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The 2d conjug., like the 4th, forms its pres. subjunctive by inserting **a** between the pres. stem and the personal ending.

2. The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse.

3. An expression freely translated *to inform*, but meaning literally *to make more certain*, is found in Caesar. It is formed by combining **facere** and **certior**, an adj. in the comparative, agreeing with the name of the person who is informed.

4. The prep. *of*, when used in the sense of *concerning*, is represented in Latin by **dē** with the abl. and not by the genitive.

5. *He intends* is represented in Latin by a clause meaning literally, *it is to him in mind*.

6. The following preps. are used with the abl. : **ā** or **ab**, **dē**, **cum**, **ē** or **ex**, **in**, **prō** and **sine** ; **in** is also used with the accusative.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The subordinate clauses of indirect discourse . . . . . . A. & G. **336**, 2. H. **524**.
2. Preps. with the ablative . . . . A. & G. **152**, *b*. H. **434**.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **adventū**, abl. sing., *a coming to, approach.*
2. **certus**, *sure, certain;* **hominem certiōrem facere**, *to inform a man.*
3. **licet, licuit, licitum est,**[1] *it is permitted;* **eī licet,** *it is permitted to him, he may.*
4. **maleficium** (**male**, adv., *badly,* and **facere**), *wrongdoing, an evil deed.*
5. **mittere, mīsit, missus,** *to let go, send.*

6. **Nammēius,** a Helvetian noble.
7. **nūllus,** adj. (**nē**, *not,* and **ūllus,** *any*), *not any, no, none.*
8. **prīnceps, prīncipis,** adj. or noun, *chief.*
9. **rogāre,** *to ask.*
10. **sine,** prep. with abl., *without.*
11. **ūllus,** adj., *any.*
12. **Verucloetius,** a Helvetian noble.
13. **voluntās,** *wish, good-will.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Compare **certiōrēs**; (*b*) **nōbilissimōs.** (*c*) Decline **eum** in all genders. (*d*) Decline **voluntāte**; (*e*) **iter.** (*f*) Write all the forms you know of **mittunt**; (*g*) **obtinēbant**; (*h*) **rogāre**; (*i*) **esse.**

2. (*a*) Ubi Helvētiōs certiōrēs dē Caesaris adventū fēcērunt, hī lēgātiōnem mittunt. (*b*) Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipēs nōbilissimī suae cīvitātis fuērunt. (*c*) Lēgātōs, quī ad Caesarem īrent, mīsērunt. (*d*) Eīs est in animō vī cōgere Sēquanōs ut itinere difficiliōre eōs exīre patiantur. (*e*) Dīxērunt eōs quī per prōvinciam iter factūrī essent nūllum aliud iter habēre.

3. (*a*) They determined to go; they tried to go; he can go; he hastens to go. (*b*) They ordered them to go; they compelled them to go; they allowed them to go. (*c*) They persuaded them to go; they asked them to go. (*d*) They tried to persuade Caesar not[2] to keep them out of the province.

4. (*a*) Caesar, being informed of the plans of the Helvetians, hastened into his province. (*b*) They intend, because they have no

---

[1] Found only in the 3d sing. with an inf. or clause as its subject.
[2] Cf. **nē . . . dīceret** XL.

other way, to march through the province without wrong-doing.
(c) They ask permission to do this.   (d) After getting everything
ready, they may go. (e) Ambassadors are sent to Caesar. (f) They
say that ambassadors are sent to Caesar.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Latin for *to march, to intend, to inform, he may*. 2. **Ūllus,
nūllus, nōn, neque**. 3. Two ways of translating *of* into Latin.
4. Two ways of translating *for*. 5. Two ways of translating *had*.
6. Two very common uses of the subjunctive. 7. When, as a rule,
to translate *to* by the complementary inf.; cf. E. G. **68**, 5 ; 8. when
by the subjunctive. 9. The pres. subjunctives of the 2d, 3d, and 4th
conjugations. 10. The meaning of every prep. used with the abl. in
the text thus far.

LESSON LIII.

1. TEXT.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem
occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub
iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque
hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam
itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō
exīstimābat.

2. NOTES.

1. **tenēbat** ; for mode, cf. LII. N. **7**.

2. **missum**: (a) **esse** understood, as with the preceding **occīsum**
and **pulsum** ; cf. XLVIII. N. **4**, b. (b) the pf. pass. partic. with
esse forms the pf. inf. pass.; cf. the pf. ind. pass. **missus est** and
E. G. **41**, 1, (2), (6) ; (c) inf. in indir. discourse, **memoriā tenēbat**

being equivalent to a verb of thinking; cf. XXVII. Obs. **5.** (*d*) What is the pres. inf. pass. ? (*e*) It will be seen at this point, that the preceding **ab Helvētiīs** means *by the Helvetians;* cf. **ā senātū** XXXIII. N. **5,** *c*, and note that both **senātū** and **Helvētiīs** are names of PERSONS. Is the prep. used with the names of THINGS by which something is done ? Cf. examples in III., XIV., XIX. and in this Lesson.

3. **putābat** : (*a*) note that in the principal clause, ending here, the subj. stands first, the verb last. How many clauses in this chapter of the text have exactly this order ? (*b*) **esse** is understood with **concēdendum**, a fut. pass. partic. in the neut. ; the clause is translated, literally, *he did not think it was about-to-be-allowed*, a little more freely, *it ought to be allowed*.

4. **inimīcō animō** ; cf. **bonō animō** XLVIII. Is a prep. used with the abl. in either of these instances ? What limits the noun **animō** in each case ? Note that both abl. phrases describe preceding nouns. Does the abl. usually limit a noun, or a verb ? Cf. examples in the last four chapters. Does it ever limit an adv. or an adj. ? Cf. **nihilō** XLII.

5. **faciundī** : (*a*) another form for the fut. pass. partic. **faciendī** ; (*b*) limiting **itineris**, which depends on **facultāte** ; literally, *the opportunity of a journey about-to-be-made*, more freely, *the opportunity of making a journey* ; cf. XLIII. N. **7**.

6. **temperātūrōs** ; for form, cf. XLVIII. N. **4**. With what does it agree and how do you know this ?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pf. inf. pass. of all conjugs. is compounded of the pf. pass. partic. and the pres. inf. **esse** ; the pf. ind. pass. is compounded of the same partic. and the pres. ind. of **esse**.

2. The fut. pass. partic. is sometimes so used as to imply necessity or obligation, and may then be translated by *must* or *ought*.

3. The abl. without a prep. and limited by an adj. (or genitive) is used to describe or qualify a noun. It is then called a descriptive abl., or an abl. of quality. In this use the abl. seems to have the

force of an adj., but in almost all other uses it has the force of an adverb.

4. With passive verbs the person or agent by whom something is done is expressed by the abl. case with the prep. **ā** or **ab**. Such an abl. is called an abl. of AGENT.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The fut. pass. partic. meaning *ought* or *must* . . . A. & G. **113**, *d*.   H. **234**.
2. The abl. of quality . . . A. & G. **251**.   H. **419**, II.
3. The abl. of agent . . . . A. & G. **246**.   H. **415**, I.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **Cassius,** the name of a Roman family.
2. **concēdere, -cessit, -cessus,** *to yield.*
3. **facultās,** *opportunity, ability;* in plur., *riches.*
4. **inimīcus** (in, negative, and **amīcus**), *unfriendly.*
5. **iniūria** (in, negative, and **iūs**), *injustice, wrong.*
6. **iugum,** *that which joins, a yoke;* conquered armies, in token of submission, were often compelled to pass under a yoke consisting of a spear laid on two uprights; cf. Eng. *subjugate.*
7. **memoria,** *memory.*
8. **occīdere, -cīdit, -cīsus (ob** and **caedere,** *to cut*), *to cut down, to kill.*
9. **pellere, pepulit, pulsus,** *to drive.*
10. **putāre,** *to think.*
11. **sub,** prep. with accus. or abl., *under.*
12. **temperāre,** *to govern one's self, to refrain.*
13. **tenēre, tenuit, tentus,** *to hold.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decl. of **memoria**; (*b*) **iugum**; (*c*) **animō**; (*d*) **facultāte**. (*e*) Write four infs. of **exīstimābat** with meaning of each; (*f*) four of **missum**.

2. (*a*) L. Cassius cōnsul ab Helvētiīs occīsus est. (*b*) Rōmānī certiōrēs factī sunt L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum esse. (*c*) Exercitum Cassiī Helvetiī sub iugum mīsērunt. (*d*) Facultās itineris faciendī per prōvinciam, quod memoriā patrum ab iniūriā nōn temperāvērunt, Helvētiīs nōn data est. (*e*) Facultās nōn danda est. (*f*) Exercitū Rōmānō sub iugum missō, Helvetiī omnēs Rōmānōs sē pulsūrōs putābant.

3. (*a*) That (man) who was killed was consul. (*b*) He was the consul of the Roman people, who dwell in Italia. (*c*) A Roman army ought-to-be-sent into Gaul. (*d*) The province must not be yielded to the Helvetians. (*e*) The Romans think that they possess all the province.

4. (*a*) The Helvetians remembered that hostile men had been driven out by the Gauls. (*b*) Their fathers said that these men were the Romans. (*c*) They can do, as they think, that which their fathers did. (*d*) They are about-to-make a journey through the province, which is very-near. (*e*) The Allobroges who live in this province are not-yet well-disposed towards the Romans, because they have recently been subdued by them. (*f*) They are separated from the Allobroges by the Rhone.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. All the compound tenses used thus far. 2. **Mittere, mittī, missī, missus est, missus esse**. 3. Possible meanings of the form **quam**. 4. How to say *must* or *ought*. 5. How to say *can*. 6. How to say *could*. 7. Peculiarities of the abl. of quality. 8. Difference between abl. of agent and abl. of instrument. 9. The literal translation of the fut. pass. participle. 10. Of the fut. act. participle. 11. The Lat. for *to remember*. 12. The part of a compound tense which is frequently omitted. 13. Order of words in this Lesson. 14. More regular form for **faciundī**.

LESSON LIV.

1. TEXT.

Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs reverterentur.

2. NOTES.

1. posset: (*a*) for form, cf. **possent** XXXVI.; (*b*) for use, cf. XL. N. **5**, Obs. **7**.

2. imperāverat; for form, cf. XLV. N. **1**.

3. dum . . . convenīrent: (*a*) impf. subjv. of 4th conjug.; cf. pres. subjv. same conjug., **conveniant** XLIX., and that of the 3d conjug., **proficiscantur** XLIV.; (*b*) *until they should come together*, but just as accurately, *for them to come together*. In what respect, then, is this clause like **ut . . . posset** just before?

4. sē: (*a*) How do we know that this word is an accus. sing.? Cf. XXXII. N. **10**. (*b*) What is the number of the same word in XLV.? Number of **sibi** in XXXII.? In LII.?

5. dēlīberandum; gerund; cf. XXX. N. **5**.

6. quid, indefinite pron., *anything;* cf. the meaning of **quemque** XLIII.; note the position of **quid** immediately after **sī**.

7. vellent; an irregular impf. subjv., from **velle**, *to wish*.

8. ad Īdūs Aprīlēs, *on the April Ides:* (*a*) **Īdūs** is a -u stem. What is its case? For other cases, cf. XLI. N. **6**; (*b*) the Ides in April came on the 13th; cf. XLIX. N. **3**. What is the usual way of expressing the time *at which*? Cf. XL. N. **1**.

9. reverterentur, *let them return;* what Caesar said to the legates was, "I will take time to think about it; if you want anything, return on the Ides of April."

3. OBSERVATION.

1. The conj. **dum** meaning *until* is often used with the subjv. (like **ut**) to express PURPOSE.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Dum-clauses of purpose.   A. & G. **328**.   H. **519**, II. 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **dēlīberāre** (from **dē** and **lī-brāre**, *to weigh*), *to weigh well, ponder.*
2. **dum**, conj., *while, until.*
3. **Īd-ūs**, **-uum**, fem. by exception, *the Ides*, the 13th of the month, except in March, May, July, and Oct., when they came on the 15th.
4. **intercēdere**, **-cēssit**, **-cēssū-rus**, *to go between, to intervene.*
5. **quid**, indefinite pron., *anything.*

6. **respondēre**, **-spondit**, **-spōn-sus**, *to answer.*
7. **revertī**, **reversus**, dep., *to return;* in the pf. tenses, the stem of the pf. act. form **revertit** was used by Caesar.
8. **sī**, conj., *if.*
9. **spatium**, *extent*, either of space or time.
10. **sūmere**, **sūmpsit**, **sūmptus**, *to take up, to assume.*
11. **tamen**, adv., *yet, nevertheless.*
12. **velle**, **voluit**, irreg., *to wish.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Ea facultās, quam Helvētiī rogāvērunt, nōn concēdenda est. (*b*) Rōmānō exercitū ab Helvētiīs iam pulsō, Caesar eōs īre per prōvinciam nōn patēbātur. (*c*) Caesar diem ad dēlīberandum, ut quam maximus numerus mīlitum convenīret, sūmpsit. (*d*) Caesar dīxit sē dē eā rē dēlīberātūrum esse. (*e*) Lēgātī, quibus respondit, nōbilissimī cīvitātis Helvētiae erant. (*f*) Mīlitēs, quōs tōtī prōvinciae imperāvit, nōndum convēnērunt.

2. (*a*) Men of unfriendly mind are not likely to (about to) **refrain from wrong.** (*b*) For many years the Romans had an army in the province. (*c*) It is not permitted to the Helvetians to go through the province, because in the consulship of Lucius Cassius they did harm. (*d*) The ambassadors who asked permission[1] to cross the province are about to return to Caesar.

3. (*a*) The province must not be seized. (*b*) Caesar does not intend[1] to allow the Helvetians to cross the Rhone. (*c*) The good son may[1] see the soldiers of[1] whom he has been informed.[1] (*d*) Caesar says that the ambassadors may return on the Ides of April. (*e*) Caesar asked the ambassadors to return.[1]

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Difference of **quid** and **quod**, in form ; 2. in meaning. 3. Different forms of the verb **posse** in text thus far. 4. The dat. sing. of the accus. sing. **sē** ; 5. the dat. plural ; 6. the accus. plural. 7. The pf. stem of the 1st conjugation ; 8. of the 4th. 9. The impf. subjv of the 4th conjugation. 10. The impf. ind. of the 4th conjugation. 11. Likeness between **proficiscendum** and **dēlīberandum** ; 12. difference. 13. Position of **quid**. 14. The Ides. 15. The Kalends. 16. A conj. which may express both time and purpose.

LESSON LV.

1. TEXT.

Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem, mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit.

[1] Cf. LII.

2. NOTES.

1. quam : (*a*) What is the gender, number, and case of this pron.? How, then, shall we know its antec.? Cf. **mīlitēs, quōs** LIV. (*b*) Why must it, though fem., be translated *which*? Cf. XXIII. Obs. **7.** (*c*) What is another use of the form **quam**? Cf. LI. N. **6.**

2. sē-cum habēbat : (*a*) for position of **cum**, cf. **sēcum** XLIII. N. **3**; (*b*) note that **sē** must here be the abl. sing.; why? What is the number of the same form in XLIII.? With what other case does it agree in form? Cf. LIV. N. **4.**

3. mīlia passuum ; for form and use, cf. XXVIII. N. **2, 3.**

4. pedum : (*a*) gen. plur.; stem? Forms its nom. sing. like **cīvitās**; cf. XX. N. **1**; (*b*) limited by **sēdecim** and depends on **mūrum**, describing it like an adj.; similar to what abl. use? (*c*) Note the numerals in this Lesson. What others have been used in the text?

5. perdūcit : (*a*) the long sentence ending here is not difficult if mastered in the Latin order, since the words are arranged in natural groups; cf. XL. Obs. **8**; (*b*) the verb is modified by **legiōne** and **mīlitibus**, ablatives of means,[1] by the phrases **ā lacū** and **ad montem**, by **mīlia**, and by **mūrum** and **fossam**, direct objects.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Third decl. stems in **-d**, like stems in **-t**, form the nom. sing. by adding **s** and dropping the final consonant of the stem.

2. The reflexive pron. is the same in the sing. as in the plur.; the dat. is **sibi**, the accus. and abl. **sē**. A gen. form **suī** is sometimes used.

3. The gen., like the abl., when limited by an adj., may be used to express a quality. This quality is very frequently a measure of the thing described by the genitive.

---

[1] Although names of persons, they are ablatives of means rather than of agent, because the persons are not regarded here as voluntary agents but as the instruments which Caesar used.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The decl. of the reflexive
    pronoun . . . . . A. & G. **98**, 2, *b.*   H. **184**.
2. The gen. of quality (es-
    pecially measure) . . A. & G. **215** and *b.*   H. **396**, V. and N. 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **altitūdinem**, accus. sing., fem., *height, depth;* cf. **altus**.
2. **īnfluere**, -**flūxit**, -**fluxūrus**, *to flow into.*
3. **fossa**, *that which has been dug, a ditch.*
4. **intereā**, adv., *meanwhile.*
5. **mūrus**, *a wall.*
6. **novem**, indecl. numeral, *nine.*
7. **perdūcere**, -**dūxit**, -**ductus**, *to lead through, bring along, prolong, draw out, extend.*
8. **pēs**, **pedis**, *a foot* of man or beast, and also a measure of length.
9. **sēdecim** (**sex** and **decem**), indecl. numeral, *six and ten, sixteen.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Eīs rēbus quās sēcum habēbant firmissimī mīlitēs Rōmānī castella commūnīvērunt. (*b*) Lacū Lemannō Helvētiī continēbantur. (*c*) Caesar, nē in prōvinciā ūllum maleficium facerent, mūrum fossamque perdūxit. (*d*) Sī vī trānsīre cōnātī erant, mūrō fossāque prohibēbantur. (*e*) Altus mūrus, ut Helvētiōs prohibēret, ā Caesare factus est. (*f*) Flūmen, dē quō certior factus est, per hōs fīnēs centum et decem mīllia passuum īnfluēbat.

2. (*a*) All the legions, which were-coming-together, had not-yet arrived at the Rhone. (*b*) The soldiers who were already with Caesar were prolonging the ditch to the mountain for several days. (*c*) At that time the boundaries of Italy (**Ītalia**) were far distant from the Rhone. (*d*) Mount Jura was overhanging, so that a very narrow way intervened between the mountain and the river.

3. (*a*) Caesar thought it was not fitting for the Helvetians to go through our province, the men of which were not-yet well disposed. (*b*) Caesar, when they asked his permission, did not inform the Helvetians that he was about-to-make a wall. (*c*) Caesar intends to

extend the ditch from the lake to the river. (*d*) He does this that the Helvetians may not be able to accomplish their undertakings. (*e*) The legion which is in Gaul can prolong the ditch. (*f*) The river which flows toward the west is the Rhone.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The decl. of **pēs**; 2. of the relative pron. in the feminine. 3. The position of **cum**. 4. Four possibilities for the form **sē**. 5. The literal and free translation of **mūrus pedum sēdecim**. 6. Two cases which express quality. 7. Cases and phrases in this Lesson which are used, like adverbs, to limit verbs. 8. Different tenses in the Lesson. 9. Why **perdūcere** is an appropriate word for the building of a wall or ditch. 10. English derivatives from words in this Lesson.
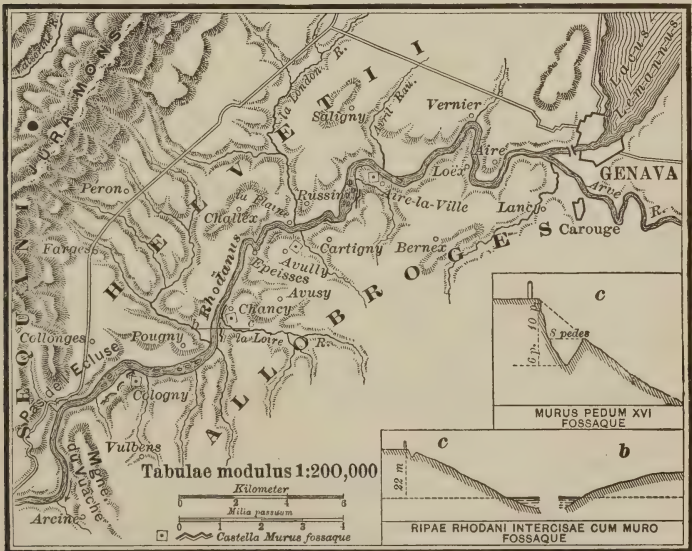
MAP AND PLANS SHOWING CAESAR'S WALL AND TRENCH.

Note that the wall and trench are not continuous. The spaces between these fortifications were sufficiently protected by the depth and swiftness of the river or the steepness of the bank. Traces of Caesar's works have been discovered in modern times. For the **castella** on the map, see LVI.

LESSON LVI.

1. TEXT.

Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella com-
mūnit, quō facilius, sī, sē invītō, trānsīre cōnārentur,
prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum
lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē
mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prō-
vinciam dare, et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum
ostendit.

. NOTES.

1. opere; from the nom. sing. neut. **opus**; cf. XLVII. N. **2**.

2. possit: (*a*) pres. subjv.; cf. **posset**, impf. subjv., LIV.;
(*b*) **quō**, the introductory word of this clause, = **ut eō**, *that by this*
(*means*); cf. XLIX. N. **2**, *a*. What degree of comparison immediately
follows **quō** in the word **facilius**? (*c*) The preceding **sē invītō**, *he*
(*being*) *unwilling, against his will*, is an abl. absolute construction
consisting of a noun and an ordinary adjective, not a participle as
is more common; cf. XLIV. N. **6**; the pres. partic. of **esse**, appro-
priate to such a phrase, is wanting in Latin; (*d*) supply **eōs** as the
obj. of the preceding **prohibēre**.

3. dare: (*a*) The translation of Caesar's words, when speaking
to the legates, is: "I cannot, consistently with the custom and
precedent (because of the custom and precedent) of the Roman people,
give to any one the right of way through the province;" (*b*) the
preceding **ūllī** is here a pronoun in the dat. case; for form, cf. **tōtī**
LI.; for use, cf. LI. N. **2**, *c*.

4. cōnentur; in form, a pres. subjv. pass. of the 1st conjug.; cf.
proficiscantur XLIV., **conveniant** XLIX., **liceat** LII.

5. prohibitūrum: (*a*) based on **prohibit-**, a supine stem of the
2d conjug.; cf. XLIII. N. **9**, Obs. **5**; (*b*) supply **esse**, the subj. of
which is **sē** in the preceding clause; (*c*) Caesar's words, when speak-
ing to the legates, were "I shall keep (you) out."

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The sign of the pres. subjv. is -ē- in the 1st conjug., and -ā- in the 2d, 3d, and 4th. In the 1st and 3d conjugs. this sign takes the place of the final vowel of the pres. stem, in the 2d and 4th it is added to that stem.

2. Some neuts. in **-us** have the gen. in **-oris** ; others in **-eris**.

3. The relative **quō = ut eō** is used to introduce purpose clauses containing a comparative.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Third decl. neuts.
   in -us, gen. -eris   A. & G. **48**, *d* and **49, genus.**   H. **61, opus.**
2. The subjv. of pur-
   pose after **quō**   A. & G. **317**, *b.*   H. **497**, II. 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **castellum**, *a small fort, a re-doubt, a castle.*
2. **commūnīre**, *to fortify strongly.*
3. **dispōnere**, **-posuit**, **-positus**, *to place apart, to place here and there.*
4. **exemplum**, *an example.*
5. **invītus**, *unwilling.*
6. **negāre**, *to say . . . not, to deny.*

7. **opus**, **-eris**, neut., *a work, a piece of work.*
8. **ostendere**, **-tendit**, **-tentus**, (**obs** for **ob** and **tendere**, *to stretch*), *to stretch in the way of, to show.*
9. **praesidium**, *a sitting before, a guard.*
10. **venīre**, **vēnit**, **ventum**, *to come.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decl. of **eō opere** together. (*b*) Decl. of **praesidium** ; (*c*) iter. (*d*) Write all the forms you know of **posse** ; (*e*) **prohibēre**. (*f*) Subjv. forms of **negāre**. (*g*) Parts of **negāre** ; (*h*) **commūnīre**.

2. (*a*) Praesidīs dispositīs, castella ā Caesare commūnīta sunt. (*b*) Id opus, ut Helvētiōs prohibēret, perfēcit. (*c*) Negat prōvinciam, quam Allobrogēs incolant, trānseundam esse. (*d*) Ea diēs cum lēgātīs Helvētiōrum cōnstitūta est. (*e*) Ostendit sē, sī flūmen trānseant, vim factūrum esse. (*f*) Caesar Helvētiīs, quī rogant ut sibi trānsīre prōvinciam liceat, iter dare nōn potest.

3. (*a*) The legates return on the appointed day. (*b*) The legates whom Caesar had sent home returned to him. (*c*) Caesar did not allow them to march through the boundaries of the Allobroges. (*d*) They say they will use force. (*e*) The work which was completed was very-great.

4. (*a*) They did not try to cross against Caesar's will. (*b*) It happened at that time that they could persuade the Sequanians. (*c*) The ambassadors say they will return to him on the Ides of April. (*d*) The-right-of-way must not be given to those who are not well disposed towards the Romans.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Neuts. in **-us**; 2. in **-um**; 3. in **-e**. 4. The pres. subjv. in three conjugations. 5. The impf. subjv. in all conjugations. 6. What to expect after **quō** introducing a purpose clause. 7. **Possit** and **posset**. 8. Example from text of an abl. absolute consisting of a noun and a participle; 9. a noun and an ordinary adjective; 10. a noun and another noun. 11. The Lat. for *they return, they returned ;* cf. Text of this Lesson with Text and Vocab. of LIV. 12. *Against his will, with his consent.*

LESSON LVII.

1. TEXT.

Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iunctīs ratibusque
complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima alti-
tūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū,
sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīli-
tum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

2. NOTES.

1. quā ; for meaning and use, cf. quā XLVI. N. **6.**

2. altitūdō ; nom. sing. fem. ; for stem, cf. altitūdinem LV. and
XXVIII. N. **5**, Obs. **4.**

3. Helvētiī . . . dēstitērunt : (*a*) cf., for order and translation
of this sentence, LIII. N. **3**, *a ;* LV. N. **5** ; (*b*) find in it two abls. of
separation, six abls. of means ; (*c*) note how the successive adjs.
dēiectī, aliī, cōnātī, repulsī, keep the subj. Helvētiī in mind ;
(*d*) the clause sī . . . possent is the obj. of cōnātī, and sī would
better be translated *whether ;* (*e*) note and explain the similarity of
form but difference of voice in dēiectī and cōnātī ; cf. also usī and
exūstīs XLIV., and consider why these two partics. have to be used
in different cases.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. All nominatives in -tūdō of the 3d decl. have stems in -tūdin-.

2. From the nature of deponent verbs, the partic. which is pf.
pass. in form is pf. act. in sense. Other Latin verbs have a pf.
pass. but not a pf. act. partic. ; cf. E. G. **41**, participles. The pf.
pass. partic. must often be used to supply the place of a pf. active.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Third decl. nouns in
    -dō and -gō . . . A. & G. **49, virgō.**   H. **60, virgō.**
2. The lack of a pf. act.
    partic. and how to
    supply its place . A. & G. **290,** *d* and 1, 2.   H. **550,** N. **4.**

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **complūrēs (complūra** neut.), *very many.*

2. **cōnātū**, abl. sing., (**cōnārī**), *an attempt;* cf. **cōnāta** XXXV.

3. **concursū**, abl. sing., (**con** and **currere**, *to run*), *a running together.*

4. **dēicere** or **dēiicere, -iēcit, -iectus**, *to cast down.*

5. **dēsistere, dēstitit, dēstitūrus**, *to stand off, to desist.*

6. **interdiū**, adv., *by day.*

7. **iungere, iunxit, iunctus**, *to join.*

8. **minimus** (irreg. sup. of **parvus**), *least, very small;* cf. **minimē** VII.

9. **mūnītiō**, *a fortifying, a fortification.*

10. **nāvis**,[1] fem., *a ship, a boat.*

11. **noctū**, adv., *by night.*

12. **nōnnumquam**, *not never, sometimes;* cf. **nōnnūllus** XLVII.

13. **perrumpere, -rūpit, -ruptus**, *to break through.*

14. **ratis**, fem., *a raft.*

15. **repellere, -pulit, -pulsus**, *to drive back.*

16. **tēlum**, *a missile weapon.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Nāvēs, quibus flūmen trānsīre cōnātī sunt, minimae fuērunt. (*b*) Hīs omnibus cōnātīs repulsīs, difficiliōre itinere inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum īre cōnstituērunt. (*c*) Cum perrumpere cōnārentur, tēlīs ā mīlitibus Rōmānīs repulsī sunt. (*d*) Rīpam flūminis mūrō sēdecim pedum commūnīvit. (*e*) Sī flūmen altissimum esset, cōnātus est. (*f*) Ūsī multīs nāvibus, ut flūmen trānsīrent, et repulsī, eō cōnātō dēsistere cōnstituērunt.

2. (*a*) The Helvetians went into the territory of their neighbors, that they-might-roam-about more-widely. (*b*) The Helvetians were not able to break down the works of the Romans. (*c*) Caesar says that he will not allow the Helvetians by using (having used) force to hold the bank of the river. (*d*) The Helvetians tried to destroy the strong fortification which the Romans had made.

---

[1] It will be understood that nouns in **-is** have the gen. like the nom. unless otherwise stated. Nouns in **-is** with gen. in **-idis** are mostly Greek, and but few of them are found in Caesar.

3. (*a*) Caesar intends to keep the Helvetians out of the province.
(*b*) If Caesar is unwilling, they think they will break through the
wall which he has made. (*c*) The Helvetians were trying to drive
back the Romans from the wall. (*d*) In order to cross the river,
they use very many boats which they have seized. (*e*) They think
that the depth of the river is not great. (*f*) They said that in the
boats which they were-joining-together [1] they would try to cross the
Rhone.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The nom. sing. of **multitūdine, fortitūdinis,** and **longitūdi-
nem.** 2. Two uses of the form **quā.** 3. Two meanings for **sī.**
4. A verbal form not found in Latin. 5. Two nouns from **cōnārī.**
6. A noun from **mūnīre.** 7. Difference between **minimē** and **mini-
mus.** 8. Nouns having the same form in the gen. as in the nom.
singular. 9. Different uses of the abl. without a prep. in text thus
far. 10. Eng. derivatives from words in this Lesson.

LESSON LVIII.

1. TEXT.

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs
invītīs, propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum
suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumno-
rigem Haeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs
impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēqua-
nōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex
eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat,
et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et
quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās
volēbat.

[1] Cf. LII. N. **7**, Obs. **2.**

2. NOTES.

1. Relinquēbātur . . . via; for order, cf. **Erant . . . duo** XLVI. and **erat . . . ūna** LI.

2. poterant: (*a*) impf. ind. of **posse**; (*b*) for preceding **Sēquanīs invītīs**, cf. **sē invītō** LVI. N. **2**, *c*.

3. possent: (*a*) impf. subjunctive after **cum**, which is not the prep. as one might at first suppose from position of **sponte**; when this verb is reached, **sponte** proves to be an abl. of means, which is used without a prep.; cf. a similar use of the conj. **cum** before an abl. in XXI; (*b*) note that **hīs** is drawn out of its position within the **cum**-clause and becomes the first word in the sentence, because it is the word of the sentence most closely connected with what precedes.[1] What is its antec. in the preceding sentence?

4. eō dēprecātōre: (*a*) **eō** is here a substantive, not an adj.; (*b*) const. of **eō dēprecātōre**? Cf. XIX. N. **6**, XLIV. N. **6**, and **Sēquanīs invītīs** above. What parts of speech may be combined to form this const.?

5. plūrimum poterat: (*a*) cf. XXXVI. N. **3**; (*b*) note the position of the adv. and cf. that of the adv. **nōn** used twice, above. Do these advs. stand before or after the words which they modify?

6. erat; cf. the preceding **poterat** and note the difference in form and meaning; cf. also **est** I. with **potest** LI., **esse** XXI. with **posse** XXXVII., **essent** XLIII. with **possent** XXV.; cf. also **sunt** VI., **possit** LVI.

7. studēbat; used with **rēbus**, the dat. of the thing *desired;* cf. LI. N. **8**.

8. volēbat, *he was wishing:* (*a*) irreg. verb **velle**, *to wish;* cf. **vellent** LIV.; (*b*) expanded form for **quam plūrimās**? Cf. LI. N. **6**; (*c*) **volēbat** is completed by **habēre**, the obj. of which is **cīvitātēs**. What partic. agrees with **cīvitātēs**?

---

[1] The teacher will find a full discussion of the order of words and clauses in the Latin sentence, abundantly illustrated by examples, in Pott's "Hints toward Latin Prose Composition" (Macmillan). The point here noted is treated on pp. 91 and 92. On the whole subject, Thacher's Madvig, pp. 425–440 may also be consulted. Weil's "The Order of Words in the Ancient Languages compared with that of the Modern Languages" is a very valuable work. It has been translated into English by C. W. Super.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The verb **posse** is an abbreviated compound of **esse**, *to be*, and **potis**, *able;* thus **potis esse, pot-esse, potse, posse**. The pres. and impf. tense of **esse** and **posse** are as follows :

	INDICATIVE.				SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	**est**	(**sunt**)	**potest**	(**possunt**)	**sit**	**possit**
Impf.	**erat**		**poterat**		**esset**	**posset**

2. In Caesar the adv. commonly precedes the word which it modifies.

3. The first place in a sentence is often held by that word which is most closely connected in thought with the preceding sentence.

4. The verbs **persuādēre, imperāre, studēre** take the dative.

5. A noun and a noun, a noun and a pron., a noun and a partic., or a noun and an ordinary adj. may be combined to form the abl. absolute construction.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Component parts of the abl.
   absolute construction. . A. & G. **255** and *a*. H. **431** and 4.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **angustiae, -ārum** (**angustus**), *narrowness, straits, a narrow pass.*

2. **beneficium** (**bene**, *well*, and **facere**), *well-doing, a favor, a kindness.*

3. **dēprecātor** (**dēprecārī**, *to beg off, to intercede*), *an intercessor, mediator.*

4. **grātia**, *favor* either shown or received, hence, either *kindness* or *popularity*.

5. **impetrāre**, *to obtain one's request.*

6. **largītiō**, *lavish giving, bribery, liberality.*

7. **novus**, *new;* **novae rēs**, *new things, revolution.*

8. **obstringere, obstrinxit, obstrictus**, *to bind.*

9. **propter**, prep. with accus., *on account of.*

10. **relinquere, -līquit, -lictus**, *to leave.*

11. **spontis, sponte**, wanting in
other cases ; in abl., with
suā, it means *of one's own
accord, by one's self.*

12. **studēre, studuit,** partic.
wanting, *to be eager for, to
desire.*

13. **via,** *a way*.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decl. together of **eō dēprecātōre** ; (*b*) **eā cīvitāte** ; (*c*) **facilis via.** (*d*) Write the 3d sing. ind. and subjv. of **relinquēbātur**, both voices ; (*e*) the same of **impetrārent.** (*f*) Principal parts (cf. L. "Suggestions on Diagram") of **mittunt** ; (*g*) **persuādēre** ; (*h*) **habēre.**

2. (*a*) Helvētiī Dumnorige dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrant. (*b*) Sēquanī ā Dumnorige inductī eōs per suōs fīnēs īre patiuntur. (*c*) Alterā viā Helvētiī, quod aliam viam habent nūllam, exīre volunt. (*d*) Suā sponte Sēquanīs persuādēre nōn possunt ut sibi eōrum voluntāte iter facere inter montem et flūmen liceat.

3. (*a*) If their neighbors are not willing, the Helvetians intend to compel them. (*b*) They say it is necessary to go through the territory of the Sequanians, because Caesar did not allow them to go through the province. (*c*) That (woman) whom Dumnorix had married was the daughter of Orgetorix. (*d*) The way which was left was narrow. (*e*) Orgetorix and Dumnorix were friends.

4. (*a*) They sent an embassy to persuade the Sequanians. (*b*) Dumnorix, the Haeduan chief, was of an unfriendly mind toward the Romans, because he desired revolution. (*c*) Dumnorix asks that the Helvetians may cross the territory of the Sequanians.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Latin for *to marry* (said of the man), *to give in marriage* ; 2. *revolution, to favor revolution* ; 3. *to be very powerful* ; 4. *as many as possible* ; 5. *he can, he could, he may, he might.* 6. Difference between **imperāre** and **impetrāre.** 7. Two nouns plur. in form which may be sing. in sense. 8. List of verbs used thus far which are followed by the inf. without a subject. 9. Difference between the use of the dat. with **studēre** and its use with **persuādēre.** 10. *He was, he was able, he is, he can.* 11. Order of words in this Lesson ; three important points.

LESSON LIX.

1. TEXT.

Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per
fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter
sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs pro-
hibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per
agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum
fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt,
quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā.

2. NOTES.

1. patiantur: (*a*) pres. subjv. in an obj. clause of purpose; cf.
XLIV. N. **8**, *c*; (*b*) a 4th conjug. form; cf. **paterentur** (XLVIII.),
impf. subjv. 3d conjug.; also **persuādēre** but **persuāsit**, **facere** but
afficiēbantur XXVI., **cōnscīscere** but **cōnscīverit** XLI., **conveni-
ant** XLIX. but **convēnerant** LV.; (*c*) cf. **proficiscantur**, pres.
subjv. 3d conjug., XLIV.

2. utī . . . dent: (*a*) **utī** is the conj., not the inf. of the verb
meaning *to use*; (*b*) the clause is the obj. of **perficit**; (*c*) **ob-
sidēs** is the obj. of **dent**; (*d*) mode and tense of **dent**? Cf.
cōnentur LVI.

3. Sēquanī; the subj. of **dent** understood, which is drawn
forward from preceding clause; the following **Helvētiī** has the same
construction.

4. prohibeant: (*a*) pres. subjv. 2d conjug.; for form, cf. **liceat**
LII., **dent, patiantur, proficiscantur**, and LVI. Obs. **1**; (*b*) case
of the preceding **itinere**, and why? Cf. **fīnibus** XII.; (*c*) for use
of preceding **nē**, cf. XL. N. **5**.

5. renūntiātur; for use of the preceding **Caesarī**, cf. LI. N. **2**, *c*
and Obs. **6**.

6. Helvētiīs . . . animō; for construction and free translation, cf. LII. N. **5**.

7. Tolōsātium; gen. plur.; cf. same case in **Santonum,** just before. What difference in ending? For 3d decl. nouns having **i** in gen. plur., cf. inflections in XXIX., XXXVIII., and L.

8. cīvitās; the state of the Tolosates is here referred to.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Some verbs have forms of different conjugations. The most common of those already used are **facere, capere, patī, iubēre, suādēre, venīre** and their compounds. Such verbs are said to belong to the conjug. indicated by the pres. infinitive.

2. Third decl. nouns and adjs. in **-is, -e, -l, -ns, -rs,** and monosyllables in **s** preceded by a consonant usually have **-ium** in the gen. plur.; most other nouns have **-um.**

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **itaque,** *and so, therefore.*
2. **obses, obsidis,** *a hostage;* hostages were human beings given by one person or nation to another, in order to guarantee the fulfilment of an agreement; if the agreement was broken, the hostages might be killed.

3. **renūntiāre,** *to bring back word, to report*
4. **Santones, -um** (or **Santonī, -ōrum**), a people living on the western coast of Gaul; see map.
5. **Tolōsātes, -ium,** a Gallic people living in the Roman province : see map.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Helvētiī, obsidibus datīs, sēsē obstrinxērunt ut sine iniūriā fīnēs Sēquanōrum trānsīrent. (*b*) Nōn perfacile factū est ā maleficiō maximam multitūdinem cupidam bellandī prohibēre. (*c*) Cīvitās, quam Caesar nōn longē ā Tolōsātibus abesse dīxit, ā prōvinciā quadrāgintā passuum mīlia abest.

2. (*a*) He took this commission[1] upon himself, and had (**perficere**) the two states exchange (impf. subjv.) hostages. (*b*) Influenced by the desire to-roam-about,[2] the Helvetians give hostages to the Sequanians, in order that they-may-cross their territory. (*c*) On-account-of the narrowness of the way, it was necessary to draw the carts one-at-a-time. (*d*) The Sequanians allow the Helvetians to go through their territory.

3. (*a*) The mountain was-overhanging, so-that a-very-few could stop them. (*b*) They used to give (were giving) their sons and daughters as hostages (appositive). (*c*) Caesar is informed that the Helvetians are about-to-make a journey to a state of the province. (*d*) They tell Caesar that the Helvetians are trying to obtain a request from the Sequanians.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Decl. of **itinere**. 2. The best Eng. for **obsidēs utī inter sē dent perficit** ; 3. for **quae cīvitās**. 4. Different kinds of purpose clauses in this Lesson. 5. The object, in general, of giving hostages. 6. The correctness of Caesar's statement about the distance of the Santones from the Tolosates. 7. The pres. subjv. in all conjugations. 8. Third decl. nouns in this Lesson which have **i** in the gen. plural. 9. Verbs which have forms of both the 3d and 4th conjugations ; 10. of the 2d and 3d. 11. Use and translation of **nē**. 12. The Latin for *to exchange ;* 13. *to intend.*

---

[1] Cf. **rēs** in above text and in General Vocabulary.
[2] Cf. **rēgnī cupiditāte** XIX.

LESSON LX.

1. TEXT.

Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvin-
ciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī ini-
mīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīniti-
mōs habēret. Ob eās causās, eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat
T. Lābiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam māgnīs
itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et
trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs
ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per
Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

2. NOTES.

1. id; for position, cf. **hīs** LVIII. N. **3**, *b*.

2. fieret: (*a*) for voice, see **fīēbat** XXV. and General Vocab.;
(*b*) mode and tense?

3. cum; for position, cf. XXIV. N. **1**.

4. futūrum: (*a*) with **esse**, to be supplied, forms the fut. inf. act.
of **esse**; cf. XLVIII. N. **4**, Obs. **2**; (*b*) for syllable **fu-**, cf. **fu-it** XIX.

5. maximē frūmentāriīs, *most fruitful, very fruitful;* a superla-
tive degree formed by prefixing the adv. **maximē**, *most greatly, most,*
to the adj., instead of by adding **-issimus**; cf. E. G. **27**, (4).

6. ut . . . habēret: (*a*) a substantive clause, subj. of **futūrum**
(esse); cf. **ut . . . vagārentur** XXV., which is the subj. of **fīēbat**;
(*b*) the subj. is **prōvincia**, suggested by the gen. **prōvinciae** in
preceding clause; (*c*) for case of **locīs**, cf. **Germānīs** VIII. and **plēbī**
XXXIV. With what part of speech is the dat. used in all three
instances? (*d*) **patentibus** is here an ordinary adj. limiting **locīs**,
though in form a pres. partic.; nom. **patē-ns**, *lying open*, from
patēre; cf. **oriē-ns, potē-ns**. In what respect are all three alike?

7. praefēcit; followed by direct obj. **lēgātum**, and indirect
mūnītiōnī; cf. XXV. N. **7**.

8. ipse; cf. XXXV. N. **5**.

9. trēs; agreement?

10. contendit: (*a*) On reaching the end of the sentence with this word, how may we decide whether **quā** in the preceding clause is a pron. or an adv.? (*b*) for the effect of rapid succession of pres. tenses in this sentence, cf. LI. N. **9**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The nom. sing. ending of the pres. act. partic. is **-ns**. This ending is added to the pres. stem.

2. The stems of **esse** are **es-** pres., **fu-** pf., **fut-** supine.

3. A dat. is used with many adjs. as the indirect object of the quality expressed by the adjective.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The dative with adjectives . . . . . A. & G. **234.** H. **391**.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **Alpēs**, **-ium**, *the Alps.*

2. **Aquilēia**, a town in upper Italy.

3. **bellicōsus** (**bellum**), *warlike.*

4. **circum**, prep. with accus., *around*, *about.*

5. **cōnscrībere**, **-scrīpsit**, **-scrīptus**, *to write together, enroll, enlist.*

6. **ēdūcere**, **-dūxit**, **-ductus**, *to lead out.*

7. **frūmentārius** (**frūmentum**), *belonging to grain, fruitful.*

8. **hībernus** (**hiems**, *winter*), *belonging to winter;* **hīberna**, **-ōrum** (with word for *quarters*, *camp*, understood), *winter quarters.*

9. **hiemāre**, *to pass the winter, to winter.*

10. **ibi**, *there;* cf. **ubi**, *where, when.*

11. **intellegere** or **-ligere**, **-lēxit**, **-lēctus** (**inter**, *between*, and **legere**, *to choose*), *to understand, to know.*

12. **Ītalia**, *Italy.*

13. **Lābiēnus**, a Roman family name.

14. **praeficere**, **-fēcit**, **-fectus**, *to put before, to set over, to put in command of.*

15. **quīnque**, *five.*

16. **Titus**, a Roman first name, usually represented by the initial **T**.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decl. of **locīs** ; (*b*) **mūnītiōnī.** (*c*) All the ind. forms you know of **intellegēbat.** (*d*) All the subjunctive forms you know of **habēret.** (*e*) All the forms you know of **esse.** [1]

2. (*a*) Trēs legiōnēs, quās circum Aquilēiam habēbat, ex hībernīs ēductae sunt. (*b*) Novae legiōnēs in eā parte Ītaliae quae proxima Galliae est cōnscrībendae sunt. (*c*) Futūrum est cum perīculō ut prōvincia hominēs inimīcō animō fīnitimōs patentibus agrīs habeat. (*d*) Ea mūnītiō, nē Helvētiī per prōvinciam iter facerent, facta est.

3. (*a*) Caesar, having led three legions out of winter quarters, determines to enroll new (ones). (*b*) It happened that three legions were already in winter quarters near Aquileia.[2] (*c*) The soldiers of the legions which were about-to-wage war were very-brave. (*d*) Caesar did not allow the Gauls to seize the territory of the Roman people. (*e*) Caesar knows that those men will be warlike.

4. (*a*) The senate had put Caesar in command of the legions. (*b*) Caesar knows that those places which the Tolosates inhabit [3] are very fruitful. (*c*) For-several days he-was-hastening into Italy by-forced marches. (*d*) Caesar collected five legions to keep-out the Helvetians.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Latin for *arms, lieutenant, winter quarters, forced marches, fortification* ; 2. *to march, to enroll, to levy upon, to put in command of.* 3. Superlative of **magnus.** 4. Gen. sing. of **eī.** 5. Connection between derivation of **intellegere** and its meaning *to understand.* 6. The formation of pres. and fut. partics. in all conjugations. 7. The tenses in which **esse** is used as an auxiliary. 8. Three ways of saying *very.* 9. Substantive clauses in text of XIII., XX., XXI., XXXII., XXXIX. 10. The Latin for *one, two, three, five, six, nine, ten* ; 11. *third, fifth.*

---

[1] The teacher should be particular to review the principal parts of all the verbs in these Lessons.

[2] Pronounced in English Ă-qwĕ-lē′-yah.

[3] What mode in Latin ? Cf. LII. N. **7**, Obs. **2**.

LESSON LXI.

1. TEXT.

Ibi Centrōnēs et Grāiocelī et Caturigēs, locīs superiō-
ribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.
Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est cite-
riōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulte-
riōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allo-
brogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum
dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

2. NOTES.

1. **superiōribus**; for form of nom. sing. masc., cf. XLIII. N. **6**;
for the nom. sing. neut., cf. XLVII. N. **2**.

2. **complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs**: (*a*) for form of **pulsīs**, cf.
pulsum LIII.; (*b*) **pulsīs** agrees with **hīs**, with which it forms an
abl. absolute; (*c*) **proeliīs** is an abl. of means, limited by **complū-
ribus**.

3. **diē**; why abl.? Cf. XL. N. **1**.

4. **septimō**, *seventh;* tells *which one*, or the order, in a series;
hence called an ordinal; cf. the ordinals, **prīmī**, *first*, below; **tertiam**,
third, III.; note that the ordinals are of the 1st and 2d declensions.

5. **pervenit**; note that the pf. pass. partic. in the abl. absolute
hīs pulsīs, is well translated by a pf. act. partic. in agreement with
the subject of this verb; thus, *having defeated these, he arrives.* So,
too, with a similar abl. absolute in the first sentence of the lesson.
Why is not a pf. act. partic. used? Cf. LVII. N. **3**, *e*, and Obs. **2**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A numeral adj. which gives the number of anything in a series
is called an ORDINAL, and should be distinguished from the CARDINALS
which tell *how many*. The following ordinals have been met in the
text: **prīmus**, *first;* **tertius**, *third;* **septimus**, *seventh*. All ordinals
are adjs. of the 1st and 2d declensions.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **Caturigēs**, a Gallic people living among the Alps ; see map.
2. **Centrōnēs**, a Gallic people living among the Alps ; see map.
3. **citerior**, adj. in comp., (positive not found), *nearer, hither ;* **citerior Gallia**, *Gaul this side the Alps, i. e.* the Roman or eastern side ; **ulterior Gallia**, *Gaul beyond the Alps.*
4. **extrā**, prep. with accus. ; *beyond.*
5. **Grāiocelī**, an Alpine people living in Gaul ; see map.
6. **inde,** *from that place, thence ;* cf. **ibi,** *there.*
7. **Ōcelum**, a town in Cisalpine Gaul.
8. **prīmus,** *first.*
9. **Segusiāvī**, a Gallic people living just west of the Rhone ; see map.
10. **septimus,** *seventh.*
11. **superus, superior** comp., **suprēmus** or **summus** sup., *high, higher, highest ;* **superior** when used of time means *former.*
12. **Vocontiī**, a Gallic tribe living in the Roman province ; see map.

5. EXERCISES

1. (*a*) Decl. of **superiōribus** in masc. and fem. ; (*b*) in neuter. (*c*) Decl. of **septimō** in all genders. (*d*) All the infs. and partics. that you know of **pulsīs**, with meaning of each.

2. (*a*) Mīlitēs quōs Caesar cōnscrīpserat citeriōre ex prōvinciā conveniēbant. (*b*) Caturigēs itinere nostrās legiōnēs prohibēre cōnātī erant. (*c*) Caesar, multīs occīsīs, inde reliquōs pepulit. (*d*) Caesar, quod Helvētiōs frūmentāriōs agrōs trānsīre intellegēbat, ut eōs prohibēret, māgnis itineribus trāns Alpēs contendit.

3. (*a*) The last town which is in the hither province is called Ocelum.[1] (*b*) It was necessary (for) the Helvetians to buy up carts, in-order-that they-might-carry a supply of grain. (*c*) The Helvetians had at length marched across the territory of the Sequanians and were-roaming-about in the fields of the Haeduans.

---

[1] In English *Ŏ´-cĕ-lŭm*, not *Ō´-cĕ-lŭm* ; cf. E. G. **10.**

4. (*a*) For many years the Haeduans had been friends of the Romans. (*b*) When these had-been-put-to-flight by Caesar, he led his army across the Alps. (*c*) The result was (it came to pass) that the Gauls who dwelt near the mountains could not drive back the Romans. (*d*) Caesar's five legions were marching toward the west.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Adjs. irreg. in comparison found thus far. 2. Other cases of **diē**. 3. Uncertainty as to the nom. of **Ōcelō** in the mind of one who knows only this one form as an abl. singular. 4. The gens. plur. of **Centrōnēs, Grāiocelī, Caturigēs**. 5. The Latin for *there, thence, where*. 6. The difference in meaning between ordinals and cardinals. 7. Different possible translations of the abls. absolute in this Lesson. 8. The route of Caesar as described in this Lesson ; see map. 9. The Hither and Farther Provinces. 10. English derivatives from words in this Lesson.

A ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH.

Why is this picture appropriate for this Lesson ? The standard of a legion was a gold or silver eagle. Find one in the picture. Note that the standards are of different kinds and that some of the standard bearers have skins of animals on their heads. How are these soldiers carrying their personal baggage ? (Cf. the modern knapsack.) How, their helmets ? Cf. the single soldier, p. 238.

LESSON LXII.

REVIEW.

Lessons LI.–LXI.

1. TEXT.

Caesar's " Gallic War," Book I., Chapters **7, 8, 9, 10**.

Let the pupil make in writing a translation of these four Chapters as literal as is consistent with good English. Let this translation be subjected to the criticism of the teacher and the class.

Follow the directions given under " Text " in L., noting very carefully any new verb forms that have occurred.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **The 3d declension.** (*a*) Decl. and gender of **iter**, LI. Obs. **2**. (*b*) Stems in **-d**, LV. Obs. **1**. (*c*) Neuts. in **-us** with gens. in **-eris**, LVI. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **48**, *d* and **49**; H. **61**. (*d*) Nouns in **-tūdō**, LVII., Obs. **1**; A. & G. **49**; H. **60**. (*e*) Nouns having **-ium** in gen. plur., LIX. Obs. **2**. (*f*) The following 3d decl. nouns and adjs. represent large classes of nouns and adjs. in the way they form the stem from the nom. or the nom. from the stem. Note how this is done in each case.

Nominative.	*Genitive.*	*Nominative.*	*Genitive.*
lēx	**lēgis**	**tempus**	**temporis**
(**pāx**	**pācis**)	(**facilius**	**faciliōris**)
cīvitās	**cīvitātis**	**opus**	**operis**
dolor	**dolōris**	**nāvis**	**nāvis**
ō.ātiō	**ōrātiōnis**	**omne**	**omnis**
(**legiō**	**legiōnis**)	**patēns**	**patentis**
longitūdō	**longitūdinis**	(**pars**	**partis**)
flūmen	**flūminis**		

Note that the words in parentheses are much like the words immediately above them. State the exact difference in each case.

Explain the formation of the nom. from the stem (or from the gen.) when the nom. ends in -x ? in -tās ? in -or ? in -iō ? in -tūdō ? in -men ? in -us ?[1] in -is ?[2] in -e ? in -ns (or -rs) ?

(g) Note the GENDER and the ENDINGS of the following nouns. Note that all these nouns are so-called Eng. neuts.; i. e. in Eng. the corresponding words have no gender (cf. Whitney's Eng. Gram. **115**). Remember that only in such words is the Latin gender determined by the endings; cf. XIV. N. **4**, Obs. **4**; E. G. **42**.

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter,*
dol-or	cīvi-tās	omn-e
	lē-x (lē-gs)	flū-men
	pā-x (pā-cs)	tem-pus, -oris
	pa-rs	op-us, -eris
	plē-bs	(facili-us, -ŏris)
	leg-iŏ	
	ŏrā-tiŏ	
	longi-tūdŏ	

Verify from the above nouns the following rules. In Latin, nouns and adjs. in -or are masc.; those in -tās, -iŏ, -tūdŏ and in -s preceded by a consonant (except those in -ns) are fem., those in -e, -men and -us are neuter.[3]

2. Inflection of other nouns, pronouns, and adjectives.
(a) The gen. ending -īus, LI. Obs. **4**. (b) The decl. of the reflexive pron., LV. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **98**. 2, b; H. **184**. (c) Decl. and definition of ordinals, LXI. Obs. **1**.

3. Verb forms. (a) Plpf. subjv. pass. all conjugs., LI. Obs. **1**. (b) The pres. subjv. of the 2d conjug., LII. Obs. **1**. (c) Pf. inf. pass. of all conjugs., LIII. Obs. **1**. (d) The pres. subjv. in the 1st and in all conjugs., LVI. Obs. **1**. (e) The pf. act. partic., LVII. Obs.

---

[1] In what other declensions is the nom. sing. ending -us found? The gens. -ūris, -ūtis and -ūdis from the nom. -ūs are found in but few words common in Caesar.

[2] Note that in these nouns and adjs. the nom. and gen. are exactly alike.

[3] Neither f nor g is intended to cover all the nouns which occur. Very much time is often wasted in the class-room by drill upon the most uncommon classes of nouns.

2; A. & G. **290**, *d* and 1, 2; H. **550**, N. 4. (*f*) Forms of **esse**
and **posse**, LVIII. Obs. **1.** (*g*) Verbs having forms of different
conjugs., LIX. Obs. **1.** (*h*) The formation of pres. act. partic.,
LX. Obs. **1.** (*i*) Stems of **esse**, LX. Obs. **2.**

4. **Use of cases.** (*a*) The gen. of quality, LV. Obs. **3**; A. & G.
215 and *b*; H. **396**, V. and N. 1. (*b*) Dat. with **persuādēre**,
imperāre, and **studēre**, LVIII. Obs. **4.** (*c*) Dat. with verbs of
giving and *saying*, LI. Obs. **6.** (*d*) Dat. with adjs., LX. Obs. **3.**
(*e*) Preps. with abl., LII. Obs. **6**; A. & G. **152**, *b*; H. **434**. (*f*) Abl.
of quality; the usual adverbial force of the abl., LIII. Obs. **3**;
A. & G. **251**; H. **419**, II. (*g*) Abl. of agent, LIII. Obs. **4**; A.
& G. **246**; H. **415**, I. (*h*) Component parts of the abl. absolute
construction, LVIII. Obs. **5**; A. & G. **255** and *a*; H. **431** and 4.

5. **Use of verbs.** (*a*) Subjv. in the subordinate clauses of
indirect discourse, LII. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **336**, 2; H. **524**. (*b*) **Dum**
with subjv., LIV. Obs. **1**; A. & G. **328**; H. **519**, II. 2. (*c*) Purpose
expressed by the subjv. with **quō** and a comparative, LVI. Obs. **3**;
A. & G. **317**, *b*; H. **497**, II. 2.

6. **Translation.** (*a*) Ellipsis in use of **quam** with the superla-
tive, LI. Obs. **3.** (*b*) The Latin for *to inform*, LII. Obs. **3.**
(*c*) For *of* in sense of *concerning*, LII. Obs. **4.** (*d*) For *he intends*,
LII. Obs. **5.** (*e*) *Must* or *ought* in the translation of a fut. pass.
partic., LIII. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **113**, *d*; H. **234**.

7. **Order of words.** (*a*) Position of the adv., LVIII. Obs. **2.**
(*b*) Position of word most closely connected with preceding sentence,
LVIII. Obs. **3.**

3. WORD REVIEW.

Classified alphabetical list of all the new words occurring in Chaps. **7–10** of
Book I. of Caesar's "Gallic War." Let the pupil give the meaning of each word
and be prepared to decline every noun and adj. and to give the principal parts of
every verb.

VERBS.

1*st Conjugation.*

1. dēlīberāre	4. impetrāre	7. nūntiāre	9. renūntiāre
2. hiemāre	5. mātūrāre	8. putāre	10. temperāre
3. imperāre	6. negāre		

2d Conjugation.

1. licet
2. respondēre
3. studēre
4. tenēre

Irregular.

1. velle.

3d Conjugation.

1. concēdere
2. cōnscrībere
3. dēicere
4. dēsistere
5. dispōnere
6. ēdūcere
7. īnfluere
8. intellegere
9. intercēdere
10. iungere
11. mittere
12. obstringere
13. occīdere
14. ostendere
15. pellere
16. perdūcere
17. perrumpere
18. praeficere
19. relinquere
20. repellere
21. rescindere
22. revertī
23. sūmere

4th Conjugation.

1. commūnīre
2. pervenīre
3. venīre

NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.

1st Declension.

1. angustiae, *plur.*
2. Aquilēia
3. fossa
4. grātia
5. iniūria
6. Ītalia
7. memoria
8. via

2d Declension.

1. bellicōsus
2. beneficium
3. Cassius
4. castellum
5. exemplum
6. frūmentārius
7. Grāiocelī
8. hībernus
9. inimīcus
10. invītus
11. iugum
12. Lābiēnus
13. lēgātus
14. maleficium
15. minimus
16. mūrus
17. Nammēius
18. novus
19. nūllus
20. Ōcelum
21. praesidium
22. prīmus
23. Segusiāvī
24. septimus
25. spatium
26. tēlum
27. Titus
28. ūllus
29. Veruclœtius
30. Vocontiī

3d Declension.

1. Alpēs
2. altitūdō
3. Caesar
4. Caturigēs
5. Centrōnēs
6. certior
7. citerior
8. complūrēs, *pl.*
9. dēprecātor
10. facultās
11. largītiō
12. legiō
13. mīles, -itis
14. mūnītiō
15. nāvis
16. obses, -idis
17. opus, -eris
18. pēs, -edis
19. prīnceps, -ipis
20. ratis
21. Santonēs
22. sponte, *abl.*
23. superior
24. Tolōsātēs
25. ulterior
26. urbs
27. voluntās

-u *Stems.*

1. adventū, *abl.*
2. cōnātū, *abl.*
3. concursū, *abl.*
4. Īdūs, *nom. plur.*

Unclassified.

1. novem, *indecl.*
2. quid, *irreg.*
3. quīnque, *indecl.*
4. sēdecim, *indecl.*

Adverbs.	Prepositions.	Conjunctions.
1. ibi	1. circum	1. dum
2. inde	2. extrā	2. itaque
3. interdiū	3. propter	3. sī
4. intereā	4. sine	
5. noctū	5. sub	
6. nōnnumquam		
7. tamen		

4. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Write the gen. sing. and the gen. plur. of all the 3d decl. nouns and adjs. in the " Word Review." (b) Give the gender and write the gen. sing. and gen. plur. of the following new nouns: **ars, ovīle, egestās, commutātiō, nōmen, daps, similitūdō.** (c) Give the nom. sing. of the following case forms: **necis, palūdem, praetōrī, fulmine, turpitūdinem, fictiōnis, frontem, lēnitātis, lītora, latera, maria.**

2. Write in Latin. When Caesar was informed of these things, he came into Gaul and prepared to keep out the Helvetians from the Roman province. He did not allow them to make their way through this province because he thought that those by whom the Romans had formerly been sent under the yoke would not refrain from wrong-doing.

He therefore made a wall and a ditch from Lake Lemannus to the river Rhone so that the Helvetians might not be able to break through into the province. After trying to cross the river and being repulsed by the Romans and their fortifications, they determined to go out by the way which remained. They ask permission to do this and obtain their request by the influence of Dumnorix, the Haeduan, who was a friend both to the Helvetians and the Sequanians.

When it was made known to Caesar that they were about to make their way to the boundaries of the Santones, who lived toward the west and were not far from the Roman province, he hastened into Italy, and led from that place into Gaul five new legions so as to keep the Helvetians from their journey.

LESSON LXIII.

1. TEXT.

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās
cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant,
eōrumque agrōs populābantur.   Haeduī, cum sē suaque
ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mit-
tunt, rogātum auxilium : ita sē omnī tempore dē populō
Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs
nostrī agrī vastārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī,
oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.

2. NOTES.

1. possent : (*a*) When this word is reached, it will be seen that
the preceding **cum** is a conj., not a prep., and that **sē** is an accus.,
not an abl. with the prep. **cum** ;[1] cf. LVIII. N. **3** ; for the position of
cum, prep., when used with a reflexive, cf. **sēcum** XLIII. ; (*b*) the
preceding **sua** is a noun in the accus. plur. neut. meaning *their own
things* or *possessions*, not an adj. ; cf. **ea** VII., **cmnibus** XXI., and
E. G. **19** ; (*c*) What is the antec. of the preceding **iīs** ?   Why is not
sē used here ?

2. mittunt ; note the disagreement between the impf. tense in the
subordinate verb **possent** and the pres. tense here ; this is because
this pres. tense has much the force of a past ; we may say either
when they could, they sent or *when they can, they send ;* cf. **persuādet
ut occupāret** XXXIII. **cum nūntiātum esset, mātūrat** LI., and
E. G. **67**, 2.

3. rogātum, *to ask :* (*a*) a supine in **-um,** not a pf. partic. ; it
denotes purpose after **mittunt**, a verb denoting motion ; cf. **factū**

---

[1] In the first book of Caesar's Gallic War, the conj. **cum** is immediately
followed, in the order of the text, eight times by an ablative.   The lesson of this
fact for the beginner is : Be cautious, and wait for the Latin to develop its own
meaning.

XXXV.; (*b*) it is evident at this point that the preceding **cum**, which is followed by the subjv. **possent**, denotes cause as well as time; they sent for aid because they could not defend themselves, not simply at the time when they could not defend themselves. In LI. and LVIII. also, **cum** with the subjv. expresses both time and cause; cf. E. G. **69**, 9. In XXI., the force of **cum** with the subjv. seems to be almost wholly causal.

4. omnī : (*a*) **-ī** is the ending of the abl. sing., as it is in all adjs. in **-is**, **-e** ; cf. **īgnī** XXXIX. Obs. **1** ; (*b*) **omnī tempore**, literally, *at every time*, freely, *at all times*.

5. meritōs esse : (*a*) for mode and tense, cf. LIII. N. **2**. Obs. **1** ; (*b*) for stem **merit-**, cf. LVI. N. **5**, *a*.

6. exercitūs : (*a*) the gen. sing. masc. of a **-u** stem ; for four other cases of such stems, cf. XLI. N. **6** ; (*b*) the u is long because the form is contracted from the 3d decl. form **exercitu-is** ; (*c*) the nom. sing. is formed by adding **-s** to stem as in the case of **pars**, **omnis** ; the cases not mentioned in this note are like the same cases in the 3d declension.

7. nostrī : (*a*) gen. sing., limiting **exercitūs** ; (*b*) Caesar, a Roman, writing for Roman readers, uses the word **nostrī**, *our ;* to the Haeduan ambassadors the army was not *our army* but the " Roman army."

8. dēbuerint : (*a*) pf. subjv. of the 2d conjug., stem **dēbu-** ; cf. **habu-erat** XXXIII. ; tense sign **-eri-**, as in all conjugs. ; cf. **cōnscīveri-t** XLI. ; (*b*) a subjv. of result ; cf. XLVI. N. **7**, *a ;* (*c*) when this verb in a past tense is translated *ought*, the pres. inf., after it, is best represented in English by the pf. inf. ; thus, *our children ought not to have been led away.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The **u** or 4th decl. is composed of **-u** stems which have in general the suffixes of the 3d decl., but in several cases contract these suffixes with **-u** of the stem. Most of these nouns end in **-us** and are masc. They are declined as follows :

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	exercit-us	exercit-ūs
Gen.	exercit-ūs	exercit-uum
Dat.	exercit-uī	exercit-ibus
Accus.	exercit-um	exercit-ūs
Abl.	exercit-ū	exercit-ibus

2. The pres. ind. is often used in Latin narrative with the force of a past indefinite. It is then called the HISTORICAL PRESENT.

3. The supine in -**um** is sometimes used after a verb of motion to express purpose.

4. Cum denoting CAUSE or TIME and CAUSE, takes the subjunctive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The 4th decl. . . .	A. & G. **68, lacus** and N.	H. **116, frūctus** and foot-note 4.
2. The historical present	A. & G. **276,** *d.*	H. **467,** III.
3. The uses of the supine in -**um** . .	A. & G. **302.**	H. **546.**
4. **Cum** causal . . .	A. & G. **326.**	H. **517.**

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **abdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus,** *to lead away.*
2. **auxilium,** *help, aid.*
3. **cōnspectus, -ūs** (**cōnspicere,** *to see*) *sight.*
4. **dēbēre, dēbuit, dēbitus** (**dē** and **habēre,** *to have* or *keep from some one*) *to owe, to be bound ;* **dēbet,** *he ought.*
5. **dēfendere, -fendit, -fēnsus,** *to ward off, to defend.*
6. **expūgnāre** (*to fight out*), *to take by storm.*
7. **ita,** adv., *so.*
8. **līberī** (the sing., meaning *child,* not found), *children.*
9. **merērī, meritus,** *to merit, deserve, earn.*
10. **paene,** *almost.*
11. **populārī** *to lay waste.*
12. **servitūs, -ūtis,** fem., (**servus,** *a slave*) *servitude ;* for form, cf. **virtūs** X.
13. **trādūcere** or **trānsdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus,** *to lead across ;* cf. meaning of **trānsīre.**
14. **vastāre** (**vastus,** *empty*) *to make empty, to lay waste.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Agrī Haeduōrum erant fīnibus Sēquanōrum proximī.
(*b*) Haeduī, lēgātīs missīs, auxilium rogāvērunt.   (*c*) Ob eās causās
nostrīs agrīs prohibērī nōn dēbēmus.   (*d*) Cum hominēs inimīcō
animō agrōs vastent, exercitūs mittuntur.

2. (*a*) Almost in sight of a brave army, our children are-being-
carried-away into slavery.   (*b*) When the Helvetians were marching
through fruitful fields, they did not refrain from wrong.   (*c*) Since
Caesar was not very far distant, the Haeduans sent ambassadors to
him.

3. (*a*) The Helvetians ought to have crossed the territory which
was near their route (**iter**) without wrong-doing.   (*b*) The Haeduans
have deserved so well (have so deserved) at-the-hands-of (from) the
Roman people, that Caesar ought to have sent an army into their
fields.   (*c*) They had crossed their own boundaries, and were leading
their army through the fields of those whom they surpassed in valor
and in number of men.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The tense sign **-erā-**.   2. The tense sign **-eri-**.   3. The abl.
sing. of adjs. in **-is**.   4. The two supines and their uses.   5. The
mode used with **cum** causal.   6. How long we must wait before we
can decide on the meaning of **cum**.   7. Where the subj. is, in the
sentence **est**.   8. Difference between **dīcit sē rogāre** and **dīcit eum
rogāre**.   9. Two ways of saying *all things* in Latin.   10. The
conjug. and exact meaning of the Eng. verb *ought*.   11. The histori-
cal present.   12. Three uses of the ending **-ūs**.   13. Difference of
form and case between **-us** and **-ūs**.   14. Four gens. possible for the
nom. **-us**.   15. Two ways to say *they sent to ask aid*.

LESSON LXIV.

1. TEXT.

Eōdem tempore Haeduī Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōn-
sanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt,
sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim
hostium prohibēre. Item Allobroges, quī trāns Rhoda-
num vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Cae-
sarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum
nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn
exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnīs so-
ciōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

2. NOTES.

1. eōdem tempore, *at the same time:* (*a*) **eōdem** is the abl.
sing. neut. of **idem** XXXIV.; it is composed of **is, ea, id** and the
undeclined termination **-dem.** (*b*) for use of **tempore** without a
prep., cf. **diē** XL. N. **1.**

2. Ambarrī, the name of a people; in apposition with **Haeduī.**

3. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt: (*a*) for pass. form of the
expression, cf. LII. N. **1**; (*b*) for this 4th conjug. form while the
inf. is **facere,** cf. LIX. Obs. **1,** and **recipiunt** just beyond.

4. dēpopulātīs; though a dep. verb, pass. in sense as well as in
form in this instance.

5. sē . . . prohibēre: (*a*) **certiōrem faciunt** is equivalent to a
verb of saying, and is therefore followed by an inf. with subj. accus.;
(*b*) note that the abl. case with **prohibēre** is preceded by a prep. and
cf. use of **prohibēre** in XII.; (*c*) the preceding **vim** is an accus.;
cf. **vī** XLVIII.

6. recipiunt: (*a*) for meaning in connection with **sē,** see the
General Vocabulary at the end of the book; (*b*) for tense and its use
with the impf. tense of the subordinate verb **habēbant,** cf. LXIII.
N. **2.**

7. sibi . . . reliquī: (*a*) **reliquī** is a partitive gen. (cf. VI. N 3, *d*) from **reliquum**, which is here a neut. noun meaning *the rest*, it depends upon **nihil**: (*b*) for the use of the dat. **sibi** in connection with the verb **esse**, cf. the use of the dat. **Helvētiīs** in LIX.; the literal translation is *nothing of the rest is to them except the soil of the field*; free translation, *they have nothing left except the soil of the field*. Note that the dat. case here names the POSSESSOR.

8. Quibus rēbus adductus: (*a*) for translation of **quibus**, cf. X. N. **1**, *e*; (*b*) note that the abl. of means is here used immediately before the nom. case of the pf. pass. partic. which it modifies; cf. similar phrases in XIX., XXX., XXXVII., LVIII.

9. statuit: (*a*) may from its form be either pres. or pf. ind.; it is probably the pf. in this case; (*b*) for the translation of preceding **exspectandum**, cf. LIII. N. **3**, *b*; (*c*) **sibi** is a dat. used with the fut. pass. partic. with the force of the abl. of agent; cf. **ab Helvētiīs** LIII.

10. pervenīrent: (*a*) impf. subjv. of the 4th conjug.; (*b*) for explanation of mode, cf. LIV. N. **3**, *b*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The abl. of means (or agent) is very frequently found in Latin standing immediately before, and modifying, a pf. pass. partic. in the nom. case.

2. With the verb **esse** the name of the person who possesses something is often put in the dat. case. This dat. of possessor may generally be best translated as the subject of the verb *have*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The dat. of the possessor   A. & G. **231**.   H. **387**.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **Ambarrī**, a tribe living near the Haeduans; see map.
2. **cōnsanguineus**, adj. or noun (con and **sanguis**, *blood*), *akin by blood*.
3. **cōnsūmere, -sūmpsit, -sūmptus** (con, intensive, *wholly*, and **sūmere**, *to take*), *to consume, destroy*.
4. **dēmōnstrāre**, *to show*.

5. **dēpopulārī**, *to lay waste.*
6. **exspectāre**, *to wait, wait for.*
7. **fortūna**, *fortune* (either good or bad); in plur. *goods, possessions.*
8. **fuga**, *flight.*
9. **hostis**, *a stranger, an enemy ;* more frequently in the plur., *the enemy.*
10. **necessārius**, *necessary ;* as noun, *a close friend* or *near relative.*
11. **possessiō**, *a possession.*
12. **praeter**, prep. with accus., *along by, beyond, except.*
13. **solum**, *the soil, the ground.*
14. **statuere**, **statuit**, **statūtus**, *to cause to stand, to establish, to decide.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Quibus rēbus dēmōnstrātīs, Caesar in agrōs Haeduōrum contendere cōnstituit. (*b*) Multa mīlia iūmentōrum ab Helvētiīs iam cōnsūmpta erant. (*c*) Hae rēs Caesarī, prīncipī Rōmānō, cum Haeduī Rōmānīs amīcī sint, nōn concēlendae sunt. (*d*) Caesar, cum certior factus esset māgnam multitūdinem Helvētiōrum, oppidīs expūgnātīs, līberōs sociōrum abdūcere, permōtus est.

2. The Helvetians had gone out of their own boundaries and had crossed the boundaries of the Sequanians. From the country of the Sequanians they had gone into the fields of the Haeduans and were laying them waste. These (people) and their neighbors went to Caesar and asked him to drive the Helvetians from their boundaries. They said that they had been the allies of the Romans for many years, and ought not to be led into slavery by the Helvetians while (**cum**) the powerful Romans were very-near.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Peculiarity in decl. of **idem**. 2. Analysis[1] of **pervenīrent**. 3. The Latin for *he informed Caesar, Caesar was informed.* 4. Two cases which express agency. 5. The lit. meaning of the fut. pass. partic., and how the idea of necessity comes from this meaning.

[1] i. e. separation into stem, tense sign, and personal ending.

6. Three ways of expressing necessity or obligation in Latin. 7. Two ways of saying *he has* in Latin. 8. The two parts of speech possible for the form **facile**. 9. The comparison of **certior**.[1] 10. The nom. sing. and gender of **possessiōnēs**. 11. The pf. pass. partic. modified by the abl. of means. 12. The pf. pass. partic. agreeing with a noun in the abl., i. e. the abl. absolute construction; examples of 11 and 12 in this Lesson.

LESSON LXV.

1. TEXT.

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iunctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam cōpiārum partēs Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

2. NOTES.

1. incrēdibilī lēnitāte: (*a*) the abl. limited by an adj. modifies the preceding verb **īnfluit** and tells how (i. e. in what MANNER) the river flows; *with remarkable smoothness;* cf. **voluntāte** LII.; (*b*) for abl. ending -**ī**, cf. LXIII. N. **4**, *a*.

2. possit: (*a*) for form, cf. LVIII. Obs. **1**; (*b*) for construction, cf. XLVI. N. **7**; (*c*) **in utram partem fluat**; this clause is a question indirectly quoted and the subj. of **possit**; cf. E. G. **67**, *g*, *h*, and **5**; the thought of a person looking at the river would be, "**In utram partem fluit?**"

[1] Cf. XLIII. Obs. **3**.

3. trānsībant : (*a*) impf., because they were in the act of crossing ; (*b*) for position of **id**, the first word in the sentence, cf. LVIII. N. 3, *b*.

4. Caesar certior factus est ; cf. the similar expressions in LII. and LXIV., and note that the adj. **certior** always agrees with the name of the person who is informed.

5. trādūxisse : (*a*) a pf. inf. active. On what stem is it formed ? With what ending ? Cf. the pres. inf. act. **dūce-re** ; (*b*) the preceding word **flūmen** is governed by **trāns**, with which **dūcere** is here compounded.

6. profectus : (*a*) from deponent verb **proficiscī**. How, then, is it translated ? (*b*) **dē vigiliā**, just before, lit. *from* (*i. e. beginning in*) *the watch*, may be translated *during* or *in the watch*.

7. trānsierat ; from **transīre**, **-v** of the pf. stem being dropped ; cf. the impf. of the same verb in **trānsībant 3.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pf. inf. act. is formed in all conjugs. by adding **-isse** to the pf. stem.

2. The pf. of the simple verb **īre** is regularly **īvit**, but compounds of **īre** usually drop **-v** of the pf. stem.

3. After some compound verbs a second accus. is used which is the obj. of the prep. in composition.

4. The MANNER of an action is expressed by the ablative. When this abl. is limited by an adj. or a gen. no prep. is used.

5. An indirectly quoted question has its verb in the subjunctive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Two accusatives after compound verbs	A. & G. **239**, *b*.	H. **376**.
2. Abl. of manner	A. & G. **248**.	H. **419** III.
3. The question indirectly quoted	A. & G. **334**.	H. **529**, I.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **Arar** or **Araris** (**Ararim** accus., and **Ararī** abl., are found), *a river in Gaul.*
2. **castra, -ōrum** (the sing. **castrum**, *a fortress,* is not found in Caesar), *a camp.*
3. **citrā**, prep. with accus., *on this side of.*
4. **explōrātor** (**explōrāre**, *to search out*), *a spy, a scout.*
5. **incrēdibilis**, *not to be believed, incredible, remarkable.*
6. **iūdicāre**, *to judge.*
7. **lēnitās** (**lēnis**, *smooth*), *smoothness, gentleness.*
8. **linter, -tris**, fem. by exception, *a boat.*
9. **oculus**, *an eye.*
10. **quartus**, *fourth.*
11. **uter, utra, utrum**, *which (of two)?* For form, cf. XXXIV. Obs. **2** and LI. Obs. **4**.
12. **vigilia**, *watchfulness, a watch of the night;* the Romans divided the night from sunset to sunrise, whatever its length, into four equal watches.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Decline **incrēdibilis lēnitās** together. (*b*) Write all the forms that you know of **posse**. (*c*) Write all the infs., act. and pass., that you know of **trādūxisse**.

2. (*a*) Helvētiī ratēs āc lintrēs iungēbant ut flūmen trānsīrent. (*b*) Quī Caesarem certiōrem faciunt trēs partēs flūmen trānsiisse? (*c*) Rogāvit quī dē hīs rēbus certiōrem Caesarem facerent. (*d*) Caesar eō diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus erat.

3. (*a*) Caesar saw a river which was of remarkable smoothness. (*b*) Three parts of the forces had crossed the river. (*c*) The Helvetians were hastening, that Caesar might not destroy their boats. (*d*) The river flows neither toward the east nor toward the west.

4. (*a*) Caesar could not judge with his eyes in which direction the river was flowing. (*b*) They inform Caesar that the remaining fourth part is at-last being led across the river. (*c*) Caesar led to the river the three legions which he had with him.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending -**isse**. 2. The pres. stem of **trānsīre**. 3. The pf. stem of **īre**; of **trānsīre**. 4. Difference in form and mode of **fluit** and **fluat**. 5. Two kinds of abls. which are usually qualified by an adjective. 6. All the kinds of abl. learned thus far. 7. The exact literal meaning of the Latin translated *to inform*. 8. The principal clauses of indir. discourse. 9. The subordinate clauses of indir. discourse. 10. The interrogative clauses of indir. discourse. 11. The position of the word most closely related to the preceding sentence. 12. The time of the third watch.
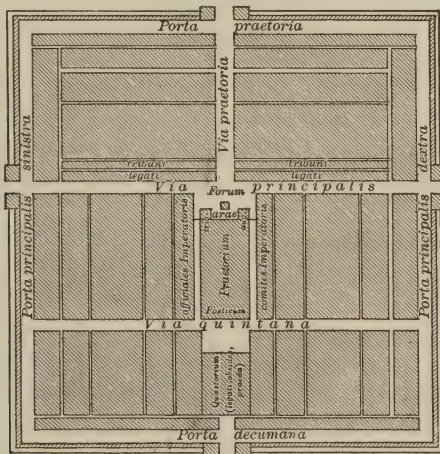
CASTRA RŌMĀNA, LOOKING FROM THE REAR.

Why is this plan appropriate with this Lesson ? What is the shape of the camp ? How many gates has it and what are their names ? What are the principal streets of the camp and how do they run ? The **praetōrium** in the centre is the head-quarters of the commander. The camp was fortified by a wall and a ditch.

LESSON LXVI.

1. TEXT.

Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam
eōrum partem concīdit: reliquī fugae sēsē mandārunt,
atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appel-
lābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in
quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō
exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōn-
sulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

2. NOTES.

1. impedītōs : pf. pass. partic. formed from the supine stem of
the 4th conjug. verb **impedīre**.

2. mandārunt : (*a*) shortened form for **mandāvērunt**; cf.
oppūgnārant XLV.; (*b*) for its subj. (the noun **reliquī**), cf. **reliquī**
LXIV. N. **7**, *a*.

3. in silvās abdidērunt; cf. XXVIII. N. **5**, *b*, Obs. 5.

4. hīc ; nom. sing. masc. of the pron. **hī** IV. What other forms
have been used?

5. exīsset ; for **exī(v)isset** : (*a*) plpf. subjv. act., sign -isse-;
cf. plpf. subjv. pass. **nūntiātum esset** LI. and the plpf. ind. act.
habu-era-t XXXIII.; (*b*) cf. instances of the use of **cum** meaning
when in XII., XLI., LI., LVIII., and note that, whenever it is used
with the impf. and plpf. tenses, it is followed by the subjv.; (*c*) for
omission of prep. with **domō**, cf. **domō** XLVI.

6. memoriā ; for construction, cf. XL. N. **1**, *a*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The plpf. subjv. act. has the sign -isse- in all conjugs., and is
formed on the pf. stem because it denotes completed action.

2. In Caesar, the conj. **cum** meaning *when*, if followed by the
impf. or plpf. tenses, commonly takes the subjunctive.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **abdere, -didit, -ditus,** *to put away, to hide.*

2. **aggredī, -gressus** (**ad** and **gradī**) *to go towards, to attack.*

3. **concīdere, -cīdit, -cīsus** (**con** intensive and **caedere,** *to cut*), *to cut to pieces, to kill.*

4. **impedīre, -pedīvit, -pedītus** (**in,** *against,* and **pēs**), *to impede, to place at a disadvantage.*

5. **inopīnāns,** adj., *unexpecting, unaware.*

6. **interficere, -fēcit, -fectus,** *to kill.*

7. **mandāre** (**manus,** *the hand,* and **dare**), *to give into one's hand, to commit.*

8. **nam,** conj., *for.*

9. **pāgus,** *district, canton.*

10. **quattuor,** indeclinable adj., *four.*

11. **silva,** *a forest.*

12. **Tigurīnus,** the name of an Helvetian district; its inhabitants are called **Tigurīnī.**

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Write all the forms you know of **impedīre**; (*b*) of **mandāre**; (*c*) of **mīserat.**

2. (*a*) Iī quī nōndum flūmen trānsierant impedītī sunt. (*b*) Cum multī concīsī essent, reliquī in silvās exiērunt. (*c*) L. Cassiō interfectō, exercitus quem Rōmānī in Galliam dūxerant sub iugum missus est.

3. (*a*) His army is very brave. (*b*) The territory of the Helvetians is divided into four districts, of which one is called Tigurinus. (*c*) Those whom the Romans did not kill, fled.

4. (*a*) The forests, into which they went, were very-near. (*b*) Lucius Cassius, who had been killed in Gaul, was not consul within the memory of Caesar. (*c*) When the Romans were attacking those who were on this side of the river, their friends were informed.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The stems of all conjugs., and how to find them.[1] 2. Likeness between the 1st and 4th conjugs. in formation of stems. 3. Difference

---

[1] Review the inflections of verbs in L.

in the formation of pf. stem in 3d and 4th conjugations. 4. Difference
between the 2d and 4th conjugs. in quantity of **i** in supine stem.
5. Difference in characteristic of 2d and 3d conjugations. 6. In-
stances from the text in which a prep. expressed in the English
translation is omitted in Latin. 7. In which the Latin uses a
different prep. from that which the English translation suggests.
8. All you know about the form **cum.** 9. All you know about plpf.
tenses.

LESSON LXVII.

1. TEXT.

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium,
quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem
populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.
Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvā-
tās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum,
L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cas-
sium, interfēcerant.

2. NOTES.[1]

1. intulerat ; for construction of preceding **populō**, cf. **īnferre**
XXV.

2 persolvit : (*a*) **ea**, the subj. of this verb, refers to **pars** in the
preceding relative clause ; *what part . . ., that* instead of the more
usual order *that part . . . which* ; (*b*) **prīnceps** is here an adj.
limiting **ea** (**pars**), and may be best translated by a clause ; thus,
that part was the first to pay the penalty, lit. *that part first paid the
penalty*, *i. e.* before the other parts, not before doing something else.

3. quā in rē ; for order, cf. XXIV. N. **1** and **hīs** LVIII. ; for
meaning, cf. **quā** X.

------

[1] The pupil should remember that many difficulties unprovided for in the Notes
are fully met in the Vocab., which must, of course, be consulted in translating the
Text.

4. interfēcerant: (a) supply this verb in the subordinate clause, **quō Cassium**, where it will have **Tigurīnī** understood for its subj. and **Cassium** for its obj.; (b) **ēius**, referring to **Caesar**, depends upon **socerī**; it is not an adj. agreeing with **socerī**; (c) appositives in this sentence? (d) antec. and const. of **quō**?

3. VOCABULARY.

1. **avus**, *grandfather.*
2. **calamitās**, *disaster, calamity.*
3. **cāsus, -ūs** (**cadere**, *to fall*), *a falling, accident, misfortune, chance.*
4. **deus**, *a god.*
5. **immortālis** (**in** negative, and **mors**), *undying, immortal.*
6. **īnsīgnis** (**in**, *upon*, and **sīgnum**, *a mark*), *marked, remarkable.*
7. **persolvere, -solvit, -solūtus**, *to loose thoroughly, to pay in full.*
8. **pūblicus**, adj., *public.*
9. **sed**, conj., *but.*
10. **sīve**, conj., (**sī** and **vel**), *or if;* **sīve . . . sīve**, *whether . . . or, either . . . or.*
11. **socer, socerī**, *father-in-law.*
12. **sōlum**, adv., *only;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*
13. **ulciscī, ultus**, *to avenge, to punish.*

4. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Decline in all genders the adjs. **īnsīgnem**; (b) **pūblicās**. (c) Decline **calamitātem**; (d) **cāsū**; (e) **ēius** in the masculine.

2. (a) Caesar fīliam Pīsōnis, cūius avus ab Helvētiīs interfectus erat, in mātrimōnium dūxerat. (b) Pars cīvitātis Helvētiae quam Caesar pepulerat Tigurīnus pāgus erat. (c) Iniūriae, quās Caesar ultus est, ā Tigurīnīs Rōmānīs illātae sunt.

3. (a) The forests, in which the rest hid themselves, were very near to the river. (b) The part which was left was cut to pieces when-taken-at-a-disadvantage (partic.). (c) The rest of the Helvetians were taken at a disadvantage because they were separated from their friends.

4. When Caesar heard what the Helvetians were doing he set out for the country of the Haeduans, and attacked the Helvetian forces while they were crossing a river called the Arar in boats which they had made. He defeated that part of the enemy which had not yet crossed the river. These were the Tigurinians who within the memory of the fathers had defeated a Roman consul and killed the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law.

5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two cases possible for the form **socerī**. 2. Force of **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**; 3. **sīve . . . sīve**; 4. **aut . . . aut**; 5. **ita . . . ut.** 6. The Latin for *daughter, son;* 7. *father, father-in-law, grandfather;* 8. *brother, kinsman (by blood).* 9. The abl. of means in this Lesson. 10. Prons. in this Lesson.

LESSON LXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciundum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī cum id, quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

2. NOTES.

1. **hōc**; for case form, cf. **hōc** XXII.

2. **reliquās cōpiās . . . cōnsequī.** What relation between these two words ? The early introduction of **reliquās cōpiās** into the sentence emphasizes *the rest of the forces* on the farther side of the river in contrast with *the Tigurinians* on this side.

3. cūrat : (*a*) **pontem** the obj. is limited by the fut. pass. partic. **faciundum** (for form, cf. LIII. N. **5**, *a*) ; lit., *he cares for a bridge to be made*, more freely, *he has a bridge built.* (*b*) What clause gives the purpose of this bridge-building ?

4. adventū commōtī ; cf. LXIV. N. **8**.

5. ipsī ; for meaning and use, cf. **ipse** XXXV. N. **5**.

6. ut . . . trānsīrent ; a noun clause (cf. E. G. **49** and **52**) in apposition with preceding **id**, which is the obj. of **cōnfēcerant ;** cf. **ut . . . cremārētur** XXXIX.

7. illum . . . ᶠēcisse : (*a*) **illum** is the accus. sing. and refers to Caesar ; cf. **illīs** XXXV. ; (*b*) for form and tense of **fēcisse**, cf. **trādūxisse** LXV. (*c*) What is the direct discourse for **illum fēcisse** ? or, in other words, what was the exact thought of the Helvetians ?

8. mittunt ; for lack of harmony between the tense of this verb and that of **intellegerent**, cf. LXIII. N. **2**.

9. Divicō ; nom. sing., not abl. ; its gen. is like that of **ōrātiō**.

10. prīnceps ; here a noun ; for const., cf. XXXIII. N. **5**, *d*, Obs. **6**.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. In order to emphasize a word, for the sake of contrast,[1] it is often placed near the beginning of the sentence ; sometimes outside of the clause with which it is grammatically connected.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **aegerrimē,** or **aegerrumē,** adv. in superlative, *with the greatest trouble.*

2. **Cassiānus,** adj., *pertaining to Cassius ;* **bellum Cassiānum,** *the war with Cassius.*

3. **commovēre, -mōvit, -mōtus,** *to move deeply.*

4. **cōnsequī, -secūtus,** *to follow up, to obtain.*

5. **cūrāre,** *to take care.*

6. **Divicō, -ōnis,** an Helvetian chieftain.

7. **dux -cis (dūcere)** *a leader.*

8. **repentīnus,** *sudden.*

9. **vīgintī,** indecl. adj., *twenty.*

[1] The teacher can hardly insist too strongly on the fact that emphasis implies contrast ; cf. E. G. **77**, 2. Require pupils to show the contrast suggested when they say that any word is emphatic.

5. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Rōmānī ponte quem Caesar fēcit trāductī sunt. (*b*) Vīgintī diēs id, quod Caesar fēcerat ūnō diē, faciēbant. (*c*) Flūmen, nē Helvētiī in fīnēs Santonum pervenīrent, Caesar exercitum trādūxit.

2. (*a*) Caesar had married Calpurnia, the daughter of Piso. (*b*) The grandfather of Lucius Piso, from whom he received his name, had been killed by the Tigurinians. (*c*) Therefore Caesar said he avenged a private wrong, when he-cut-to-pieces the Tigurinians. (*d*) Caesar has boats joined together, in order to lead his army across the river.

3. (*a*) For twenty days the Helvetians were building the bridge by which they crossed. (*b*) Divico, whom they sent to Caesar, had waged war with the Romans. (*c*) Caesar intended to punish those who had brought marked disaster upon the Romans. (*d*) Cassius led the army in which was the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Contrast in meaning of the form **quod** in this Lesson and the last. **2.** Meaning of **Cassiānus**. **3.** The ending **-isse**. **4.** The ending **-isset**. **5.** Difference in the use of **ēius** and **cūius** in this Lesson. **6.** Distinguish **lēgātus, lēgātiō,** and **legiō**. **7.** The abls. of time in this Lesson. **8.** The abl. of place. **9.** **Ut** clauses in this Lesson. **10.** The translation of the abl. absolute in this Lesson.

LESSON LXIX.

1. TEXT.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit : "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs cōnstitueris atque esse volueris; sīn bellō persequī persevērābis, reminiscere et veteris

incommodī populī Rōmānī, et prīstinae virtūtis Helvē-
tiōrum." [1]

2. NOTES.

1. faciet: (*a*) a fut. ind.; translated *shall make* after **sī**.
(*b*) What is the tense sign? Cf. the 4th conjug. pres. ind. form
conveniant XLIX.; (*c*) note that we have here the exact words of
Divico to Caesar, i. e. direct discourse.

2. ībunt . . . erunt . . . Helvētiī: (*a*) **ībunt** is the fut. ind.
of **īre**; (*b*) **erunt** is the fut. ind. of **esse**; cf. the impf. ind. **erant**
XLVI., and LVIII. Obs. **1**; (*c*) What is the case of **Helvētiī**, and
why?

3. cōnstitu-eri-s, *you shall have placed :* (*a*) as Divico is address-
ing Caesar he would not use the Lat. word **Caesar**, but the Lat. for
thou or *you*, which is sufficiently expressed by the pers. ending of the
2d pers. sing. **-s**; cf. **-t**, **-nt**; (*b*) a fut. pf. ind.; cf. E. G. **41**.
What is the tense sign? Cf. that of the plpf. in **interfēcerat** LXVI.
(*c*) for the other tenses of this same verb which are formed on the
pf. stem, cf. **cōnstituērunt** XXX., **cōnstituerant** XLII.

4. volueris: (*a*) for form, cf. **3**; (*b*) the preceding **eōs** is the
obj. of **cōnstitueris**, and suggests another **eōs**, which is the subj. of
esse; (**eōs**) **esse** is the obj. of **volueris**.

5. persevērā-bi-s, *you shall continue.* (*a*) What is the personal
ending? Cf. **3**, *a*. (*b*) What, judging from the translation, is the
tense? What is the tense sign? Cf. the impf. ind. and its sign in
hiemā-ba-nt LX. On what stem are both the impf. and fut. ind.
based? (*c*) The tense sign is changed to what in the 3d plural?
Cf. **ī-bu-nt 2**.

6. reminīscere et . . . incommodī . . . et . . . virtūtis: (*a*) a
pres. imperative sing. of a deponent verb; cf. the formation of the
pres. inf. act. and E. G. **50**; (*b*) it is used with the gen. case; cf.
the English expression *be mindful of;* (*c*) the word **et** once repeated
as here is usually translated by *both . . . and ;* cf. **aut . . . aut** XII.

---

[1] The teacher will note that in this and several succeeding Lessons the text is
simplified by changing the indirect discourse to direct. The subject of continuous
indirect discourse will be amply treated in connection with a later and easier
chapter.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. New pers. endings : **-s**, 2d pers. act. ; **-re**, 2d pers. passive.

2. New tense signs : **-bi-**, fut. 1st conjug. (**-bu-** in 3d plur.) ;**-ē-**, fut. 4th conjug. ; **-eri-**, fut. pf. all conjugations.

3. Examples of every tense in both the ind. and subjv. have now been found in Caesar. The tenses of the ind. are the pres., impf., fut., pf., plpf., and fut. pf. ; the tenses of the subjv. are the same, with the omission of the fut. and the fut. perfect.

4. The tenses for incomplete action, viz. the pres., impf., and fut., are formed upon the pres. stem ; those for complete action, the pf., plpf., and fut. pf., upon the pf. stem.

5. **Reminiscī** and some other verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* often take the gen. when we might expect the accusative.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON

1. The tenses. . . . . A. & G. **115.**   H. **197.**
2. The gen. with verbs of *remember-*
   ing and *forgetting* . . . . . A. & G. **219.**   H. **406** and II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **agere**, **ēgit**, **āctus**, *to set in motion*, *to drive*, *to do*, *to discuss.*

2. **incommodus**, *inconvenient* ; as a noun in the neut., *an inconvenience*, a mild term for *misfortune.*

3. **persequī**, **-secūtus**, *to follow up*, *to pursue.*

4. **persevērāre**, *to continue*, *to persist.*

5. **prīstinus**, *former.*

6. **reminiscī**, *to remember.*

7. **sīn** (**sī** and **nē**, *not*), *but if.*

8. **vetus**, **-eris**, *old, former ;* this adj. has the same form for all genders in the nom. sing. ; in the accus. sing. it has **veterem**, masc. and fem., **vetus**, neut. ; in the nom. and accus. plur. **veterēs**, masc. and fem., **vetera**, neuter.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Write the 3d sing. of all ind. and subjv. tenses act. and pass. of **persevērāre**, in the following order : pres., impf., fut., pf.,

plpf., fut. pf. ; or, in other words, give the SYNOPSIS of **persevērāre** in the 3d sing. act. and passive. (*b*) Write the synopsis of **agere** in the 3d plur. subjunctive active. (*c*) Write five infs. and three partics. of **cōnstituere**.

2. (*a*) Divıcō dīcit Helvētiōs prīstinae virtūtis suae reminiscī. (*b*) Sī Rōmānī volunt, pācem cum Helvētiīs facere possunt. (*c*) Helvētiī, quibuscum Caesar ēgit, arbitrābantur sē eōs quī Ītaliam incolerent virtūte praecēdere.

3. (*a*) Remember the former war, in-which the Roman consul Cassius was killed. (*b*) If peace shall be made by the Roman people, the Helvetians will go to that place where Caesar shall have commanded them to be. (*c*) It is not fitting (**oportet**) that Caesar pursue us. (*d*) By his speech Divico tried to persuade Caesar not to follow up the Helvetians.

4. (*a*) Divico discussed this matter (thing) with Caesar, in order to obtain-his-request. (*b*) The Helvetians sent Divico to discuss this matter, because they saw that Caesar was very-powerful. (*c*) When Caesar had determined[1] to cross the river, he made a bridge in one day.

7 TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The tenses of the ind. and subj. act., formed on the pres. stem. 2. The pf. stem in all conjugations. 3. The formation of the pres. indicative. 4. The tense signs of the impf., plpf., fut. pf. indicative. 5. Of the impf., pf., and plpf. subjunctive. 6. The endings of the pres. and pf. inf. act. in all conjugations. 7. The formation of the fut. act. and pf. pass. inf. in all conjugs.; cf. XLVIII. Obs. **2**, LIII. Obs. **1**. 8. The formation of the fut. act. and pf. pass. partic. in all conjugations. 9. Personal endings, act. and pass., learned thus far. 10. Comparison of the pf., plpf., and fut. pf. act. in the 3d person plural. 11. The meaning of **et** . . . **et**. 12. Decl. of **vetus**. 13. Comparison of the six Lat. tenses with the nine Eng. tenses given in E. G. **38**, **39**, **41**.

[1] For mode, tense, and tense sign, cf. **cum** . . . **exīsset** LXVI.

LESSON LXX.

1. TEXT.

"Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsierant, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut tuae māgnopere virtūtī tribueris, aut nōs dēspexeris. Nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostrīs didicimus, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contendāmus aut īnsidiīs nītāmur."

2. NOTES.

1. **adortus es**, *you have attacked :* (*a*) a deponent verb, in the 2d pers. sing. of the pf. ind.; (*b*) **es** is the 2d pers. sing. of the pres. ind. of **esse** ; cf. **est**, the 3d pers. sing. of the pres. ind., and, for the pers. ending, LXIX. N. **3**, *a*.

2. **trānsierant** ; for form, cf. **trānsierat** LXV.

3. **possent** : (*a*) for mode, cf. LXVI. N. **5** ; (*b*) the preceding **suīs** is a dat. case and a noun, *to theirs, to their (countrymen) ;* cf. **sua** LXIII.

4. **nē aut . . . tribueris, aut . . . dēspexeris**, *do not either ascribe it to your own valor especially, or despise us ;* for translation, cf. E. G. **68**, *j, k,* and **5** ; (*a*) for pers. ending, cf. LXIX. N. **3**, *a ;* (*b*) for mode and tense, cf. **dēbuerint** LXIII.; (*c*) note that **nē** is an adv., not a conj. as in XL.

5. **didicimus**, *we have learned :* (*a*) a pf. ind. act. 1st pers. plur.; (*b*) **nōs**, the subj. of **didicimus**, is here expressed as a separate word because it is emphatic.

6. **contendāmus**, *we strive :* (*a*) for verb and conjug., cf. **contendunt** XI.; (*b*) for mode and tense, cf. XLIX. N. **2**, *c ;* (*c*) for use, cf. XLVI. N. **7** ; (*d*) for person and personal ending, cf. **5** ; (*e*) the preceding **quam** means *than*.

7. **nītāmur** : (*a*) pres. subjv. of a dep. verb, same construction as **contendāmus** ; (*b*) **-mur** is the ending of the 1st pers. plur. pass. ; cf. **-mus**, the ending of 1st plur. act. ; (*c*) the clause **aut nītāmur** is

peculiar in its connection with the rest of the sentence; **quam** is to be understood after **aut**; *or than we rely on ambuscades;* freely, *or by relying*, etc. (*d*) **īnsidiīs**, just before, is the abl., which is regularly used with **nītī**.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. New personal endings: **-mus**, *we*, act.; **-mur**, *we*, pass.; cf. -t, -nt, -tur, -ntur and -s.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **adorīrī, -ortus,** *to rise against, to attack.*
2. **dēspicere, -spexit, -spectus,** *to look down upon, to despise.*
3. **discere, didicit,** *to learn.*
4. **dolus,** *craft, deceit.*
5. **ferre, tulit, lātus,** irreg., *to bear.*
6. **imprōvīsō,** adv. (in negative; **prō,** *before, fore;* **vīsus,** *seen*), *unexpectedly.*
7. **īnsidiae,** nom. plur. (**in,** *in,* and **sedēre,** *to sit*), *an ambush, treachery.*
8. **māgnopere,** adv. (**māgnō** and **opere**), *with great toil, greatly;* **magis,** comp., *more;* **maximē,** sup., *very greatly, most, especially.*
9. **māior** (comp. of **māgnus**), *greater;* **māiōrēs nātū** or simply **māiōrēs,** *those greater by birth, ancestors.*
10. **nītī, nīsus,** or **nīxus,** *to rest upon, rely upon, to strive.*
11. **nōs,** nom. or accus. plur., *we* or *us.*
12. **tuus, tua, tuum,** *thy, thine, your;* cf. **suus.**
13. **tribuere, tribuit, tribūtus,** *to assign, ascribe.*

5. EXERCISES.

(*a*) Write all four partics. of **tribueris**, with meaning of each. (*b*) Write synopsis of **didicimus** in 3d pers. sing. ind. and subjv. active.

2. (*a*) Divicō dīxit sē ā patribus suīs eam rem didicisse. (*b*) Nē ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent didiceris. (*c*) Helvētiī eōs quī dolō, nōn virtūte, contendunt dēspiciunt. (*d*) Caesar, sī Helvētiī trānsīre in prōvinciam cōnābuntur, eōs adoriētur.

3. (*a*) You will not surpass the Helvetians by your valor. (*b*) The Helvetians themselves proved that they were very-brave in-the-war with-Cassius. (*c*) In that war they defeated the Roman army and sent it under the yoke.[1] (*d*) Our fathers, when they waged war upon their neighbors, used to rely (were relying) on their own valor, not upon treachery.

4. (*a*) The Helvetians will be in that land where Caesar shall wish (shall have wished) them to be. (*b*) For twenty days the Helvetians were crossing the river which Caesar crossed in one day by the bridge which he had built. (*c*) Divico says that Caesar is ascribing it to his own valor, that (because) he has killed those whom their friends had-left-behind.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY

1. **Nōs** and **-mus**. 2. Tenses and tense signs in this Lesson. 3. Comparison of **māgnus**; of **māgnopere**. 4. Two meanings for **nē**; for **quam**; for **quod**. 5. The endings **-mus** and **-mur**. 6. The sign of each tense of the subjv. in the 3d conjugation; 7. in the 1st. 8. All the pers. endings you now know, both active and passive.

LESSON LXXI.

1. TEXT

" **Quārē nē commīseris, ut is locus, ubi cōnstiterimus, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat, aut memoriam prōdat.**"

2. NOTES.

1. **nē commīseris**, *do not cause:* (*a*) for mode, tense, tense sign, and personal ending, cf. LXX. N. **4**; (*b*) note also that it is preceded

---

[1] Literally: They sent the driven Roman army under the yoke.

by the adverb **nē** like **tribueris** LXX., and that in both these instances we have a negative command, or (as it is called) a prohibition.

2. cōnstiterimus, *we shall have taken our stand :* (*a*) for mode, tense, and tense sign, cf. **cōnstitueris** LXIX. N. **3**; (*b*) for pers. ending, cf. LXX. N. **6**, *d*. (*c*) What is the exact difference in the form and translation of this verb and those of **cōnstitueris**? (*d*) What similarity in tense sign between the fut. pf. ind. and pf. subjunctive?

3. exercitūs : (*a*) for the possible cases of this word admitted by the form, cf. LXIII. N. **6**, Obs. **1**. (*b*) What case is probable here and why? Note that the subj. nom. **locus** has already been brought in and that an abl. sing. **calamitāte** with dependent gen. **populī** is connected by **et** to **internecīōne**.

4. ut . . . capiat . . . prōdat : (*a*) for mode, tense, and conjug. of each of these verbs, cf. XLIX. N. **2**, *c ;* (*b*) for explanation of mode, cf. XLIV. N. **8**, *c ;* (*c*) **capiat** has forms of both the 3d and 4th conjugs.; cf. LIX. Obs. **1** ; (*d*) distinguish **capiat**, **prōdat** from **capiet**, **prōdet**, fut. ind.; and from **capit**, **prōdit**, **capiunt**, **prōdunt**, pres. indicative.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. We have now learned from the text the 3d pers. sing. and plur. of every tense of the ind. and subjv. act. and pass. in all conjugs. ; also the partics., gerunds, supines, and the infs., with the exception of the fut. pass. inf., which is uncommon and may be omitted in the grammar references given below for review.

2. The pupil will save himself much confusion in learning these conjugs., by fixing in mind the following facts :

(*a*) The conjugs. differ, in the main, only in their characteristics and the formation of their stems ; the method of forming the tenses, the pers. endings, the endings of partics. and infs., and most of the tense signs, are the same for all conjugations.

(*b*) The pass. differs from the act., in tenses formed from the pres. stem, only in its pers. endings, and forms all tenses of completed action by uniting the pf. pass. partic. and some tense of the verb **esse.**

(c) The most difficult tenses are the pres. ind., fut. ind., and pres. subjv., which must be carefully distinguished : the 3d conjug. in the pres. ind. changes -e of the pres. stem to -i in 3d sing. and -u in 3d plur. ; the tense sign of the fut. is -bi- in the 1st and 2d conjugs. and -ē- in the 3d and 4th ; and the sign of the pres. subjv. is -ē- in the 1st conjug., but -ā- in the 2d, 3d, and 4th. For stems of all conjugs., see L. "Verb Diagram." [1]

3. A prohibition is often expressed by the adv. **nē** with the pf. subjunctive.

4 GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Tenses formed from the pres.,
    pf., and supine stems . . A. & G. **118, 127.** H. **222,** I. II. III.
2. The four conjugs. ; ind. and
    subjv. 3d sing. and plur.
    act. and pass., and act. and
    pass. infs. and participles . A. & G. **128–132.**[2] H. **205–212.**[2]
3. The pf. subjv. in prohibitions A. & G. **269,** a, **1.** H. **484,** IV.
                                             and N. **1.**

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **committere**, **-mīsit, -missus,**
    to let go together, to commit,
    to cause that; **proelium**
    committere, *to join battle.*
2. **cōnsistere, -stitit,** *to take a*
    stand, stop; cf. **cōnstituere.**
3. **nōmen,** *a name.*

4. **internecĭō,** *destruction, exter-*
    mination.
5. **prōdere, -didit, -ditus,** *to put*
    forth, to transmit, to hand
    down, to betray.
6. **quārē** (**quā** and **rē**), *on account*
    of which thing, wherefore.

6. EXERCISES.

1. (a) Synopsis of **commīseris** in 3d sing. act. and pass. : (b) of **prōdat** in 3d plur. act. and passive. (c) Infs. and partics. of **cōnsistere** in the act. with meaning of each form.[3]

---

[1] Let the pupil now supply all forms wanting in this "Diagram."

[2] Select from these articles only what the heading of this reference calls for.

[3] Very great emphasis should be given to questions such as the three which

2. (*a*) Exercitus Caesaris est fortior quam mīlitēs quōs Cassius in Galliam dūxit. (*b*) Divicō nōn persuāsit Caesarī ut ex fīnibus Gallōrum exīret. (*c*) Calamitās populī Rōmānī locō in quō Caesar cōnsistere cōnstituit nōmen nōn dabit.

3. After the Tigurinians were defeated, Caesar made a bridge and crossed the Arar in one day. The Helvetians were greatly disturbed by this, because they were crossing the river for twenty days. They sent an embassy to Caesar, and Divico, the chief of this embassy, asked Caesar to make peace with them. He said that Caesar ought not to think the Roman valor was great because he had defeated one fourth part of the Helvetians when their friends who were on the other side of the river could not come to them. He declared that the Helvetians would fight, if Caesar attacked them, and that those who had defeated Cassius would defeat (were about-to-defeat) Caesar.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. All the tense signs of the ind. and subjunctive. 2. All the endings of infs. and partics., and the stem upon which each form is based. 3. The tenses of the pres. system; 4. the pf. system; 5. the supine system. 6. The impf. ind. and impf. subjv. of the 4th conjugation. 7. Peculiarity of the ending of the pres. inf. pass. in the 3d conjugation. 8. Similarity between the 1st and 4th conjugations. 9. Differences between the 1st and 4th conjugations. 10. Some verbs which have forms of different conjugations. 11. The pres. and fut. ind. and pres. subjv. 3d sing. of **cremāre, habēre, dūcere,** and **impedīre.** 12. The tense sign **-erī-.**

precede. The "Exercises" on forms in the Lessons of this book are intended merely as suggestive to the teacher. In subsequent Lessons he should give many others of his own framing, similar to them.

LESSON LXXII.

REVIEW.

The most important thing in this Lesson is the subject of "Verb forms." Be sure you make a thorough review of all that you have learned on this subject. Give special attention to the 3d conjugation.

Lessons LXIII.–LXXI.

1. TEXT.

Caesar's "Gallic War," Book I., Chapters **11, 12, 13**.

Follow the directions under "Text," in LXII.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Noun forms.** The -u or 4th decl. complete, LXIII. Obs. **1**; A. & G. **68**, lacus and N.; H. **116**, frūctus and foot-note 4.

2. **Verb forms.** (*a*) The pf. inf. act., LXV. Obs. **1**. (*b*) Compounds of **īre** drop **v** in pf., LXV. Obs. **2**. (*c*) Plpf. subjv. act., LXVI. Obs. **1**. (*d*) Pers. endings **-s** and **-re**, LXIX. Obs. **1**. (*e*) Tense signs **-bi-** (-bu-), **-ē-**, and **-eri-**, LXIX. Obs. **2**. (*f*) List of tenses, and tenses formed from the pres. and pf. stems, LXIX. Obs. **3, 4**; A. & G. **115**; H. **197**. (*g*) Pers. endings **-mus** and **-mur**, LXX. Obs. **1**. (*h*) Summary of verb forms learned, LXXI. Obs. **1**; A. & G. **118, 127, 128–132**; H. **222**, I., II., III., **205–212**. (*i*) Points to be noted as to conjug.: (1) Comparison of conjugations. (2) Difference between act. and pass. voices. (3) The pres. and fut. ind. and pres. subjv., LXXI. Obs. **2**.

3. **Use of cases.** (*a*) Dat. of possessor, LXIV. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **231**; H. **387**. (*b*) Second accus. after compound verbs, LXV. Obs. **3**; A. & G. **239**, *b*; H. **376**. (*c*) The abl. of manner, LXV. Obs. **4**; A. & G. **248** and Rem.; H. **419**, III. (*d*) The gen. with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, LXIX. Obs. **5**; A. & G. **219**; H. **406**, II.

4. **Use of verbs.** (*a*) The historical present, LXIII. Obs. **2** ;
A. & G. **276**, *d* ; H. **467**, III. (*b*) The supine in **-um**, LXIII.
Obs. **3** ; A. & G. **302** ; H. **546**. (*c*) Subjv. with **cum** denoting
cause, LXIII. Obs. **4** ; A. & G. **326** ; H. **517**. (*d*) The indirect
question, LXV. Obs. **5** ; A. & G. **334** ; H. **529**, I. (*e*) Subjv. with
cum, *when*, LXVI. Obs. **2**. (*f*) Pf. subjv. in prohibitions, LXXI.
Obs. **3** ; A. & G. **269**, *a*, 1 ; H. **484**, IV. and N. 1.

5. **Order of words.** (*a*) Position of abl. of means (or agent)
immediately before the pf. pass. partic., LXIV. Obs. **1**. (*b*) The first
place in a sentence often emphatic, LXVIII. Obs. **1**.

3. WORD REVIEW.

Classified alphabetical list of all the new words occurring in Chapters
11–13, of the first Book of CAESAR's "GALLIC WAR."

Let the pupil give the meaning of each word, and be prepared to decline every
noun and adj., and to give the principal parts of every verb.

VERBS.

1st Conjugation.	*2d Conjugation.*	*3d Conjugation.*	
1. cūrāre	1. commovēre	1. abdere	12. discere
2. dēmōnstrāre	2. dēbēre	2. abdūcere	13. interficere
3. dēpopulārī	3. merērī	3. agere	14. nītī
4. expūgnāre		4. aggredī	15. persequī
5. exspectāre	*4th Conjugation.*	5. committere	16. persolvere
6. iūdicāre	1. adorīrī	6. concīdere	17. prōdere
7. mandāre	2. impedīre	7. cōnsequī	18. reminīscī
8. persevērāre		8. cōnsistere	19. statuere
9. populārī	*Irregular.*	9. cōnsūmere	20. trādūcere
10. vastāre	1. ferre	10. dēfendere	(trānsdūcere)
		11. dēspicere	21. tribuere
			22. ulcīscī

NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.

1st Declension.

1. fortūna	3. īnsidiae (*plur.*)	5. vigilia
2. fuga	4. silva	

2d Declension.

1. Ambarrī (*plur.*)
2. auxilium
3. avus
4. Cassiānus
5. castra (*plur.*)
6. cōnsanguineus
7. deus
8. dolus
9. incommodus
10. līberī (*plur.*)
11. necessārius
12. oculus
13. pāgus
14. prīstinus
15. pūblicus
16. quartus
17. repentīnus
18. socer -erī
19. solum
20. Tigurīnus
21. tuus
22. uter (utrum, *accus.*)

3d Declension.

1. Arar (Araris)
2. calamitās
3. Divicō, -ōnis
4. dux, -cis
5. explōrātor
6. hostis
7. immortālis
8. incrēdibilis
9. inopīnāns
10. īnsīgnis
11. intern'eciō
12. lēnitās
13. linter, -tris
14. māior
15. nōmen
16. possessiō
17. servitūs, -ūtis
18. vetus, -eris

4th Declension.

1. cāsus
2. cōnspectus

Unclassified.

1. nōs, *irregular*
2. quattuor, *indeclinable*
3. vīgintī, *indeclinable*

ADVERBS.

1. aegerrimē (aegerrumē)
2. imprōvīsō
3. ita
4. magis
5. māgnopere
6. paene
7. quārē
8. sōlum

PREPOSITIONS.

1. citrā
2. praeter

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. nam
2. sed
3. sīn
4. sīve

LESSON LXXIII.

1. TEXT.

Hīs Caesar ita respondit: "Eō mihi minus dubitā-
tiōnis datur, quod eās rēs, quās commemorāvistis,
memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō, quō minus
meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt."

2. NOTES.

1. respondit: (*a*) for this form, cf. LIV. Vocabulary. What is
the form of the pres. ind. act. 3d sing.? (*b*) What is the antec. of
the preceding **hīs**? For the construction of **hīs**, cf. LI. N. **2**, *c*.
(*c*) Who is about to speak? To whom is he to reply?

2. datur: (*a*) the preceding **eō**, *on this account*, is explained by
the next clause; for construction of **eō**, cf. XXV. N. **1**, *b*; (*b*) the
subj. of **datur** is **minus**, a neut. comparative of the adj. in form,
but here a noun; for form, cf. XLIII. N. **6**, XLVII. N. **2**, **minima**
LVII.; (*c*) for **dubitātiōnis** depending on **minus**, cf. VI. N. **3**;
the two words together are translated *less doubt*; cf. the phrase for
two hundred and forty miles in XXVIII. and that for *ten thousand
men* in XL.

3. commemorāvistis, *you have mentioned.* (*a*) What is the
conjug. and tense of this verb? Cf. XLV. N. **1**, *c*. (*b*) Of what
person is it? What is its object?

4. teneō, *I hold.* (*a*) What, judging from the translation, is the
tense, number, and person of this verb? (*b*) For use, cf. **memoriā
tenēbat** LIII.

5. ferō, *I bear.* (*a*) What similarity of form in **teneō** and **ferō**?
What similarity in meaning? What verb ending, then, sometimes
means *I*? (*b*) **ferō** is modified by the preceding adv. **gravius**
(cf. XXV. N. **6**, Obs. **2**); literally, *I bear more heavily*, freely, *I am
more angry;* (*c*) **eō**, before the comparative **gravius**, has the same
use as **nihilō** before the comparative **minus** in XLII.; such an abl.
is called an abl. of DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

6. accidērunt : (*a*) **quō**, in the abl. neut., has the same construction with **minus** that **eō 5** has with **gravius** ; literally, *by that I bear these things more heavily, by which less they happened because of the desert of the Roman people;* very freely, *my indignation at these things is as deep as your attack upon the Roman people was unprovoked.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The 1st pers. sing. of verbs sometimes has the ending -**ō**.

2. The partitive gen. is used with superlatives, numerals, and many neuters denoting quantity. In translating it with numerals and neuters the prep. *of* should not be used.

3. The abl. is used with comparatives to show the degree of difference.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The use and translation
   of the partitive gen.   A. & G. **216**, 2 and 3.   H. **397**, 2 and 3.
2. The abl. of degree of
   difference . . . .   A. & G. **250**, Rem.   H. **423**.
                            and N.

5. VOCABULARY

1. **accidere**, -**cidit** (**ad** and **cadere**), *to fall upon, fall out, happen* (used generally of unfortunate occurrences, hence Eng. *accident*).
2. **commemorāre**, *to call to mind, to mention.*
3. **dubitātiō**, *doubt.*
4. **gravius**, adv. in comp., *more heavily* ; **gravius ferre**, *to be more annoyed* or *angry.*
5. **meritum** (**merērī**), *desert, merit.*
6. **mihi**, dat., *me.*
7. **minor**, adj. in comp., *smaller, less.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Caesar said there was no doubt[1] that the Helvetians attacked the Romans without cause. (*b*) I am more angry because

---

[1] Cf. XXXVI. Text and N. **3**.

that former disaster did not happen on account of any wrong which the Romans had done. (c) The Romans were not waging war upon the Helvetians when the Helvetians attacked them. (d) It is not easy to send the brave Helvetians under the yoke.

2. (a) If Caesar contends (shall have contended) with the Helvetians, he will defeat them. (b) I remember that a Roman army was defeated and a Roman consul killed by the Helvetians. (c) Having prepared all things for waging war, Caesar on that day discussed the matter with the Helvetians.

LESSON LXXIV.

1. TEXT.

"Quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibī cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat."

2. NOTES.

1. fuisset : (a) for form, cf. **exīsset** LXVI.; (b) for translation of the preceding **quī**, cf. **quā dē causā** X. N. **1**, e ; (c) the antec. of **quī** is **populus**, which though a collective noun is treated as a sing. in its grammatical relations, not as a plur., as the word *people* would more commonly be treated in English; (d) **cōnscius** is a predicate adj. agreeing with **quī**; its meaning is completed by the dat. **sibi** and the gen. **iniūriae**; (e) **alicūius** is an indefinite adj. (from the nom. masc. **aliquī**) and limits **iniūriae**; (f) the plpf. subjv. is used instead of plpf. ind. to imply that the Romans were NOT conscious of wrong-doing; the whole clause may be literally translated, *if the Roman people had been conscious to itself of any wrong-doing.*

2. fuit difficile cavēre : (a) for a clause constructed in exactly the same way, cf. **perfacile esse . . . potīrī** XXI. N. **7**, d ; (b) the

subjv. **fuisset**, *it would have been*, is more common in a clause like this than the ind. **fuit**, *it was*.

3. intellegēbat : (*a*) the clause in which this verb stands is in apposition with the preceding **eō**, an abl. of means ; cf. E. G. **52, 5** ; (*b*) the subjv. of **commissum** (**esse**) is understood ; it would be some such word as **aliquid**, *anything*.

4. putābat : (*a*) follows **quod** like the preceding **intellegēbat** ; cf. E. G. **53**, 1 ; (*b*) for **timendum**, cf. **concēdendum** LIII. N. **3**, *b* and Obs. **2** ; (*c*) the last part of this Lesson beginning with **sed** may be thus translated very literally, *but* (*the Roman people*) *was entrapped by this, because it knew that it* (or *anything*) *had not been committed by itself wherefore it should fear, and it did not think it was to be feared without a cause;* very freely, *but the Roman people were entrapped because of their knowledge of their own innocence, and their belief that they did not need to fear without reason.*

3. VOCABULARY.

1. **aliquī**, indef. adj., *any.*
2. **cavēre**, **cāvit**, **cautus**, *to be on one's guard, to take care, beware of.*
3. **cōnscius** (**con**, *with*, and **scīre**, *to know*), *knowing with* one's self or with others, *conscious.*
4. **dēcipere** (**dē** and **capere**), **-cēpit**, **-ceptus**, *to catch away, entrap, deceive.*
5. **timēre**, **timuit**, *to fear.*

4. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) The Romans were entrapped because they did not fear any danger. (*b*) It was easy to defeat those who were not conscious of any wrong-doing. (*c*) They were not on their guard because they thought the Helvetians would not attack them.

2. (*a*) The Romans ought not to be entrapped, if they are doing no (**nūllus** ; cf. **iter nūllum** LII.) harm. (*b*) The Romans were not often defeated by those with whom they fought. (*c*) If they were in the boundaries of men of unfriendly minds, they-were-on-their-guard.

LESSON LXXV.

1. TEXT.

"Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīviscī volō, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod, mē invītō, iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāvistis, memoriam dē-pōnere possum?"

2. NOTES.

1. quod: (*a*) an adverbial accus. (cf. E. G. **60**) frequently occurring in the phrase **quod sī**; this phrase is literally translated *as to which if*, freely, *but if, now if;* (*b*) the antec. of **quod** is the whole preceding sentence.

2. volō, *I am willing:* (*a*) for the ending -**ō**, cf. **ferō** LXXIII.; (*b*) for the form of the preceding **oblīviscī**, cf. **sequī** XXXIX. Obs. 2; (*c*) for case of **veteris contumēliae**, cf. **veteris incommodī** LXIX. Obs. 5.

3. mē invītō: (*a*) **mē** is the abl. sing. of the personal pron. of the 1st person; cf. **mihi** LXXIII. and **nōs** LXX.; (*b*) for the const. and translation of the phrase **mē invītō**, cf. **sē invītō** LVI.

4. vēxāvistis: (*a*) like the preceding **temptāvistis**, follows the conj. **quod**, which is repeated by Caesar before each object of this verb, in order to call attention to the repeated instances of wrong-doing on the part of the Helvetians; (*b*) for form, cf. **commemo-rāvistis** LXXIII.; (*c*) the preceding **Allobrogas** is a peculiar form of the accus. plur.; the word is of the 3d not the 1st decl.; cf. **Allobrogibus** XLVIII.

5. num . . . iniūriārum . . . memoriam dēpōnere possum? *Can I lay aside the memory of wrongs?* (*a*) the interrogative word is **num**, which expects a negative answer; the meaning of **num possum** may be expressed in Eng. by *I cannot, can I?* or merely by *can I?* with the appropriate tone of the voice; (*b*) -**m** in **possum** means *I*, like **ō** in **volō**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ending **-m**, as well as **-ō**, is used as a personal ending of the 1st sing. in the act. voice.

2. The interrogative particle **num** (except when used in an indirect question) stands first in its sentence and expects a negative answer.

3. When **quod** stands immediately before **sī** it is usually the rel. pron. in the adverbial accus. It may be freely translated *but* or *now*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The interrogative particles
     -ne,[1] **nōnne, num** .   . A. & G. **210**, *a* and *c*.   II. **351**, 1, N.
                                                                        1, 2, 3.

2. The use of the rel. **quod**
     as an adverbial accus. . A. & G. **240**, *b*.   H. **453**, 6.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **contumēlia**, *effrontery, insult.*
2. **dēpōnere, -posuit, -positus,** *to place aside.*
3. **num**, interrogative particle; in direct questions expects a negative answer.
4. **oblīviscī, -lītus,** *to forget;* usually takes the genitive.
5. **recēns**, *fresh, recent.*
6. **temptāre** or **tentāre (tenēre),** *to handle, to try.*
7. **vēxāre,** *to annoy, vex.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) By deceiving the Roman people (the Roman people having been deceived), the Helvetians were able to overcome the Roman army in battle. (*b*) I fear because you have already committed evil-deeds. (*c*) I ought not to fear (it is not to be feared by-me[2]), for no wrong has been done by me. (*d*) Forget that wrong which the Helvetians brought-upon the Roman people.

---

[1] For the use of this particle, cf. L. Exercises **1**.
[2] Cf. **exspectandum sibi** LXIV.

2. (*a*) The Helvetians use force,[1] in order to make a way through the province.   (*b*) Though Caesar was unwilling, the Helvetians persisted in wandering [2] through the fields of the Haeduans.   (*c*) Caesar told the Helvetians that he was more indignant, because they had attacked [3] the Romans, who were [3] not conscious of any wrong-doing.

LESSON LXXVI.

1. TEXT.

" Quod vestrā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrāminī, eōdem pertinet."

2. NOTES.

1. glōriāminī : (*a*) a 2d pers. plur. of a dep. verb in the 1st conjug.; note the pers. ending of the 2d plur. pass. and cf. **-mur**, 1st plur. pass. in **nītāmur** LXX., and also **-tur**, **-ntur** ; (*b*) the preceding **vestrā**, *your*, is used when a plur. antec. is referred to ; cf. **tuae**, *your*, LXX., which is used when a sing. antec. is referred to ; cf. also **nostrī** LXIII. and **suus**.   What part of speech are these words ?   Cf. E. G. **20**, 3.   (*c*) **victōriā** is an abl. of cause, *because of victory*. What would be a good free translation of it ?

2. admīrāminī : (*a*) for form, cf. **1** ; (*b*) for the form of **tulisse**, cf. **ferre**, Vocab. below, and LXV. N. **5** ; (*c*) the preceding **vōs** is an accus. plur., the subj. of **tulisse** ; (*d*) **tulisse** is used in an unusual sense, *you wonder that you have borne wrongs with impunity*, i. e. the guilt of them has rested upon you without doing you harm.

3. pertinet : (*a*) has the two preceding **quod** clauses as its subj.; cf. E. G. **52** ; (*b*) the two clauses form a unit ; the **-que** which connects them denotes a closer union than **et** ; for the sing. verb, cf.

---

[1] Cf. **vim facere** LVI.
[2] Cf. **persequī persevērābis** LXIX.
[3] Cf. for mode, LII. N. **7**.

V. N. **6**, *b ; (c)* the sentence may be translated, in part, *the fact that you glory and wonder tends to the same thing*, i. e. to your final punishment ; this is explained in the next Lesson.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pers. endings of the pass. voice, supplying two endings not yet used, are :

<table>
<tr><td>1st pers. *I*, **-r**</td><td>*we*, **-mur**</td></tr>
<tr><td>2d pers. *thou*, **-ris (-re)**</td><td>*you*, **-minī**</td></tr>
<tr><td>3d pers. *he, she, it*, **-tur**</td><td>*they*, **-ntur**</td></tr>
</table>

2. The possessive pronominal adjs. are :

meus, *my*, **noster, -tra, -trum**, *our*.

tuus, *your*, referring to a sing. antecedent.

vester, -tra, -trum, *your*, referring to a plur. antecedent.

suus, *his*, *her*, *its*, or *their*, according to the meaning of the subj. to which it refers.

3. The conj. **-que** connects more closely than **et.**

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The possessive pronom. adjectives A. & G. **98**, 3.   H. **185.**
2. The use of **-que** . . . . . . A. & G. **156**, *a.* H. **554**, I. 2

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **admīrārī**, *to wonder, to wonder at, to admire.*

2. **diū**, adv., *long ;* used of time, not space ; cf. **longē** LIX.

3. **ferre, tulit, lātus**, *to bear.*

4. **glōriārī**, *to boast, to glory.*

5. **impūne**, adv., *without punishment, with impunity.*

6. **īnsolenter** (in, neg., and so-lēre, *to be accustomed*), *strangely, insolently.*

7. **tam**, *so,* (used mostly befor advs. and adjs.) ; cf. **it** LXIII., used with verbs.

8. **vester, -tra, -trum**, *your* plur. ; for decl., c XXXIV. N. **2.**

9. **vōs**, nom. and accus. plur. *you ;* cf. poss. adj. **veste** and **nōs, noster.**

10. **victōria**, *victory.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Caesar says that the Helvetians are boasting of their victory. (*b*) Caesar, you are glorying in your victory. (*c*) Do not ascribe your victory to your bravery. (*d*) Our victory was great.

2. (*a*) We glory in the victory which Caesar mentions. (*b*) I wonder at the bravery of these men. (*c*) You have brought great wrongs upon the Romans. (*d*) Their boundaries extend to-the-same-place.

LESSON LXXVII.

1. TEXT.

"Cōnsuēvērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere."

2. NOTES.

1. cōnsuēvērunt : (*a*) pres. in sense, though pf. in form ; (*b*) for force of position in sentence, cf. LXVIII. N. **2**, Obs. **1** ; " you are surprised " (cf. **admīrāminī**, last Lesson), says Caesar, " at what is customary."

2. dī ; nom. plur., contracted from **deī** ; cf. **deōrum** LXVII.

3. rērum ; a gen. plur. ; for other cases, cf. **rēs** XXXIX. Obs. **4**.

4. doleant : (*a*) for form, cf. **liceat** LII. N. **9**, *b* ; cf. also LVI. Obs. **1** ; (*b*) for use of mode, cf. LVI. N. **2**, *b*, and Obs. **3**.

5. concēdere : (*a*) this word rounds out the sense ; cf. XXXIX. Obs. **5**. Of what preceding verb is this the complementary inf.? (*b*) Why should this verb take a dat. as well as an accus.? Cf. LI. N. **2**, *c* ; (*c*) **hīs** is the antec. of **quōs**, which begins the preceding clause ; with this use of the relative before the principal, or demonstrative, clause, cf. **quae pars . . . ea** LXVII. ; (*d*) degree of comparison of **secundiōrēs** and **diūturniōrem** ?

3. OBSERVATION.

1. In Lat. more frequently than in Eng., the relative clause precedes the clause which contains the antec. of the relative.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The relative clause before
   the antec. of the relative   A. & G. **201**, *c*.   H. **572**, II. and N.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **commūtātiō**[1] (**mūtāre**, *to change*), *a changing, change*.

2. **cōnsuēscere**, **-suēvit**, **-suē-tus**, *to accustom one's self;* in pf., *to have accustomed one's self, to be wont*.

3. **diūturnus**, adj. (from **diū**), *long* (in time).

4. **dolēre**, **doluit**, **dolitūrus**, *to feel pain, to grieve for*.

5. **enim**, *for;* used generally after the first word of the clause.

6. **impūnitās**, *impunity*.

7. **interdum**, adv., *sometimes, for a time*.

8. **scelus**, **-eris**, *a crime*.

9. **secundus**, *following, second, favorable* (a wind *following*, or right astern, would be a *favorable* wind).

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) We glory in our victory, because we overcame the brave Romans. (*b*) We think that, when we defeated Cassius, the victory was a-very-great (one). (*c*) The Helvetians have brought many wrongs upon the-rest-of the Gauls. (*d*) The immortal gods are wont to punish those men who glory in their crimes.

2. (*a*) The Helvetians wished to fight continually with their neighbors. (*b*) The way was so narrow that carts could be drawn (only) one-by-one. (*c*) All those countries of[2] which Caesar was informed stretch toward the north. (*d*) Against my will you were trying to make your way through our province, after annoying our allies.

---

[1] Do not forget that gender and genitives in the 3d decl. have been provided for by LXII. **2**, 1, *f* and *g*.

[2] Cf. **dē adventū** LII.

LESSON LXXVIII.

1. TEXT.

"Cum haec ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur, utī ea quae pollicēminī factūrōs intellegam, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, ego vōbiscum pācem faciam."

Dīvicō respondit: "Ita Helvētiī ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtī sunt, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint: ēius reī populus Rōmānus est testis." Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

2. NOTES.

1. sint: (*a*) for form, cf. LVIII. N. **6**, Obs. **1**; (*b*) the preceding **haec** is a nom. plur. neut., meaning *these things;* cf. meaning of **ea** VII.; (*c*) like **ea**, **haec** has the same form in the nom. and accus. plur. neut. and the nom. sing. fem.; the nom. sing. masc. is **hīc**; cf. LXVI.; the nom., accus., and abl. sing. neut., and the abl. sing. masc. are **hōc**; cf. XXII.; the gen. sing. all genders is **hūius**, like **ēius**; the dat. sing. all genders is **huic**; the accus. sing. masc. is **hunc**, fem. **hanc**; the abl. sing. fem. is **hāc**. Note that several of these irregular forms are made so only by the addition of **c**; (*d*) The other forms are perfectly regular. Decline in all genders; (*e*) note, in the examples of the use of **hīc** above quoted, that it refers to what is near the speaker or writer.

2. tamen, *yet;* when this word is reached, it will be seen that the preceding **cum** is more appropriately translated by *although* than by *when* or *since*. By what mode is **cum** followed here?

3. dabuntur: (*a*) for form, cf. **ībunt** LXIX. N. **2, 5**; (*b*) **vōbis** is the abl. plur. of **vōs** LXXVI.; (*c*) for **mihi**, cf. LXXIII.; (*d*) note that Caesar is speaking to the Helvetian legates.

4. utī . . . intellegam : (*a*) for form both of **utī** and **intellegam**, cf. **utī . . . proficiscantur** XLIV.; (*b*) for pers. ending -m, cf. **possum** LXXV.; (*c*) the subject of **factūrōs** (esse) is **vōs** understood. (*d*) Of what is **ea**, the obj. of **factūrōs**, the antec.? Cf. the use of **id** LXVIII., **iī** LXX., and note that **is, ea, id** is constantly used as the antec. of a relative.

5. intulistis : (*a*) from the irregular verb **īnferre** ; (*b*) for tense, number, and person, cf. **commemorāvistis** LXXIII. How many of the final letters are common to the two verbs? Note the difference in the formation of their pf. stems and cf. LXXI. Obs. **2**, *a ;* (*c*) for the case of **ipsīs** and **sociīs**, cf. XXV. N. **7** ; (*d*) **ipsīs** refers to **Haeduīs** ; *upon the Haeduans themselves.*

6. satisfaciētis : (*a*) a fut. of the 4th conjug.; cf. **faci-e¹-t** LXIX. What is the sign? (*b*) What pers. ending is common to this verb and to **intulistis 5** ? For other pers. endings in the act. voice, cf. **intellega-m 4**, **fer-ō** LXXIII., **cōnstitueri-s** LXIX., **contendā-mus** LXX. and -t, -nt ; (*c*) both **Haeduīs** and **Allobrogibus** are in the dat. case with this verb. Of what two words is it compounded? Literally, *you will do enough for the Allobroges,* freely, *you will satisfy the Allobroges.*

7. ego, *I :* (*a*) the gen. sing. is **meī**, the dat. **mihi** (cf. **3**, *c*), the accus. **mē**, the abl. **mē** (cf. LXXV.) ; (*b*) the nom. and accus. plur. is **nōs** LXX., the gen. **nostrum** or **nostrī**, the dat. and abl. **nōbis**, like **vōbis 3**, *b.*

8. vōbiscum ; for form, cf. **quibuscum** VIII.

9. faciam, *I will make ;* note that **-ē-¹** the sign of the fut. ind. in the 3d and 4th conjugs. is varied to **-ā-¹** in the 1st singular.

10. māiōribus ; for meaning, cf. LXX. Vocabulary.

11. cōnsuērint : (*a*) for full form **cōnsuēverint** ; (*b*) for mode, tense, and explanation of mode, cf. **dēbuerint** LXIII.; (*c*) for force of the pf. tense in this verb, cf. LXXVII. N. **1**, *a* and Vocab.; (*d*) cf. the form and meaning of the whole sentence with those of **nōs . . . nītāmur** LXX.

12. reī : (*a*) the gen. sing. of the -ē decl. noun **rēs** ; cf. **rērum**

---

¹ This letter becomes short in quantity before **nt**, and final **m** and **t**.

LXXVII., diē XL., and XXXIX. Obs. **4** ; other cases have the same endings as those of 3d decl. nouns. Write out the whole decl. and compare it with that of **omnis** ; (*b*) for gender of **ē** nouns, cf. **ea rēs** XXXIX.

13. **respōnsō** ; here from the noun **respōnsum**, *a reply*.

3. OBSERVATIONS

1. Nouns with stems in -**ē** have the endings of the 3d decl. in most of their cases, but the gen. sing. ending is -**ī**, the gen. plur. -**rum**, the **e** of the abl. sing. is long and the ending -**bus** of the dat. and abl. plur. is added directly to the stem. Nouns having -**ē** stems are of the 5th declension. They are regularly fem. and end in -**ēs**.

2. The pron. **hīc, haec, hōc** is of the 1st and 2d decl., but has the following peculiarities : (*a*) the gen. sing. is **hūius** (like **ēius**) and the dat. sing. is **huic**, like **eī** with **c** added ; (*b*) the abl. sing. is regular except that **c** is added ; in the accus. sing. masc. and fem., **c** is added and **m** before it is changed to **n** ; (*c*) the following irregular forms occur : **hīc**, nom. sing. masc. ; **hōc**, nom. and accus. sing. neut. ; **haec**, nom. sing. fem., and nom. and accus. plur. neuter.

3. The pronoun of the 1st person is thus declined :

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	**ego**, *I*	**nōs**, *we*
Gen.	**meī**, *of me*	**nostrūm, nostrī**, *of us*
Dat.	**mihi**, *me*	**nōbis**, *us*
Accus.	**mē**, *me*	**nōs**, *us*
Abl.	**mē**, *me*	**nōbis**, *us*

4. The sign of the fut. in the 3d and 4th conjugs., -**ē**-, is changed to -**ā**.[1] in the 1st pers. singular.

5. The pers. endings of the act. are :

1*st pers.*	-**ō** or **m**, *I*	-**mus**, *we*
2*d pers.*	-**s**, *thou* or *you*	-**tis**, *you*
3*d pers.*	-**t**, *he, she, it*	-**nt**, *they*

For pers. endings of the passive, cf. LXXVI. Obs. **1**.

[1] This letter becomes short in quantity before **nt**, and final **m** and **t**.

6. The pron. **hīc, haec, hōc,** refers to what is near the speaker or writer.

7. The pron. **is, ea, id** is regularly used as the antec. of relatives.

8. The conj. **cum** sometimes means *although*. It is then followed by the subjunctive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The 5th declension . . A. & G. **72, 73.**   H. **120.**
2. The decl. of **ego** . . . A. & G. **98,** 1.   H. **184.**
3. The decl. of **hīc** . . A. & G. **101.**   H. **186,** I. and
                                              foot-note 4.
4. The pers. endings . . A. & G. **116.**   H. **247.**
5. The meaning and use of
    hīc and **is** . . . . A. & G. **102,** *a* and *d*.   H. **450, 451.**

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **discēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus,**
    to go apart, to depart.
2. **ego,** *I;* cf. **mihi, mē, nōs.**
3. **īnstituere, -stituit, -stitūtus,**
    to arrange, begin, construct,
    instruct.
4. **pollicērī, -itus,** *to promise.*
5. **respōnsum,** *a thing said in*
    reply, a reply.
6. **satisfacere, -fēcit, -factūrus,**
    to do enough, to satisfy.
7. **testis,** *a witness.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) If you shall give me hostages, I will do you no harm. (*b*) But if, after annoying the allies of the Roman people, you shall lay waste their fields, I will kill the largest possible number of your army. (*c*) The Helvetians said they would not satisfy the Allobroges for the injuries which they had inflicted upon them.

2. Caesar told Divico that the Romans were defeated in the former battle, because the Helvetians attacked them without reason when they were not on guard. He said he could not forget the recent wrongs which the Helvetians had inflicted on the allies of the Romans; nevertheless if the Helvetians would give hostages to him and would satisfy the Haeduans, he would make peace with them. Divico said he would not give hostages and went away.

LESSON LXXIX.

1. TEXT.

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commi⁺tunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

2. NOTES.

1. **idem** : (*a*) for form, cf. XXXIV. N. **7**; (*b*) for position, cf. LVIII. N. **3**, *b*.

2. **ex . . . sociīs** ; **sociīs** is governed by **ex**, like **prōvinciā** and **Haeduīs**; cf. E. G. **53**, 1.

3. **habēbat** : (*a*) note that the preceding **omnī**, like all adjs. in -**is**, -**e**, ends in -**ī** in the abl. sing.; cf. XXXIX. Obs. **1**. (*b*) What is the obj. of **habēbat**? (*c*) **coāctum** agrees with **quem**; (*d*) **coāctum habēbat** is similar in meaning to the Eng. partic. with *have*, but lays more emphasis on the idea of possession and continuing to possess, thus, *he was holding after having collected;* note that, in the Eng. expression *he has held the cavalry*, the pass. partic. *held* really limits *cavalry*, the obj. of the verb *has*, just as in the case above **coāctum** limits **quem**; cf. E. G. **64**, 13.

4. **videant** : (*a*) mode, tense, and tense sign? (*b*) why subjv.? Cf. XLIX. N. **2**, LII. N. **3**; (*c*) plur., although its subj. refers to the sing. collective noun **equitātum**; for more usual agreement, cf. LXXIV. N. **1**, *c*.

5. **in** ; for position, cf. XXIV. N. **1**, *b*.

6. **faciant** : (*a*) for mode, cf. LXV. N. **2**, *c*; (*b*) cf. the forms of the text : **adficiēbantur, facere, factī sunt, perficit, faciunt,**

faciundum, **fēcisse**, **factūrum** ; cf. also forms in LIX. N. **1**, *b*, Obs. **1.** Which forms are of the 4th conjug.? On what stem are all the forms of the 4th conjug. based?

7. committunt : (*a*) Might the preceding **cupidius** agree with **agmen**, so far as its form is concerned? How do you know that it does not so agree? (*b*) it means *too eagerly* rather than *more eagerly ;* cf. XXIII. N. **3**, *a ;* (*c*) for use of **locō**, cf. XLVII. N. **6**.

8. paucī ; for form and use, cf. **perpaucī** XLVI.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The comparative is sometimes translated by *too*.

2. Capiō, *I take*, **faciō**, *I make*, **gradior**, *I go*, **morior**, *I die*, **patior**, *I suffer*, and their compounds, and some other verbs not yet found in the text, are of the 3d conjug., though having the vowels **-iō** in the pres. ind. 1st sing., like the 4th conjugation. The following forms, all based on the pres. stem, are of the 4th conjug. in both act. and pass. : the pres. ind. 1st sing. and 3d plur., the impf. and fut. ind. and pres. subjv. throughout, and the 3d plur. of the fut. imperative ; also the pres. act. and fut. pass. partics., and the gerund. All other forms drop the **i**, and are of the 3d conjugation.

3. The Lat. by combining the verb **habēre** and the pf. pass. partic. sometimes forms a verb phrase like the pf. ind. act. with *have* or *had* in English. It differs from the regular form in both Lat. and Eng. in laying more emphasis on the idea of possessing and continuing to possess.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1 Conjug. of **capere** . . . A. & G. p. **100**. H. **217**, **218**, **219**.
2. The pf. pass. partic. after
   habēre . . . . . . A. & G. **292**, *c*. H. **388**, 1, N.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **agmen** (agere), *that which is set in motion, an army on the march, a line* (of march) ; **novissimum agmen**, *the newest*, or *last line*, *the rear*.

2. **aliēnus (alius)**, *belonging to another, foreign, unfavorable.*

3. **cadere, cecidit, cāsūrus**, *to fall.*

4. **cupidē** (cf. adj. **cupidus**), *eagerly;* cf. XXV. N. 4, 6.

5. **equitātus, -ūs**, *a collection of horsemen, cavalry.*

6. **hostis**, *a stranger, an enemy;* in plur., *the enemy.*

7. **īnsequī, -secūtus**, *to follow up.*

8. **movēre, mōvit, mōtus**, *to move.*

9. **paucī** (sing. very rare), *few.*

10. **posterus (post)**, *coming after, following.*

11. **praemittere, -mīsit, -missus**, *to send before.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) Caesar had with him four thousand men. (*b*) Those men who had been collected out-of all the province he sent ahead. (*c*) Having attacked the enemy in an unfavorable place, the horsemen were defeated. (*d*) Caesar sent the cavalry to follow up the enemy.

2. (*a*) A few of the cavalry fell, since the battle had been joined in a very unfavorable place. (*b*) Caesar told Divico that, if the Helvetians would-do [1] what they had promised, he would make peace with them. (*c*) When hostages had been given, Caesar established friendship with the nearest states, and levied [2] several legions upon-them.

[1] Use the impf. subjunctive.   [2] Cf. LI.

GALLIC HORSEMAN.

Why is this picture appropriate with this Lesson? Does this horseman wear any armor? For Gallic foot-soldier, cf. p. 364. The cavalry of Caesar's army was composed wholly of Gallic allies of the Romans.

LESSON LXXX.

1. TEXT.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equiti-
bus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius
subsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō
nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō
continēbat āc satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs,
pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre.

2. NOTES.

1. **sublātī** : (*a*) pf. pass. partic., from **tollere**, means *raised* (in
spirit), *elated ;* (*b*) for meaning of **quō**, cf. X. N. **1**, *e ;* (*c*) for order
and use of **proeliō**, cf. LXIV. N. **8**, *b.*

2. **equitibus** ; for use, cf. LV. N. **5**, *b*, and foot-note.

3. **equitum** ; why not **equitium** ? Cf. LIX. N. **7**, Obs. **2**.

4. **agmine** ; though translated by *in*, an abl. of means rather than
of place ; cf. XLVI. N. **3**, *a.*

5. **nostrōs** ; for use, cf. **suīs** LXX. N. **3**, *b.*

6. **prohibēre** : (*a*) obj. of **habēbat**, which here means *he held* in
sense of *considered ;* (*b*) **satis** is an accus. in agreement with **pro-
hibēre** ; *he considered it sufficient to keep, etc. ;* (*c*) **hostem**, the obj.
of **prohibēre**, means *each one of the enemy ;* our Eng. expression, *the
enemy*, is plur. in sense and is generally represented in Lat. by the
plur. ; cf. **hostēs** LXXIX. ; (*d*) contrast **ā proeliō** and **rapīnīs** (both
in this sentence), and cf. XII. N. **3**, *c* and *d.*

3. VOCABULARY.

1. **audācius**, *more boldly.*

2. **coepit, coepisse**, *he began ;*
   lacks the pres. system.

3. **eques, equitis (equus,** *a*
   horse), *a horseman, a knight.*

4. **lacessere, lacessīvit** or
   lacessiit, lacessītus, *to
   provoke, assail.*

5. **pābulātiō (pābulārī),** *a get-
   ting of food, a foraging.*

6. **populātiō (populārī)**, *a lay-
　ing waste, ravaging.*

7. **praesentia (prae** and **esse)**,
　a being present, presence;
　in praesentiā *at present.*

8. **prōpellere, -pulit, -pulsus,**
　to drive before.

9. **quīngentī,** *five hundred.*

10. **rapīna (rapere,** *to seize***),**
　plunder.

11. **subsistere, -stitit,** *to make
　a stand, resist.*

12. **tantus,** adj., *so much, so
　great.*

4. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) The Helvetians were elated by this battle. (*b*) It is enough to keep the soldiers from battle and the enemy from foraging. (*c*) The horsemen who were-driven-forward by the Helvetians were not Romans but Gauls. (*d*) Five hundred Helvetians are not able to drive before (them) four thousand Romans.

2. Caesar followed the Helvetians and sent the cavalry, which he had collected from his allies in Gaul, to see what the enemy was doing. His cavalry was put to flight by the Helvetians, who were so elated by this victory that they began to annoy those of the Romans who were first in the line-of-march.

LESSON LXXXI.

1. TEXT.

Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre.

2. NOTES.

1. fēcērunt ; for const. of preceding **diēs**, cf. XXXIII. N. **4**, *b.*

2. prīmum ; limits what word understood?

3. interesset : (*a*) why subjv. ? (*b*) its subj. is **amplius**, which is in form a neut. comparative ; (*c*) **mīlibus** is the abl. case after the

comparative **amplius** ; **quam**, *than*, being omitted, and the abl. trans-
lated by *than* ; (*d*) **quīnīs** and **sēnīs** are distributive adjs. meaning
five and *six*, *to each* or *at a time* (cf. **singulī** XLVI.) ; used here to
show that the armies were five or six miles apart on each day.

4. **flāgitāre** : (*a*) though an inf., its subj. is the nom. **Caesar**,
and it is translated like the ind., *Caesar kept earnestly asking* or *kept
importuning* ; (*b*) for the use of its two objects, **Haeduōs**, the name
of the persons who are *asked*, and **frūmentum**, the name of the thing
asked for, cf. E. G. **59**, *c, e* and 1 ; (*c*) **essent** in the subordinate
clause is subjv., because of the idea of saying implied in **flāgitāre** ;
Caesar asked for the corn which, as he said, was promised.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Distributive adjs. tell how many are taken at a time ; cf. ordi-
nals and cardinals, LXI. Obs. **1**. Distributives are of the 1st and 2d
declensions.

2. When **quam**, *than*, is omitted with comparatives, they are
followed by the abl., which is then translated by *than*.

3. In Lat., as in Eng., two accus. may be used with some verbs of
asking and *teaching*, — one of the person, the other of the thing.

4. The inf. is sometimes, though rarely, used independently in the
animated narrative of Caesar. It then has a nom. as its subj. and is
translated like an impf. indicative. Such an inf. is called an historical
infinitive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The form and meaning of
distributives　. . . .　A. & G. **95** and *a*.　H. **174**, 2, 1).
2. The abl. after comparatives
without **quam**. . . . .　A. & G. **247**.　H. **417**.
3. Two accusatives with verbs
of *asking* and *teaching*　.　A. & G. **239**, *c*.　H. **374**.
4. The historical infinitive　. .　A. & G. **275**.　H. **536**, 1.

5. VOCABULARY

1. **amplus**, *ample, much, great ;* adv. **amplē**.
2. **circiter**, adv., *about.*
3. **cotīdiē** or **quotīdiē**, adv., *daily.*
4. **flāgitāre**, *to ask repeatedly or earnestly.*
5. **interesse**, **interfuit**, *to be between or among, to take part in ;* **interest**, *it makes a difference, it interests.*

6. **interim**, *meanwhile.*
7. **pūblicē**, *publicly, by public authority.*
8. **quīndecim** (**quīnque** and **decem**), *fifteen.*
9. **quīnī**, distributive, *five to each, five at a time.*
10. **sēnī** (**sex**), distributive, *six to each, six at a time.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) For many days the van of our army was following the rear of the enemy. (*b*) The enemy were driven six miles. (*c*) The rear of the enemy was six miles distant from the van of the Romans.

2. (*a*) The Haeduans ought to give Caesar the grain which they have promised. (*b*) Caesar asked for grain so that he might give it to his soldiers. (*c*) The Romans have deserved so well at-the-hands-of-the Haeduans that grain ought to be given to them. (Cf. LXIII.)

LESSON LXXXII.

1. TEXT

Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat : eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvēxerat, proptereā minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus

discēdere nolēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

2. NOTES.

1. ut . . . dictum est ; for **ut** with ind., cf. XLI. N. **10**.

2. frūmenta in agrīs ; note that the plur. is here used for the grain in the fields, while the harvested grain for which Caesar asks the Haeduans (cf. LXXXI.) is **frūmentum**. Why is the plur. more appropriate for the standing grain ?

3. subvēxerat ; note that **flūmine** and **nāvibus** are both necessary means in bringing up the grain.

4. poterat : (*a*) followed by the complementary inf. **ūtī** ; (*b*) const. of **frūmentō** ? Cf. XLIV. N. **5**, Obs. **1**.

5. dūcere : (*a*) for use, cf. LXXXI. N. **4**, *a*, Obs. **4** ; (*b*) **diem** is not its obj. but an accus. of time ; (*c*) **ex**, *out of*, has here the force of *after*, **diem ex diē**, *day after day ;* (*d*) **dūcere** has **Caesarem** understood as its obj., and means *to put off, to delay*.

6. cōnferrī : (*a*) pres. inf. pass. ; note the doubling of the **r** ; (*b*) cf. **differunt** IV., **efferre** (for **efferere**) XLIII., **intulerat** LXVII., **ferō** LXXIII., **tulisse** LXXVI., and **sublātī** LXXX. (which though not from **ferre**, shows the supine stem of that verb) ; note that the three stems **fere-**, **tul-**, and **lāt-** have no common base, and that final **-e** of the pres. stem is sometimes dropped.

7. dīcere : (*a*) historical inf., its subj. is **Haeduī** ; (*b*) **cōnferrī**, **comportārī**, **adesse**, infs. in indir. disc. ; subj., **frūmentum** understood.

3. OBSERVATION.

1. The verb **ferre** is irregular in having three stems which have no common base and in dropping the final **e** (or its modified form **i**) of the pres. stem in the pres. ind., impf. subjv., and pres. infinitive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjug. of **ferre** . . . . . . A. & G. **139**.   H. **292** and 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **adesse, -fuit**, *to be near, to be present, to assist.*

2. **āvertere, -vertit, -versus**, *to turn away.*

3. **comportāre**, *to carry together.*

4. **cōnferre, -tulit, collātus**, *to bring together, collect, compare;* where **con** is intensive, *to bring vigorously* or *rapidly;* **sē cōnferre**, *to betake one's self.* (In this Lesson **cōnferrī** means *is being collected* among the Haeduans; **comportārī**, *is being brought together* to Caesar.)

5. **frīgus, -oris**, *cold;* in plur. with same meaning.

6. **mātūrus**, *ripe, early.*

7. **modo**, adv., *only.*

8. **nōlle, nōluit** (**nē** and **velle**), *to be unwilling.*

9. **pābulum** (**pāscere**, *to feed, pasture*), *that which feeds, food*, especially for animals, *fodder.*

10. **pōnere, posuit, positus**, *to place.*

11. **quidem**, *indeed;* in Caesar, mostly in the phrase **nē . . . quidem** enclosing the emphatic word, thus **nē Caesar quidem**, *not even Caesar.*

12. **subvehere, -vēxit, -vectus**, *to carry from below, i. e. to carry up.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) The Haeduans did not bring the grain which they had promised. (*b*) Caesar kept-asking-for the grain, because (as he said) [1] the supply of food which he had was not large enough. (*c*) The ships which were carrying the grain were left (behind) when Caesar turned away from the river. (*d*) The cold is greater in Gaul than in Italy (**Ītālia**), because Gaul stretches toward the north.

2. (*a*) Caesar turned away from the river, in-order-to follow up the Helvetians. (*b*) The beasts-of-burden, which were drawing the wagons of the Helvetians, had consumed all the fodder. (*c*) Having used very much fodder, Caesar asked the Haeduans for the grain which they were collecting. (*d*) Caesar asked the Haeduans to bring the largest possible supply of grain.

[1] Cf. LXXXI. N. **4**, *c*.

LESSON LXXXIII.

1. TEXT.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, — in hīs Divitiacō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur ; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

2 NOTES.

1. intellēxit : (*a*) follows ubi, *when ;* cf. instances of the use of ubi in XLII., LII., LVI., LXV. What mode and tense follow ubi in all these instances ? (*b*) diūtius is the comparative of diū, with sense of *too* rather than *more ;* cf. cupidius LXXIX.; (*c*) dūcī is used in the same sense as in the preceding Lesson ; subj.? voice ?

2. oportēret : (*a*) for use, cf. oportēbat XXXIX. ; for meaning, cf. the meaning of concēdendum LIII. N. **3**, *b ;* dēbuerint LXIII. ; (*b*) quō diē ; note the repetition of the antec. with the relative, as in quibus itineribus XLVI. ; (*c*) mīlitibus ; for case, cf. LI. N. **2**, *c*.

3. Divitiacō, Liscō ; form an abl. absolute const. with convocātīs, to be supplied from what precedes.

4. praeerat ; for dat. used with it, cf. XXV. N. **7**.

5. vergobretum ; accus. in apposition with quem ; magistrātuī, just before, means the *magistracy* (office not officer), and the antec. of quem is Liscō.

6. **annuus**; adj., agreeing with **quī**, which refers to **vergobretum.**

7. **in suōs**; *into, toward, over,* his (*countrymen*). What would mean *among his* (*countrymen*)? Cf. a phrase in this Lesson and also one in XIX.

8. **graviter** : (*a*) adv., formed by substituting the ending -iter, for -is of the corresponding adj. **gravis** ; (*b*) cf. the comparative **gravius** LXXIII. For what is the comparative ending -ius substituted ?

9. **accūsat** ; the principal verb of the sentence; for position, cf. XXXIX. Obs. **5.**

10. **posset** : (*a*) for mode, cf. LXVI. N. **5** ; (*b*) the subj. is **frūmentum** to be supplied ; (*c*) for form of preceding **emī** and **sūmī**, cf. XXXIX. Obs. **2**.

11. **propinquīs hostibus** ; for const., cf. LVI. N. **2**, *c*.

12. **sublevētur** : (*a*) mode and tense ? why ? Cf. LXXXI. N. **4**, *c ;* (*b*) the subj. is **Caesar** understood.

13. **māgnā ex parte**, *out of* or *from a great part*, freely, *in a great measure, largely ;* note position of preposition.

14. **suscēperit** : (*a*) pf. subjunctive. What other tense has the same form ? Cf. LXIX. N. **3**, *b ;* (*b*) for reason of mode, cf. LXIII. N. **3**, *b*.

15. **multō gravius** ; for use of **multō**, cf. LXXIII. N. **5**, *c.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adverbs are formed from adjs. in -is by substituting for this ending, -iter, positive, -ius, comparative, and -issimē, superlative ; cf. XXV. Obs. **1. 2.**

2. The conj. **ubi** is commonly followed in Caesar by the pf. indicative.

3. Necessity or obligation may be expressed by the personal verb **dēbēre**, the impersonal verb **oportet**, or by the fut. pass. participle.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Mode and tense used after **ubi** A. & G. **324**. H. **518** and N. 1.

5 VOCABULARY.

1. **accūsāre (ad** and **causa),** *to call to account, blame, accuse.*
2. **annuus (annus),** *yearly.*
3. **convocāre,** *to call together, summon.*
4. **creāre,** *to make, to elect.*
5. **dēstituere, -stituit, -stitū-tus,** *to set away from, to abandon.*
6. **emere, ēmit, emptus,** *to buy.*
7. **īnstāre, -stitit, -stātūrus,** *to stand upon, to approach, to press upon.*
8. **Liscus,** a ruler of the Haeduans.
9. **mētīrī, mēnsus,** *to measure.*
10. **nex, necis,** *death,* especially *a violent death.*
11. **potestās (posse),** *power, lawful authority.*
12. **praeesse, -fuit,** *to be over, to command;* cf. **praefi-cere,** *to put in command.*
13. **praesertim,** *especially.*
14. **precēs,** *prayers.*
15. **propinquus,** *near;* as noun, *a relative.*
16. **querī, questus,** *to complain.*
17. **sublevāre,** *to lift up from beneath, to aid.*
18. **summus** (irreg. sup. of **su-perus),** *highest.*
19. **vergobretus,** the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduans.
20. **vīta,** *life.*

6 EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) The chief magistrate among the Haeduans is called by them vergobretus. (*b*) Caesar ought to measure out grain to-day (on this day). (*c*) Although [1] Caesar cannot buy grain or take it from the fields, yet the Haeduans do not bring together into the camp the grain which they have promised.

2. The Haeduans did not bring Caesar the grain which they had promised him. Caesar, since he had left the river on which were the ships which carried his grain and since the grain was not yet ripe in the fields, kept-asking the Haeduans for the grain. When they did not furnish it, he called together the leaders and sternly chided them because they had deserted him after he had undertaken the war at their petition.

[1] Cf. LXXVIII. N. **2.**

LESSON LXXXIV.

1. TEXT.

The passage of indir. discourse in this Lesson is changed to its direct Lat. form just below on the left of the page. On the right the indir. form is given for comparison with the direct. The words changed in passing from the original to the quoted form are underlined; on the subject of indirect discourse, review E. G. **67.**

Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit:

" Sunt nōnnūllī, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valet, quī prīvātim plūs possunt, quam ipsī magistrātūs."	esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat quī prīvātim plūs possint, quam ipsī magistrātūs.

2. NOTES.

1. prōpōnit: (*a*) its obj. is **id** understood, which is the antec. of **quod**; (*b*) **quod** is the obj. of **tacuerat**, which is here transitive.

2. esse; why the inf. here? For change from the direct form, cf. XXVII. N. **6**, Obs. **5.**

3. plūrimum valeat; for meaning, cf. **plūrimum possent** XXXVI.; for change from direct form, cf. LII. N. **7**, Obs. **2.**

4. magistrātūs: (*a*) a nom. plur.; it has the same const. as the **quī** before **quam**, *i. e.* it is the subj. of **possint** to be supplied; lit. translation from **quī**, *who can more than the magistrates themselves* (*can*); (*b*) reason for mode of **possint**? (*c*) **plūs** is the irreg. neut. comparative of **multum** and **plūrimum**.

3. VOCABULARY.

1. **anteā**, adv., *before.*
2. **dēmum**, *at last.*
3. **plūs, plūris** (neut. comp. of **multus** and **multum**), adv. or adj., *more.*

4. **prīvātim**, *privately, as private citizens.*
5. **prōpōnere, -posuit, -positus**, *to put* or *set forth, to declare.*

6. **tacēre, tacuit, tacitus,** *to
      be silent;* also sometimes
      transitive, *to be silent about,
      to pass over in silence.*

7. **tum,** adv. of time, *then.*

8. **valēre, valuit, valitūrus,** *to
      be strong* or *powerful, to
      avail.*

4. EXERCISES

1. (*a*) Caesar by his speech persuaded Liscus to declare what
some powerful men were doing. (*b*) The leader whose influence is
very great is not far away. (*c*) He says that the leader whose
influence is very great is not far away.

2. (*a*) The ruler whom the Haeduans have elected cannot bring
grain to Caesar because very powerful leaders do not aid him.
(*b*) Liscus says that the ruler whom the Haeduans have elected
cannot bring grain to Caesar because very powerful leaders do not
aid him. (*c*) Caesar says that he has been deserted by those who
asked him to undertake the war.

SARCINAE, *personal baggage.*

The rations of grain referred to in Lesson LXXXIII. were carried in packs like that repre-
sented in the picture. Besides provisions for twelve or fifteen days, each soldier carried a change
of clothing, cooking utensils, and often tools — axes, spades, etc. — for fortifying the camp
every night (cf. p. 285). The whole weighed fifty or sixty pounds. For method of carrying the
sarcinae, cf. p. 269.

LESSON LXXXV.

1. TEXT.

"Hī sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrent, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod praestāre dēbent:" "sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possumus, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia praeferimus, neque dubitāmus quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī."

Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod praestāre dēbeant: sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre non possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia praeferre, neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī.

2. NOTES

1. dēterrēre: (*a*) note that we have in this verb the principal, not a subordinate, verb of the indirect discourse ; cf. the corresponding verb of the direct discourse and XXVII. Obs. **5** ; (*b*) cf. **hōs** of the indir. disc. with **hī** of the direct and explain the difference.

2. cōnferant: (*a*) for const., cf. XL. N. **5**, and note that the same mode is required in both direct and indir. disc. ; (*b*) for the use of the plur., cf. LXXIX. N. **4**, *c*.

3. dēbeant; for form, and for use of mode, cf. **valeat** LXXXIV.

4. possint: (*a*) for form, cf. **possit** LVI. ; (*b*) for reason of mode, cf. **dēbeant 3** ; (*c*) the direct form **possumus** is a pres. ind. ; for its ending -**mus**, cf. LXX. N. **5**.

5. praeferre: (*a*) for form, cf. LXXXII. N. **6**, Obs. **1** ; (*b*) the subj. is **sē**, understood, referring to **nōnnūllōs**, in last Lesson, *i. e.* to the influential Helvetian chiefs who were unfriendly to the Romans ;

(c) these chiefs say to the multitude, *if we cannot any longer hold the chief place of Gaul, we choose the rule of the Gauls* (*i. e.* to be ruled by the Gauls) *rather than the rule of the Romans.*

6. superāverint: (*a*) a pf. subjv. in a subordinate clause of indir. disc. after the present tense, **prōpōnit.** What tense of the subjv. would have been used after a past tense? Cf. E. G. **67,** 2; (*b*) changed from a fut. pf. ind. in dir. disc., where, however, its form was the same; cf. LXXI. N. **2**; (*c*) conjug. and analysis of form?

7. sint ēreptūrī: (*a*) **sint** is in the subjv. after **quīn** in both the dir. and indir. discourse. What mode follows **quīn** in XXXVI. and XLI.? Note that in all of these three instances the clauses on which the **quīn** clause depends contain a negative, and that two of these clauses express *doubt;* (*b*) **ūnā** before **cum** is an adv. meaning *together;* cf. **ūnā cum** XLIV.; (*c*) **Haeduīs** is here a dat. (not abl.) of separation with **ēreptūrī**; (*d*) **ēreptūrī** is from **ēripere** (cf. **ēripuit** XL.), a verb in **-iō** of the 3d conjug.; what partic.? how different in form and in meaning from **ēreptī**? Cf. XLVIII. N. **4,** Obs. **1.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Since the subjv. has no fut. nor fut. pf. tense, subordinate verbs in the fut. or fut. pf. ind. cannot be changed to the same tense of the subjunctive. Verbs in the fut. pf. are changed to the pf. or plpf. subjunctive.

2. The conj. **quīn,** *but that, that, that not,* is followed by the subjv. like **ut.** It is used after negative expressions, especially those of *doubting* and *hindering.*

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The fut. pf. in subordinate
   clauses of indir. discourse . . A. & G. **286,**   H. **525,** 2.
                                   Rem.

2. The use of **quīn** with the sub-
   junctive . . . . A. & G. **332,** *g*   H. **501,** II. **2**;
                             and Rem.   **504.**

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **dēterrēre**, regular, *to frighten away from, to deter.*
2. **dubitāre**, *to doubt, to hesitate.*
3. **improbus**, *beyond* or *below the proper standard, base, excessive, violent, wicked.*
4. **lībertās**, *freedom, liberty.*
5. **praeferre**, -tulit, -lātus, *to bear before, to prefer, to choose.*
6. **sēditiōsus**, *full of discord, seditious.*
7. **superāre**, *to overcome, surpass.*

6. EXERCISES

1. (*a*) Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was more powerful than Liscus himself. (*b*) When Caesar ordered grain to be brought together, some did not do what he ordered. (*c*) Some were persuading the multitude not to bring grain to Caesar.

2. (*a*) The multitude, (because) influenced by the violent talk of the chiefs who desired revolution, did not bring the grain to the camp. (*b*) The common people ought to furnish the grain which they have promised. (*c*) All prefer the rule of their own (countrymen) to (than) the rule of strangers (**aliēnus**, as noun).

ROMAN GLADIUS.

Note the reference in the text above to the conquering power of the Romans. With the **gladius** the Romans conquered the world. Cf. it with the Gallic swords, p. 155, and the pictures under the word "sword" in Webster's "International Dictionary." Read carefully what Dr. O. W. Holmes says about our American nation : —

"We are the Romans of the modern world, — the great assimilating people. Conflicts and conquests are, of course, necessary accidents with us as with our prototypes. And so we come to their style of weapon. Our army sword is the short, stiff, pointed **gladius** of the Romans; and the American bowie-knife is the same tool, modified to meet the daily wants of civil society. I announce . . . an axiom . . . : —

The race that shortens its weapons lengthens its boundaries."

Autocrat of the Breakfast Table.

LESSON LXXXVI.

1. TEXT.

" Ab eīsdem <u>tua</u> cōnsilia | Ab eīsdem <u>nostra</u> cōnsilia
quaeque in castrīs <u>geruntur</u> | quaeque in castrīs <u>gerantur</u>
hostibus <u>ēnūntiantur</u> : hī ā | hostibus <u>ēnūntiārī</u> : hōs ā
<u>mē</u> coërcērī nōn <u>possunt</u> : | <u>sē</u> coërcērī nōn <u>posse</u> :
quīn etiam, quod necessā- | quīn etiam, quod necessā-
riam rem coāctus <u>tibi</u> | riam rem coāctus <u>Caesarī</u>
<u>ēnūntiāvī</u>, intellegō ——, | <u>ēnūntiārit</u>, <u>intellegere sēsē</u>,
quantō id cum perīculō | quantō id cum perīculō
<u>fēcerim</u>, et ob eam causam, | <u>fēcerit</u>, et ob eam causam,
quam diū <u>potuī, tacuī</u>." | quam diū <u>potuerit, tacuisse</u>.

2. NOTES.

1. ēnūntiārī : (*a*) the subjs. are **cōnsilia**, and **ea**, the omitted antecedent of **quae** ; (*b*) for the preceding **tua**, of the direct form, cf. **tuae** LXX. ; cf. also LXXVI. N. **1**, *b*, Obs. **2**, and remember that Liscus is addressing one man, Caesar ; Caesar, in reporting the interview, uses **nostra**, *our*, because he is writing a book to be read by the Romans, of whom he himself was one ; (*c*) **gerantur** means *are being done*. Why is a subjv. used here ? Cf. the direct form.

2. ēnūntiārit : (*a*) used for the full form **ēnūntiāverit** ; cf. XLV. N. **1**, *a* ; (*b*) why subjv. ? Cf. the direct form. (*c*) What partic. agrees with its subj. ? (*d*) The whole clause introduced by the conj. **quod** is an adv. accus. (cf. E. G. **52** and **60**), and may be translated *as to the fact that he has made known, etc.* ; (*e*) the direct form **ēnūntiāvī** is the 1st pers. sing. of a pf. ind. active.

3. intellegere sēsē : (*a*) note that the subject of **intellegere**, though a pron., is expressed by the separate word **sēsē** since the inf. does not have a personal ending. Why is it unnecessary to express the subject separately when the direct form **intellegō** is used ?

(*b*) introduced by **quīn**, which means *nay more, in fact,* not *that* or *but that,* which is its meaning when followed by the subjunctive.

4. fēcerit : (*a*) By what interrogative word is this verb introduced and what does this word limit ? (*b*) for mode, cf. LXV. N. **2**, *c ;* (*c*) its object **id** has the **quod** clause for its antecedent.

5. quam diū, *as long as.*

6. tacuisse : (*a*) for ending, cf. **trādūxisse** LXV.; (*b*) for the ending of the direct form **tacuī**, cf. **ēnūntiāvī 2**, *e ;* (*c*) for the other endings of this tense, cf. XL. N. **3**, **vexāv-istis** LXXV., **didic-imus** LXX.; the 2d pers. sing. is the same as the 2d pers. plur. with the omission of the final -**s**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The endings of the pf. ind. act. are as follows in all conjugs. : —

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1st pers.	-ī	-imus
2d pers.	-istī	-istis
3d pers.	-it	-ērunt

2. Since the inf. has no personal endings, its subject must regularly be expressed by a separate word.

4 VOCABULARY.

1. **coërcēre, coërcuit, coërci-tus,** *to hold on all sides, restrain, coerce.*

2. **quantus,** adj., (**quam,** *how*), *how great, as much as ;* translated *as* after **tantus.**

5. EXERCISE.

Liscus, the chief magistrate of the Haeduans, said that some of the Haeduans who had great power among the common people and were unfriendly to the Romans persuaded the people who had the grain not to bring it to Caesar, because (as they said) the Romans were about-to-snatch-away their liberty. "These men are reporting your plans to the enemy, and I cannot restrain them."

LESSON LXXXVII.

REVIEW.

Lessons LXXIII.–LXXXVI.

1. TEXT.

Caesar's "Gallic War," Book I., Chapters **14–17**.

Follow the directions under "Text" in LXII.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON

1. Noun, pronominal and adjective forms. (*a*) The possessive pronominal adjectives, LXXVI. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **98**, 3; H. **185**. (*b*) The **ē** or 5th decl., LXXVIII. Obs. **1**; A. & G. **72, 73**; H. **120**. (*c*) The decl. of **hīc, haec, hōc**, LXXVIII. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **101**; H. **186**, II. and foot note 4. (*d*) The decl. of **ego**, LXXVIII. Obs. **3**; A. & G. **98**, 1; H. **184**. (*e*) The form and meaning of distributives, LXXXI. Obs. **1**; A. & G. **95** and *a;* H. **174**, 2, 1.

2. Verb forms. (*a*) The endings **-ō** and **-m** in the 1st pers. sing., LXXIII. Obs. **1**; LXXV. Obs. **1**. (*b*) The personal endings of the passive, LXXVI. Obs. **1**. (*c*) The sign of the fut. in the 3d and 4th conjugs., LXXVIII. Obs. **4**. (*d*) Personal endings, act. and pass., LXXVIII. Obs. **5**; A. & G. **116**; H. **247**. (*e*) Verbs in **-iō** of the 3d conjug., LXXIX. Obs. **2**; A. & G. p. 100; H. **217– 219**. (*f*) Conjug. of **ferre**, LXXXII. Obs. **1**; A. & G. **139**; H. **292** and 1. (*g*) The endings of the pf. ind. act., LXXXVI. Obs. **1**.

3. The use of cases. (*a*) The use of the partitive genitive, LXXIII. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **216**, 2 and 3; H. **397**, 2 and 3. (*b*) Of the abl. of measure of difference with comparatives, LXXIII. Obs. **3**; A. & G. **250**, Rem. and N.; H. **423**. (*c*) Of the adverbial accus. **quod** before **sī**, LXXV. Obs. **3**; A. & G. **240**, *b;* H. **453**, 6. (*d*) Of the abl. with comparatives without **quam**, LXXXI. Obs. **2**; A. & G. **247**; H. **417**. (*e*) Of two accusatives with verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, LXXXI. Obs. **3**; A & G. **239**, *c*, H. **374**.

4. The use of verbs. (*a*) The use of the subjv. with **cum**, *although*, LXXVIII. Obs. **8**. (*b*) Of the pf. pass. partic. with

habēre, LXXIX. Obs. **3** ; A. & G. **292**, *c* ; H. **388**, 1, N.   (*c*) The historical inf. LXXXI. Obs. **4** ; A. & G. **275** ; H. **536**, 1.   (*d*) Mode and tense used after **ubi**, LXXXIII. Obs. **2** ; A. & G. **324** ; H. **518** and N. 1.   (*e*) Different ways of expressing necessity or obligation, LXXXIII. Obs. **3**.   (*f*) The fut. and fut. pf. in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse, LXXXV. Obs. **1** ; A. & G. **286**, Rem. ; H. **525**, 2.   (*g*) Use of the subjv. with **quīn** LXXXV. Obs. **2** ; A. & G. **332**, *g* and Rem. ; H. **501**, II. 2, **504**.

5. **The use of pronouns, adverbs, and conjunctions.** (*a*) The use of **num**, LXXV. Obs. **2** ; A. & G. **210**, *a* and *c* ; H. **351**, 1.   (*b*) The use of -**que**, LXXVI. Obs. **3** ; A. & G. **156**, *a* ; H. **554**, I. 2.   (*c*) Of **hīc** and **is**, LXXVIII. Obs. **6**, **7**.

6. **Miscellaneous.**   (*a*) The relative clause before the antec., LXXVII. Obs. **1** ; A. & G. **201**, *c* ; H. **572**, II. and N.   (*b*) The comparative sometimes translated by *too*, LXXIX. Obs. **1**.   (*c*) Formation of adverbs from adjectives in -**is**, LXXXIII. Obs. **1**.   (*d*) The subj. of the inf. must be expressed, LXXXVI. Obs. **2**.

3. WORD REVIEW.

New words in Chapters **14–17**. Prepare as in last Review.

VERBS.

1st *Conjugation.*	2d *Conjugation.*[1]	3d *Conjugation.*	
1. accūsāre	1. cavēre	1. accidere	12. lacessere
2. admīrārī	2. coërcēre	2. āvertere	13. oblīviscī
3. commemorāre	3. dēterrēre	3. cadere	14. pōnere
4. comportāre	4. dolēre	4. cōnsuēscere	15. praemittere
5. convocāre	5. movēre	5. dēcipere(iō)[2]	16. prōpellere
6. creāre	6. pollicērī	6. dēpōnere	17. prōpōnere
7. dubitāre	7. tacēre	7. dēstituere	18. querī
8. flāgitāre	8. timēre	8. discēdere	19. satisfacere (iō)[2]
9. glōriārī	9. valēre	9. emere	20. subsistere
10. īnstāre		10. īnsequī	21. subvehere
11. sublevāre		11. īnstituere	
12. superāre			
13. temptāre			
14. vexāre			

[1] The pupil must remember that many 2d conjug. verbs have the pf. or supine of another conjugation.

[2] For verbs thus marked, see LXXIX. Obs. **2**.

Irregular or defective.

1. adesse	3. cōnferre	5. nōlle	7. praeferre
2. coepisse	4. interesse	6. praeesse	8. tulisse (ferre)

NOUN, PRONOMINAL, AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

1st Declension.   *2d Declension.*

1st Declension.		*2d Declension.*	
1. contumēlia	1. aliēnus	9. meritum	17. respōnsum
2. praesentia	2. amplus	10. pābulum	18. secundus
3. rapīna	3. annuus	11. paucī (*plur.*)	19. sēditiōsus
4. victōria	4. cōnscius	12. posterus	20. sēnī (*plur.*)
5. vīta	5. diūturnus	13. propinquus	21. summus
	6. improbus	14. quantus	22. tantus
4th Declension.	7. Liscus	15. quīnī (*plur.*)	23. vergobretus
1. equitātus	8. mātūrus	16. quīngentī "	24. vester

3d Declension.   *Irregular or indeclinable.*

3d Declension.			*Irregular or indeclinable.*
1. agmen	7. impūnitās	13. populātiō	1. aliquī
2. commūtātiō	8. testis	14. potestās	2. ego (mē, mihi)
3. dubitātiō	9. minor	15. precēs (*pl.*)	
4. eques	10. nex	16. recēns	3. quīndecim
5. frīgus	11. pābulātiō	17. scelus	4. vōs
6. hostis	12. plūs	18. testis	

ADVERBS.   CONJUNCTION.

1. anteā	6. dēmum	11. interdum	16. prīvātim	1. enim
2. audacter	7. diū	12. interim	17. pūblicē	
3. circiter	8. graviter	13. modo	18. quidem	
4. cotīdiē	9. impūne	14. num	19. tam	
5. cupidē	10. īnsolenter	15. praesertim	20. tum	

LESSON LXXXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Caesar, **B. G.** I. **18**,[1] through **audeat nēmō.**

2. NOTES.

1. plūribus praesentibus : (*a*) for const. cf. LVIII. N. **4**, *b* ; (*b*) **plūribus**, from nom. plur. masc. **plūrēs**, means here *many*.

2. celeriter : (*a*) for formation, cf. LXXXIII. N. **8**, Obs. **1** ; (*b*) the nom. masc. of the corresponding adj. is **celer** ; the sup. of **celeriter** is **celerrimē** not **celerissimē** ; cf. **aegerrimē** LXVIII., of which the corresponding adj. in the positive degree is **aeger.** What likeness of form in **celer** and **aeger** ?

3. sōlō ; agrees with **eō** understood, referring to **Liscum.**

4. līberius ; for form, cf. XXV. Obs. **2** ; for superlative, cf. **2**, *b.*

5. esse ; the subj. is **ea**, *those things*, to be supplied.

6. ipsum ; in the sense of *the very one* rather than *himself.*

7. grātiā : (*a*) qualified by the preceding **māgnā** ; (*b*) for const. and also for that of **audāciā**, cf. **inimīcō animō** LIII.

8. vectīgālia ; declined exactly like neuters in **-e** ; cf. XLIII. Obs. **2.**

9. redempta habēre : (*a*) for use, cf. LXXIX. N. **3** ; (*b*) the preceding **parvō pretiō** tells at how much he bought the revenues.[2]

---

[1] **B. G.** I. **18** = **Bellum Gallicum**, Book I., Chapter **18**. The teacher will have noted the progressiveness of these Lessons ; very gradually help is withdrawn and a smaller amount of repetition is required. In the following Lessons the pupil will refer to the connected text in the back of the book (p. 363.) for the text of the Lesson and to the General Vocabulary (p. 403) for all new words.

[2] Among the ancients, taxes were not always collected by the state as with us. Often " those taxes which, like the **portōria**, produced variable amounts according to the state of trade were sold to ' tax-farmers ' for lump sums, and the taxes were collected by the tax-farmers and not by the state." In " buying " **portōria**, Dumnorix agreed beforehand to pay a definite sum for the privilege of collecting and having for his own all the money raised from exports and imports in the Haeduan country for a definite period. But by intimidating others, who might have bought, he secured the taxes at a price far below the receipts for customs during the period for which he bought them and thus, after he had made the collections, realized a large fortune. See Gow's " Companion to School Classics," p. 257.

10. licente : (*a*) for form, cf. LX. Obs. **1** ; (*b*) the pres. partic. represents the action as actually going on at the time represented by the verb of the clause in which the partic. stands ; here it may be translated with **illō**, *he bidding* or *while he was bidding ;* this is the first pres. partic. which has been used as such in the text thus far ; other words having the form of pres. partics. were adjs. in all respects ; (*c*) note that **licērī**, though deponent and therefore pass. in form, has the pres. act. partic. **licente.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** (not **-issimus**). The corresponding adverb is formed by substituting **-rimē** for **-ē** or **-iter** of the positive.   A. & G. **89,** *a* and **92.**   H. **163** 1 and **306.**

2. Deponent verbs have the two act. partics. as well as the two partics. which are pass. in form; cf. LVII. Obs. **2.**   A. & G. **135** and *a.* H. **231,** 1 ; **232.**

3. The pres. act. partic. is used in Lat. only to represent the action as actually going on at the time of the verb on which the partic. depends, and never loosely as in Eng. to describe an action which preceded that of the principal verb ; cf. E. G. **74,** *e, f* and 2. A. & G. **290.**   H. **550.**

4. EXERCISES.

1. (*a*) After very quickly dismissing the council, Caesar ordered Liscus to speak freely.   (*b*) Caesar did not allow these things to be discussed when many were present.   (*c*) Among the chiefs who were in the camp was Dumnorix the brother of Divitiacus.

2. (*a*) When Dumnorix is a bidder, the rest do not dare to buy up the taxes.   (*b*) Dumnorix was a man of so great popularity among the common people that the magistrates could not restrain him. (*c*) Having bought up the taxes at a very small price, Dumnorix tried to obtain very-much money (**pecūnia**).

LESSON LXXXIX.

1. TEXT

Caesar, **B. G**. I. **18**, **Hīs rēbus** through **grātiā dēspērāre**

2. NOTES

1. comparāsse : (*a*) full form ? Cf. XLV. Obs. **1**, **3**; (*b*) **et . . . et**, *both . . . and;* (*c*) **largiendum** ; for form, cf. XXX. N. **5**; with **ad** it here expresses purpose like **ad rēs cōnficiendās** XXXII.

2. domī, *at home;* not a gen.; it will be explained later.

3. largiter posse ; cf. **plūrimum possent** XXXVI.

4. collocāsse, *has placed, has given in marriage :* (*a*) **hūius poten-tiae causā**, *because of,* or *for the sake of this power, i. e. in order to secure this power ;* the phrase expresses purpose; for other ways of expressing purpose, cf. XL. N. **5** and XLIX. N. **2**.

5. sorōrem ex mātre, *a sister from the mother, a sister on the mother's side* (only), *i. e. a half sister.*

6. nūptum collocāsse ; for form and use of **nūptum**, cf. LXIII. Obs. **3**; **collocāsse** has in this expression the force of a verb of motion.

7. Helvētiīs ; dat. with **favēre** and **cupere** ; cf. XX. Obs. **3**, LVIII. N. **7**.

8. ōdisse, *he hates;* for translation, cf. LXXVII. N. **1**, *a;* it lacks the pres. system.

9. suō nōmine ; *in his own name, on his own account.*

10. dēminūta ; supply **sit** ; why not **est** ? why not **esset** ?

11. sī quid ; cf. **sī quid** LIV.

12. accidat. What is its mode and tense ? It stands for a fut. ind. in the dir. discourse.

13. rēgnī obtinendī ; for use and translation, cf. LIII. N. **5**.

14. imperiō populī Rōmānī, *under the government of the Roman people;* **imperiō**, like **adventū**, above, is an abl. of both time and cause ; cf. E. G. **69**, 9.

15. dē eā quam habeat grātiā ; note that **grātiā** is the antec. of **quam**, and that **quam habeat** has the force of an adj. restricting the

meaning of **eā**, and is for that reason placed after it ; the phrase might be translated *of his existing popularity;* cf. **māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā**, *of great popular, bribe-bought influence,* LXXXVIII.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. We have found thus far four different ways of expressing purpose in Lat.: (*a*) by the subjv. with **ut** (sometimes **quī = ut is**) or **nē** ; (*b*) by **ad** with the gerund or gerundive ; (*c*) by **causā** with a gen. depending upon it ; (*d*) by a supine in **-um**, after a verb of motion.

2. Some verbs, the ordinary meaning of which would lead us to expect the accus., are used with the dative. Four such verbs have already been found in the text, viz., **favēre**, *to favor ;* **imperāre**, *to command ;* **persuādēre**, *to persuade ;* **studēre**, *to desire.*

3. Some verbs pf. in form are pres. in sense. A. & G. **143** N. H. **297**, 2.

4. A fut. in the subordinate clause of direct discourse is changed in indirect discourse to a pres. subjv. after a pres. or fut., and to an impf. subjv. after a past tense ; cf. E. G. **67**, 2 and LXXXV. Obs. **1.**

5. A phrase containing a fut. pass. partic. is often translated by an Eng. verbal noun in *-ing* with a direct object. A. & G. **296.** H. **544**, 1.

6. Phrases and clauses often have both the force and position of adjs.; cf. E. G. **48**, 1, 3.

4. EXERCISES.

1. Write first in Eng. and then in Lat. the dir. disc. which is indirectly quoted in this Lesson.

2. (*a*) Influenced by this relationship, Dumnorix favors the Helvetians. (*b*) Influenced by his Helvetian wife, Dumnorix, in-order-to furnish aid to the Helvetians, tries to take away (to snatch away) the grain from the Romans. (*c*) For-the-sake (**causā**) of possessing the royal power, Dumnorix wished to defeat the Roman army.

3. (*a*) The high-born chiefs of Gaul were always longing to seize the kingdoms which their fathers had held for many years. (*b*) In

former times Divitiacus had been more powerful than Dumnorix.
(c) Dumnorix, after amassing large means and marrying a Helvetian
wife, was influential both with the common people of his own country
and with the Helvetians.

LESSON XC.

1. TEXT.

Caesar, **B. G.** I. **18**, Reperiēbat etiam through **animadvertere
iubēret** in **19**.

2. NOTES.

1. **reperiēbat . . . Caesar**: (a) note the expressiveness of the
order in this clause ; the verb first, to show that something important
was found out, — not simply related by Divitiacus, who has been
speaking ; cf. LXVIII. Obs. **1** ; (b) **quaerendō** is a gerund, *seeking ;*
distinguish **queritur** LXXXIII. What is the exact difference in the
forms of the pres. stems ?

2. **equestre** ; note the neuter ending **-e** ; cf. **omne** XLIII.

3. **paucīs ante diēbus** ; **ante** is here an adv.; *before by a few
days, a few days before;* cf. LXXIII. N. **5**, c.

4. **quod . . . esset factum** ; for const. and translation of clause,
cf. LXXXVI. N. **2**, d.

5. **factum** (after **fugae**) ; cf. LIII. Obs. **1** and E. G. **75**, 1 (1), 3.

6. **mīserant** ; the preceding dat. **auxiliō** means *for aid, i. e. in
order to aid,* and the dat. **Caesarī** means *to Caesar.*

7. **accēderent**: (a) **accēdere**, meaning strictly *to go to,* comes to
have the pass. meaning *to be added;* (b) for mode, cf. **possent** LXIII.

8. **trādūxisset**: (a) its subj. is **Dumnorix** to be supplied ;
(b) subjv. in a subordinate clause of indir. disc.; the thought of
Caesar, as suggested by the word **suspiciōnēs**, is here quoted.

9. **dandōs cūrāsset**: (a) **dandōs** agrees with **obsidēs**, not **eōs** ;

(*b*) for use of **dandōs**, cf. **pontem faciundum** LXVIII.; (*c*) for the circumstances referred to, cf. LVIII. and LIX.

10. **iniūssū suō et cīvitātis** : (*a*) **iniūssū**, *without the command*, is an abl. of manner ; (*b*) **suō** here refers to **Caesar**, the unexpressed subj. of a verb which follows ; (*c*) **suō** and **cīvitātis** (which depends on **iniūssū**) are connected by the co-ordinate conj. **et** ; note that the adj. **suō** and the gen. **cīvitātis** have exactly the same possessive force ; cf. E. G. **63**, 2.

11. **ipsīs** ; its antecs. are **cīvitātis** and **Caesaris** (the latter implied in **suō**) ; for const., cf. LVIII. N. **4.**

12. **accūsārētur** ; the four **quod** clauses which end with this word have the same const. ; they are in apposition with **rēs** (the subj. of **accēderent**) and may each be introduced in translating by the phrase *the fact that ;* cf. E. G. **52**.

13. **satis causae** ; for const., cf. **minus dubitātiōnis** LXXIII.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Accēdere, though active in form, has often the pass. meaning, *to be added.*

2. The gen. often has exactly the force of an adjective, and is sometimes called the adjective case ; cf. the adverbial force of the abl., LIII. Obs. **3**.

4. EXERCISES.

Dumnorix the Haeduan was a man of great boldness and popularity. He desired revolution and used-to-have about him a large number of horsemen, whom he supported by the means which he amassed from the taxes, which he had bought up. He was desirous of holding the royal power and hated the Romans because they were about-to-snatch-away his hope of overcoming the state. Therefore he was keeping the common people from bringing grain to the Romans, and tried to frighten Caesar's cavalry, a part of which he commanded (as) leader of the Haeduan horsemen.

LESSON XCI.

1. TEXT.

Caesar, **B. G.** I. **19** **Hīs omnibus** through **sē crēvisset** in **20**

2. NOTES.

1. **repūgnābat**, *was opposed* (or *repugnant*) ; the subj. is **ūnum**, *one (thing)* ; note that we have here an inanimate thing, as the subject of an active verb, and cf. E. G. **55**, 2.

2. **cōgnōverat**; note that the conj. is entirely omitted between the different objects of **cōgnōverat**; cf. **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus** IV. and **Garumnā, Oceanō, fīnibus** XIV., but contrast **Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovīcīs** XLIV.

3. **nē . . . offenderet verēbātur**, *he feared that he would offend :* (*a*) **nē**, following **verēbātur** in thought, is translated *that* ; (*b*) the impf. subjv. **offenderet** refers to the fut.; cf. XCI. N. **6**, *b ;* (*c*) the antec. of **ēius** is **Dumnorix**.

4. **quicquam**, sometimes written **quidquam**, *anything :* (*a*) the accus. sing. neut. of the indef. pron. **quisquam, quaequam, quicquam (quidquam)** ; (*b*) cf. **quemque**, *each one*, XLIII. ; it is from **quisque, quaeque, quidque** ; note that both of these prons. have only the first syllable declined and that this is the indef. **quis, quae, quid** ; for which, see LIV. How does **quis** differ in form from the relative pronoun ?

5. **cui . . . habēbat**, *to whom he was having the highest confidence of all things*, more freely, *in whom he had the greatest confidence respecting everything :* (*a*) case and antec. of **cui** ? (*b*) note that the gen. **rērum** is not best translated by *of*, and cf. **dictiōnis**, *for pleading*, XL. ; **trium mēnsium**, *sufficient for three months*, XLIII. ; **incommodī**, *disaster* (like accus.), LXIX. ; **minus dubitātiōnis**, *less doubt* LXXIII.

6. **quae . . . dicta sint :** (*a*) **ea** understood is the antec. of **quae** and the object of **commonefacit** ; (*b*) the antec. of **ipsō** is **Divitiacum**, above ; (*c*) for mode of **dicta sint**, cf. XC. N. **8**, *b*.

7. statuat: (*a*) for const., cf. XLIV. **N. 8**, *c*, Obs. **1**, and examples of the same const. in XLVIII., LII., LIX., LXXI., and note that in all these instances the subjunctive object clause is used where in Eng. we use an inf.; cf. XXXIV. Obs. **3** and E. G. **68**, 7; (*b*) **ēius** depends upon **animī** and refers to Divitiacus; (*c*) **ipse** refers to Caesar, **eō** to Dumnorix.

8. statueret: (*a*) for const., cf. **7**, *a*; (*b*) note the position of **quid** with respect to **nē**, and cf. **sī quid** LXXXIX.; (*c*) **gravius** is here an adj.; gender and agreement? it means *too severe* rather than *more severe*; (*d*) **in frātrem**, *against his brother*.

9. ex eō, *from that fact, i. e.* the behavior of Dumnorix.

10. posset: (*a*) What was the mode of this verb in the dir. disc.? Cf. **exīsset** LXVI.; (*b*) modified by both **plūrimum** and **minimum**.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Latin has an indefinite pronoun which has in general the forms of the relative; but the nom. sing. masc. is **quis** and the nom. and accus. sing. neuter is **quid**. This pronoun in Caesar usually stands immediately after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, or **num**.

2. The pronouns **quisquam**, *any one*, and **quisque**, *every one*, are compounds of the indefinite **quis**; the first syllable of each is declined while the last syllable remains unchanged. A. & G. **104, 105**, *c*, *e*. H. **190** and 2, 1), 2), and N. 1.

3. The translation of the gen., like that of all cases, depends upon the context; it should NOT be invariably translated by *of*.

4. The neg. **nē**, introducing a subjunctive clause which is the obj. of a verb of fearing, is regularly translated by the affirmative *that*. This will seem less strange if we observe that, where **nē** is used, the obj. is not desired. A. & G. **331**, *f*. H. **498**, III. and N. 1, foot-note 4.

5. In a series of coördinate words, where in Eng. a conjunction is expressed only between the last two, the Latin either connects them all by conjunctions or omits the conjunction altogether. A. & G. **208**, *b* and 1. H. **554**, I. 6.

6. In Latin as in English, an inanimate thing may be the subject of an active verb.

4. EXERCISES.

1. Write in Eng. and then in Lat. the dir. disc. which is indirectly quoted in this Lesson.

2. Caesar thought he ought to punish Dumnorix, but he was afraid that he would offend Divitiacus, his brother, who had been a friend of the Romans for many years. He called Divitiacus to him, and, when he had removed all, asked him through an interpreter either to examine and decide the case himself, or to direct the Haeduan state to decide it.

LESSON XCII.

1. TEXT.

Caesar, **B. G.** I. 20, **quibus opibus** to the end.

2. NOTES.

1. ūterētur : (*a*) why subjv. ? (*b*) what case used with it ? Cf. XLIV. N. **5**; (*c*) for translation and force of **ad minuendam grātiam**, cf. XLIII. N. **7**, LXXXIX. N. **1**, *c*.

2. frāternō ; note that this adjective has here the same force as the gen. **vulgī**, just beyond, and cf. XC. N. **10**, *c*.

3. sēsē . . . commovērī, *he* WAS *moved*: (*a*) the direct form is **commoveor**, *I* AM *moved*, and the quotation is made after a past tense of a verb of saying, implied in **obsecrāre coepit** XCI. ; (*b*) note that in a principal clause the inf. **commovērī** is retained in the pres. tense after a past tense, contrary to the Eng. usage ; cf. E. G. **67**, 2. (*c*) How is it with the subordinate verbs of indir. disc. ? Cf. tenses of subordinate verbs in this Lesson.

4. exīstimātūrum : (*a*) cf. XLVIII. N. **4**, Obs. **1**, **2**; (*b*) for the direct form of the preceding **accidisset**, after **sī**, cf. LXXXV. N. **6**, Obs. **1** ; the exact Eng. for the dir. form of the Lat. would be " If anything shall have happened, no one will think ; " the Lat. uses the fut. pf. in the **sī** clause, but the simple fut. in the conclusion, to indicate

that something must happen before there can be any thought about
it ; contrast the vague use of the pres. "happens" in the idiomatic
Eng. sentence, "If anything happens, no one will think," and cf.
E. G. **74**, *g*, *h*, 2, 3 ; (*c*) for **quod**, cf. LXXV. N. **1**.

5. factum ; with **esse**, understood, *it was done ;* cf. LIII. Obs. **1**.

6. āverterentur : (*a*) cf. **futūrum ut . . . habēret** LX. ; (*b*) cf.
āverterant LXXXII., and note that the pres. stem **āverte-** differs
from the pf. stem **āvert-** only in the final -**e** of the present.   Verbs
like **āvertere** in this respect have the same form in the pres. and pf.
ind., 3d sing. ; examples of such verbs already used are **minuit, os-
tendit, statuit, incendit, offendit, solvit** ; cf. XL. N. **4**, Obs. **3**.

7. peteret : (*a*) the introductory **cum** is here best translated
while, as very often when used with the impf. subjunctive.   (*b*) Why
does **haec** precede **cum** ? Cf. **Hīs cum** LVIII. N. **3**, *b* ; (*c*) **flēns**,
pres. partic. in form and use ; for use, cf. **licente** LXXXVIII. N. **10**.

8. faciat : (*a*) **ut** before **faciat** is exceptionally omitted ; cf.
rogāre ut LII. ; (*b*) for **ōrandī**, cf. **bellandī** XXVI.

9. ostendit ; **tantī**, the gen. sing. of **tantus**, is a predicate after
esse, lit., *he shows that his favor is of so much*, freely, *is of so much
(account)*, *is worth so much*.

10. reīpūblicae : (*a*) really two words, **rēs** and **pūblica** ; cf. **iūsiū-
randum** XXXVII. Vocab. ; (*b*) note the gen. ending -**ī** of the -**ē**
declension.

11. praeterita : (*a*) in form a pf. pass. partic. plur. neut. from
praeterīre, *to go by :* lit. *the things which have been passed by*, more
freely, *bygones, the past ;* (*b*) cf. the following forms of **īre** and its
compounds : **exīrent** XX., **exeant** XLII., **subeunda** XLIII., **exīre**
XLVI., **trānsītur** XLVII., **īre** XLVIII., **trānsībant, trānsierat**
LXV., **ībunt** LXIX., and the derivatives **iter, initium, reditiō**.
What is the pres. stem of **īre** ? How is this stem changed when it
stands before a vowel ? How is the supine stem formed ? What is
true of its tense signs and pers. endings as compared with those of
other verbs ?

12. dīcit : (*a*) note the position of this word with reference to the
clause which follows it in thought, and contrast the position of verbs
of saying or thinking in LXXXVIII., XC., XCI. ; cf., however,

position of **dīcere** LXXXII., **arbitrābātur** XC. What is true of the length of the quoted clauses which PRECEDE the verb of saying or thinking? (*b*) cf. also (as to the position of the verb of urging) **monet ut vītet** and **rogat faciat**, above; **hortātur ut statuat** and **obsecrāre nē statueret** XCI.; note also the position of result clauses in XLVI., LXIII., and in this Lesson.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Several common verbs of the 3d conjug. neither lengthen the vowel nor add any letter to form the pf. stem. This stem is the same as the pres. less the final -e.

2. After a past tense of a verb of saying or thinking, the English as a rule changes the tense of indirectly quoted verbs in both principal and subordinate clauses; the Latin, however, changes the tense of the subordinate verbs alone, while that of principal verbs remains the same as in the direct discourse.

3. The pres. stem of **īre** is **ī**-, the supine stem is **it**-, with a short **i**. Before a vowel the pres. stem is changed to **e**. It has the tense signs and personal endings of the 4th conjug., but has no connecting **ē** in the impf. ind., and uses the tense sign -bi- (-bu-) in the fut. indicative. Compounds of **īre** regularly shorten **īvit** to **iit** in the perfect. A. & G. **141** and *b*. H. **295** and 1, 3.

4. Quoted clauses more frequently follow a verb of saying than precede it, though short quoted clauses often precede it. In like manner the obj. clause of purpose and all result clauses usually follow the verb on which they depend.

5. Cum with the impf. subjv. is often best translated *while*.

4. EXERCISES.

When Divitiacus begged him not to punish his brother, Caesar pardoned him for the sake of Divitiacus, who said that if Caesar gave too severe a sentence upon his brother all the Haeduans would think that Divitiacus, Caesar's friend, had advised him to do this. He calls Dumnorix and urges him to avoid conspiracy in the future. He chooses men to see what Dumnorix is doing, and to inform him.

LESSON XCIII.

REVIEW.

LESSONS LXXXVIII. – XCII.

1. TEXT.

CAESAR'S "GALLIC WAR," Book I., Chapters **18–20**.

Follow the directions under "Text," in LXII.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Study again very carefully the Observations in the five Lessons covered by this Review.

2. **Formation of words** (cf. E. G. **42–46**).

(a) Study the following nouns selected from the text of Caesar, **B. G.** I. **1–20** : —

> audāc·ia (audāx, -cis, *bold*), *bold-ness*.
> amīci-tia (amīcus, *friendly*), *friend-ship*.
> cupidi-tās (cupidus, *desirous*), *desire*.
> inop-ia (inops, *help-less*), *helpless-ness*.
> adfīni-tās (adfīnis, *near*), *near-ness*.
> iūsti-tia (iūstus, *just*), *justice*.
> longi-tūdō (longus, *long*), *leng-th*.
> forti-tūdō (fortis, *brave*), *bravery*.

From what part of speech are the above derivatives formed? What four different endings are used above? What seems to be the force of these endings? Cf. E. G. **42**, 5.

(b) Study the following words : —

> redi-tiō (redīre, *to return*), *a returning*.
> dic-tiō (dīcere, *to say*), *a saying*.
> adven-tus (advenīre, *to come to*), *a coming to*.
> cōnspec-tus (cōnspicere, *to see*), *a seeing, sight*.

am-or (amāre, *to love*), *love*.
dol-or (dolēre, *to feel pain*), *pain*.
benefic-ium (beneficere, *to do a kindness*), *kindness*.
init-ium [1] (inīre, *to begin*), *beginning*.[2]

From what part of speech are the above derivatives formed? What four different endings are used above? What seems to be the force of these endings? Cf. E. G. **42**, 4. What likeness in form between **cōnspectus** and the pf. pass. partic. of **cōnspicere**? (For parts, cf. **dēspicere**.) What difference in decl., however, between the two?

(*c*) Note the following common adj. endings as a help in sight reading : —

Cassi-ānus	**cōnsanguin-eus**	**fac-ilis**
repent-īnus	**ēgreg-ius**	**immort ālis**
frūment-ārius	**cup-idus**	**incrēdi-bilis**

Explain so far as you can the derivation of each adjective; cf. E. G. **43** and General Vocabulary. For **-ilis** and **-bilis** in **fac-ilis** and **incrēdi-bilis**, cf. E. G. **43**, 7 and 8.

(*d*) For derivation of adverbs, cf. XXV. N. **4**, Obs. **1**; LXXXIII. N. **8**, Obs. **1**.

3. WORD REVIEW.

1. Remembering that all new words in the connected text are printed in **bold-faced** type, prepare from the text a classified list of all new words which have occurred in Chaps. **18**, **19**, and **20**. Arrange your lists as in Lesson LXXXVII., giving the nom. sing. of nouns, prons., and adjs., and the infs. of verbs.

2. Review carefully the words contained in Appendix C.

---

[1] The nom. ending **-ium** is also very often found in words not derived from verbs.

[2] It will be understood that only the most primitive meaning has been given. The meaning, of course, varies widely in different contexts. Sometimes words of the class given under *b* are hardly distinguishable from those under *a*.

LESSON XCIV.

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW and INDEX of LESSONS I. to XCIII.

The most important grammatical points discussed in the foregoing Lessons are here arranged in the order usually followed in the grammars. This Lesson may be used both for systematic study and for reference. The pupil should remember that the subject of reference is almost always treated under the Observations, Grammar Lesson, Exercises, and Topics for Study as well as in the Notes, of the Lesson referred to.

The grammatical principles referred to below are always discussed in immediate connection with their application. It is therefore possible and very desirable, in the systematic study of this Lesson, for the pupil to prepare classified sets of examples taken from the text and illustrating the most important principles which he has been studying. The teacher cannot too strongly urge upon his pupils the necessity of associating every principle with a definite, concrete example of its use. Special attention is called to the references headed "Translation." These references are specially designed to aid the pupil in the every-day work of using the language.

PRONUNCIATION.

Marks of quantity, and accent of words of two syllables I.; sounds of the vowels, ī, ĭ, ē, ĕ, ă, ŏ, and of the consonants **v**, **s**, I.; sounds of **ā**, **ū**, **ŭ**, **ae**, **g** and **qu**, II.; accent, complete statement, III.; sounds of **ō**, **t**, **c**, and **gu**; division into syllables, VIII.; summary of pronunciation, IX.; sound of **au** X.; **oe** XI.; change of **e** to **i**, XXIII.; consonant **i**, XXXIII.

INFLECTION.

NOUNS.

Gender : of the 1st and 2d decls. I.; IX. **2**, 6; XVIII. **2**, 2, 5; XIX.; XXIX.; gender by endings applies only to names of things, XIV.; summary of gender in 3d decl., LXII. **2**, 1; gender of **-u** or 4th decl. LXIII.; of the **-ē**, or 5th, decl., LXXVIII.

Declension : the ending **-rum** III.; nom. endings, sing. and plur., IV.; abl. endings, V.; the stem, IX. 2, last paragraph; **-s** in nom.

ADJECTIVES (including participles).

PRONOUNS.

VERBS.

conjugs., LIX.; pres. act. partic., LX.; the ending **-isse**, LXV.; plpf. subjv. act., LXVI.; pers. endings **-s** and **-re**, tense signs, **-bi-**, **-ē-**, **-eri-**, list of tenses and the stem of each tense, LXIX.; pers. endings **-mus** and **-mur**, LXX.; summary of verb forms learned, points of conjug. to be specially noted, LXXI.; pers. ending **-ō**, LXXIII.; pers. ending **-m**, LXXV.; the pers. endings of the pass., LXXVI.; pers. endings act. and pass., LXXVIII.; endings of the pf. ind. act., LXXXVI.; partics. of deponent verbs, LXXXVIII.; verbs pf. in form, pres. in sense, LXXXIX.; verbs having the same form in 3d sing. pres. ind. act. and 3d sing. pf., XCII.

1st conjug.: characteristic, XXX.; pf. pass. partic., XXXVII.; pf. stem, XLV.; pres. subjv., LVI.

2d conjug.: characteristic, XXX.; pf. stem, XXXIII.; pf. pass. partic., XLIII.; pres. subjv., LII.

3d conjug.: characteristic, the formation of the pres. ind. XXX.; pf. pass. partic., XXXVII.; pass. inf., XXXIX.; how to find pf. and supine stems, XL.; pres. subjv., XLIX.; sign of the fut., LXXVIII.; verbs in **-iō** of 3d conjug., LXXIX.; verbs having the same form in the 3d sing. pf. ind. act., as in the 3d sing. pres., XCII.

4th conjug.: characteristic, XXXIX.; the pf. stem, XLI.; pf. pass. partic., XLVII.; pres. subjv., XLIX.; compared with 1st and 3d conjugs., XLIX.

Irregular: forms of **esse** and **posse**, LVIII.; stems of **esse**, LX.; compounds of **īre** drop **v** of pf. stem, LXV.; the sign of the fut., LXXVIII.; conjug. of **ferre**, LXXXII.; conjug. of **īre**, XCII.

PARTICLES (*i. e.* advs., conjs., preps.).

The adverbial ending **-ē**, VII.; two uses of form **cum**, XII.; **aut . . . aut**, XII.; two meanings of **ad** and of **inter**, XVII.; formation of advs. in **-ē** and comparison of adverbs, XXV.; **quam** with the superlative, XXX. and LI.; meaning of **ut**, XLI.; position of **cum**, XLIII.; use of **num**, LXXV.; use of **-que**, LXXVI.; formation of advs. from adjs. in **is**, LXXXIII.; comparison of advs. from adjs. in **-er**, LXXXVIII.; use and omission of conjunctions, XCI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

Formation of advs. in -**ē**, XXV.; formation of advs. from adjs. in -**is**, LXXXIII.; General Summary, XCIII.

SYNTAX.

NOUNS.

Agreement : of appositive, V.; of verb and subj., VIII.; of predicate noun, XXXIV.

Nom. : subj., II.; an inanimate thing as subj. nom., XCI.

Accus. : obj. of verb or prep., II.; after **in** and **inter**, IV.; after **ad**, VII.; after **in**, XII.; subj. of an inf., XIII.; of thing after **persuādēre**, XXII.; of extent of space, XXVIII.; of time, XXXIII.; **domum**, XLVI.; after compound verbs, LXV.; **quod** as adverbial accus., LXXV.; two accus. with verbs of asking etc., LXXXI.

Gen. : possessive and partitive, VI.; of quality, LV.; with verbs of *remembering etc.*, LXIX.; use of partitive gen. LXXIII.; adj. force of the gen., XC.; translation of gen. depends on context, XCI.

Dat. : like Eng. dative, VIII.; with **persuādēre**, XX.; with compounds, XXV.; with **imperāre** and with verbs of *giving* and *saying*, LI.; with **studēre**, LVIII.; with adjs., LX.; of possessor, LXIV.; with special verbs, LXXXIX.

Abl. : the case name, and use with preps., V.; used with **ā** or **ab**, VII.; with **cum** and **dē**, and abl. of respect, X.; prep. *in* not always translated by the abl. of respect, XI.; abl. with **in**, XII.; of separation, XII.; of means, XIV.; of cause, XXV.; with **ex** and **prō**, XXVII.; four uses without a prep., XXXII.; time at which, XL.; preps. with, XLII.; with **potīrī** and **ūtī**, and absolute, XLIV.; with prep. to denote place *in which* and *from which*, but **domō** without prep., XLVI.; **locō** and **locīs**, XLVII.; preps. with abl., LII.; usual adverbial force of abl., abls. of quality and agent, LIII.; component parts of abl. absolute const., LVIII.; abl. of manner, LXV.; of degree of difference, LXXIII.; after comparatives without **quam**, LXXXI.

ADJECTIVES.

Agreement, VI.; the noun is often omitted, XXIV.; includes partics. even in verb combinations, XLII.; dat. with adjs., LX.; adj. use of phrases and clauses, LXXXIX.; **alter** and **alius**, XLVII.

PRONOUNS.

Agreement, VIII.; relative may be used as an adj., has forms for each gender, may be used in principal clauses, X.; distinction between **suus**, and **sē** and between **suus** and **sē**, and **eōrum**, XII.; **is, ea, id** used as a demonstrative and personal, XXII.; use of **sē** and **suus**, XXXII.; use of **hīc** and **is**, LXXVIII.

VERBS.

In general: agreement with subj., VIII.; verbs expressing state or condition rather than act, XXXI.; act. form with pass. translation, XC.; an inanimate obj. may be a subj., XCI.; difference between Eng. and Lat. in tense of principal clause indirectly quoted after past tense, XCII.

Ind.: historical present, LXIII.; pf. after **ubi**, LXXXIII.; change of a fut. pf. in indir. disc., LXXXV.; change of a fut. in indir. disc., LXXXIX.

Subjv.: **ut** clause after **persuādēre**, XXXIV.; subjv. of purpose with **ut** or **nē**, XL.; substantive use of obj. purpose clause, XLIV.; subjv. of result, XLVI.; relative purpose clauses, XLIX.; subjv. in subordinate clauses of indir. disc., LII.; with **dum**, LIV.; of purpose with **quō** and comparatives, LVI.; with **cum**, causal, LXIII.; in a question indirectly quoted, LXV.; with **cum**, temporal, LXVI.; pf. in prohibitions, LXXI.; with **cum**, *although* (*i. e.* concessive), LXXVIII.; with **quīn**, LXXXV.; with **nē** after verbs of *fearing*, XCI.

Inf.: after verbs of *saying* or *thinking*, XXVII.; inf. a noun, XXXV.; the historical inf., LXXXI.; subj. must be expressed, LXXXVI.; difference between Eng. and Lat. in tense of principal clause quoted after past tense, XCII.

Gerunds, Supines, and Partics.: gerund like Eng. verbal in *-ing*, XXVI.; the partic. always an adj., XLII.; the translation of the

fut. pass. partic., LIII.; use of supine in -um, LXIII.; use of abl.
of means (or agent) with pf. pass. partic., LXIV.; the pf. pass.
partic. with **habēre**, LXXIX.; use of the pres. act. partic. and of
partics. of deponent verbs, LXXXVIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

Position of **ā** and of **ab**, V.; **quibuscum**, VIII.; position of verb,
XI.; two or more objs. after one prep., XV.; position of monosyl-
labic prep., XXIV.; force of last word, of every new word, position
of obj., XXXIX.; grouping of words, and placing of words between
prep. and its noun, XL.; position of demonstrative and other adjs.,
XLII.; position of **cum**, prep., XLIII.; position of the adv., and
of word most closely connected with preceding sentence, LVIII.;
abl. of means (or agent) immediately before pf. pass. partic., LXIV.;
emphasis expressed by the first place in a sentence, LXVIII.; the
relative clause before the antec., LXXVII.; position of adj. phrases
and clauses, LXXXIX.; position of the indefinite **quis**, XCI.;
position of quoted clauses, and of purpose and result clauses, XCII.

TRANSLATION.

Two or more words of translation for one word of Lat., II.;
translation of ending -rum, and of **Gallī** and **Gallia**, III.; Lat.
ending = Eng. prep., IV. and XIV.; no article in Lat., VI.; *of* not
always trans. by gen., X.; *in* does not always indicate abl. of respect,
XI.; trans. of *in* with accus. and with abl., XII.; **aut . . . aut**,
XII.; Lat. words not always trans. by Eng. derivatives, XIII.; two
translations of **ad** and of **inter**, XVII.; the Lat. pf. often trans. like a
simple past, XIX.; trans. of **cum**, XXI.; *very* a trans. of superlative,
a masc. or fem. pron. may be trans. *which*, XXIII.; *that* = **ut**,
is or ——, XXV.; Lat. verbal like Eng. noun in -*ing*, XXVI.; trans.
of an inf. clause after verb of *saying* or *thinking*, XXVII., XXV.;
preps. denoting motion *to* or *from* trans. by preps. denoting *rest*,
XXVIII.; verbs expressing state or condition rather than act,
XXXI.; trans. of four kinds of abls., XXXII.; trans. of **ut** with

ind. and with subjv., XLI.; trans. of **alter** and **alius**, XLVII.;
trans. of **dīcere** and variation of trans. with context, XLIX.; ellipsis
in use of **quam** with the superlative, LI.; the Lat. for *to inform*, for
of in sense of *concerning*, for *to intend*, LII.; the trans. of fut.
pass. partic., LIII.; trans. of abl. absolute, LXI.; the trans. *too*
for a comparative, LXXIX.; different ways of expressing necessity
or obligation, LXXXIII.; different ways of expressing purpose,
LXXXIX.; pass. trans. of the act. **accēdere**, LXXXIX.; trans. of
an obj. purpose clause, XCI. N. **7**; trans. of gen. depends on the
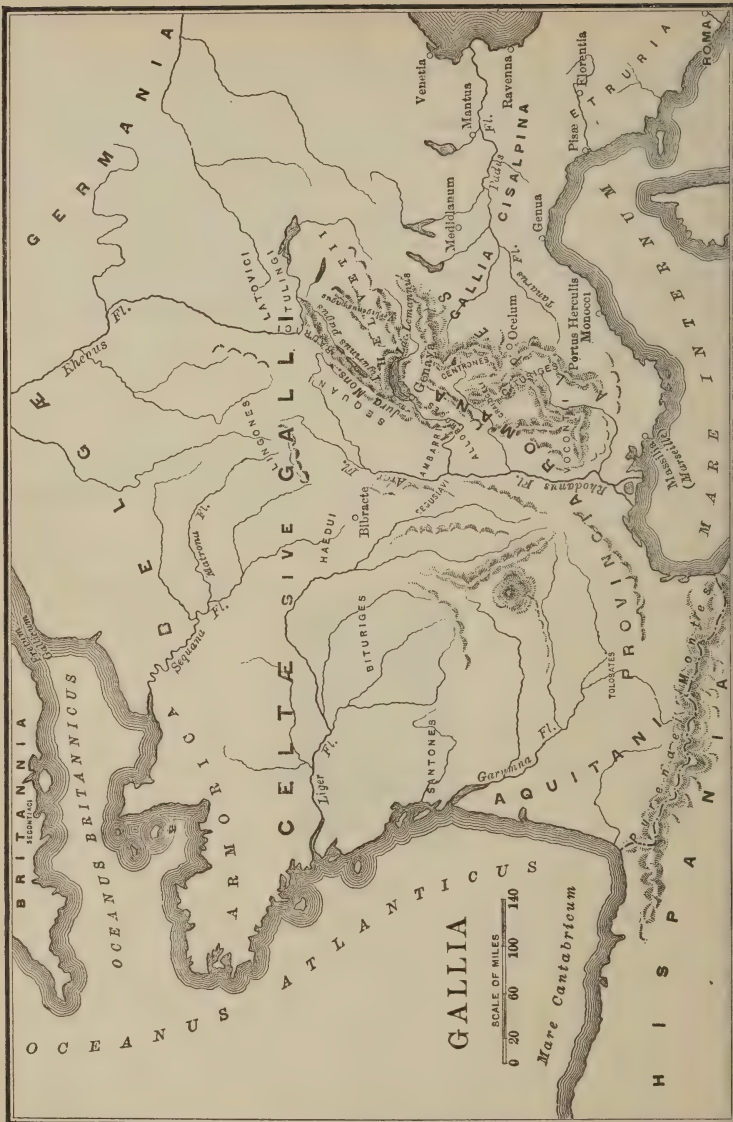context, XCI.; **cum** trans. *while*, XCII.

MISCELLANEOUS.

Roman reckoning for dates, XLIX.; different ways of expressing
necessity or obligation, LXXXIII.; different ways of expressing
purpose, XC.

ROMAN SCŪTUM, *shield.*

For method of carrying it, cf. pp. 238 and 269.   For Gallic shields,
cf. pp. 228 and 364.

GERMANIA

BELGÆ

BRITANNIA

OCEANUS BRITANNICUS

ARMORICA

CELTÆ SIVE GALLI

Rhenus Fl.

LATOVICI

ULING

SEQUANI

HELVETII

GALLIA CISALPINA

Venetia

Mantua

Padus Fl.

Ravenna

ETRURIA

ROMA

Pisæ

Florentia

Mediolanum

Genua

Ocelum

Portus Herculis Monœci

Rhodanus Fl.

PROVINCIA

ARAR Fl.

Sequana Fl.

Matrona Fl.

HÆDUI

Bibracte

Jura Mons

Lemannus

ALLOBROGES

Durius

AMBARRI

SEGUSIANI

Vienna

Cebenna Mons

MARE INTERNUM

BITURIGES

SANTONES

Liger Fl.

Garumna Fl.

Tolosates

AQUITANI

Mons Pyrenæus

HISPANIA

OCEANUS ATLANTICUS

Mare Cantabricum

GALLIA

SCALE OF MILES

0   20   60   100   140

362

THE HELVETIAN WAR.

B. G. I. 1-29.

NOTES. — Every word upon its first occurrence is printed in **full-faced** type, later in ordinary type. The student can, therefore, by a glance at the page, see what words are new and what he has met already in his reading.

The numbers in parentheses indicate the Lessons in which the text is treated.

The divisions of Gaul.

1. (1) **Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs,** (2) **quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī,** (3) **tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.** (4) **Hī** omnēs linguā, **īnstitūtīs, lēgibus, inter sē differunt.** (5) Gallōs **ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā** Belgīs **Mātrona et Sēquana** dīvidit. (6) Hō- 5 rum omnium **fortissimī** sunt Belgae, **proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt,** (7) **minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant** atque ea, quae ad **effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important,** (8) **proximīque** sunt **Germānīs,** quī **trāns Rhēnum** incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. 10 (10) **Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs** Gallōs **virtūte prae- cēdunt,** (11) **quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs** cum Germānīs **conten- dunt,** (12) **cum aut suīs fīnibus** eōs **prohibent,** aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. (13) **Eōrum ūna pars,** quam Gallōs **obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō;** (14) **continētur** 15 Garumnā **flūmine, Oceanō,** fīnibus Belgārum; (15) **attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et** Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; **vergit ad septentriōnēs.** (16) Belgae ab **extrēmīs** Galliae fīnibus **oriuntur;** pertinent ad **īn- feriōrem** partem flūminis Rhēnī; **spectant** in septentriōnem et ori- entem **sōlem.** (17) **Aquītānia ā** Garumnā flūmine ad **Pȳrēnaeōs** 20 **montēs** et ad eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad **Hispāniam** pertinet; spectat inter **occāsum** sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Orgetorix, an Helvetian noble, forms a plot to seize the government in Gaul. The warlike Helvetians prepare to leave their narrow boundaries in a body.

2. (19) **Apud** Helvetiōs longē **nōbilissimus** et **dītissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā** et **M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitā-tis fēcit,** (20) et **cīvitātī persuāsit, ut** dē
5 fīnibus **suīs** cum omnibus **cōpiīs exīrent:** (21) **perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.** (22) Id hōc **facilius** eīs persuāsit, quod **undique locī nātūrā** Helvētiī **continentur:** (23) **ūnā**
10 **ex** parte flūmine Rhēnō, **lātissimō** atque **altis-simō,** · quī **agrum** Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; (24) **alterā** ex parte monte **Iūrā** altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā **lacū Lemannō** et flūmine Rhodanō, quī
15 prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. (25) Hīs rēbus **fīēbat,** ut et **minus lātē vagārentur,** et minus facile **fīnitimīs** bellum **īnferre pos-sent;** (26) quā ex parte **hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur.** (27) **Prō**

GALLIC FOOT-SOLDIER.

Cf. the Roman soldier, p. 238. Which is better armed? Cf. also the Gallic horseman, p. 321.

20 multitūdine autem hominum et **prō glōriā** bellī atque **fortitūdinis angustōs** sē fīnīs habēre arbitrābantur, (28) quī in **longitūdinem mīlia passuum ducenta** et **quadrāgintā,** in **lātitūdinem centum** et **octōgintā patēbant.**

3. (30) Hīs rēbus **adductī** et **auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī**
25 cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad **proficiscendum** pertinērent, **comparāre, iūmentōrum** et **carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere,** (31) **sēmentēs** quam maximās facere, ut in **itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret,** cum proximīs **cīvitātibus pācem** et **amīcitiam cōn-firmāre.** (32) Ad eās rēs **cōnficiendās biennium** sibi **satis** esse
30 **dūxērunt:** in tertium **annum profectiōnem** lēge cōnfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorix **dēligitur.** Is sibi **lēgātiōnem** ad cīvitātēs **suscēpit.** (33) In eō itinere persuādet **Casticō, Cata-**

mantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; (34) itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, frātrī Divitiacī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc 5 maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. (35) Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; (36) nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū 10 illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. (37) Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs āc firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

The plot of Orgetorix discovered; his sudden death.

4. (39) Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus 15 suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur. (40) Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, 20 eōdem condūxit: per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. (41) Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit. 25

The Helvetians continue their preparations; they gain allies.

.**5.** (42) Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, (43) frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum 30 portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā,

parātiōrēs ad omnia **perīcula subeunda** essent, trium **mēnsium
molita cibāria** sibi **quemque** domō efferre iubent. (44) Per-
suādent **Rauricīs** et **Tulingīs** et **Latovīcīs** fīnitimīs, **utī** eōdem
ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque **exūstīs**, **ūnā** cum iīs proficis-
5 cantur, (45) **Bōiōsque**, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum
Nōricum trānsierant **Nōrēiam**que **oppūgnārant**, receptōs ad sē
sociōs sibi **adscīscunt.**

*The Helvetians plan to cross the Roman Province. Caesar suddenly
appears and keeps them out.*

6. (46) Erant **omnīnō** itinera **duo**, quibus itineribus domō exīre
possent : ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et **difficile**, inter montem
10 Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, **vix quā singulī** carrī dūcerentur ;
mōns autem altissimus **impendēbat**, ut facile **perpaucī** prohibēre
possent ; (47) alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō **facilius**
atque **expedītius**, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et
Allobrogum, quī **nūper pācātī** erant, Rhodanus **fluit** isque
15 **nōnnūllīs** locīs **vadō** trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum
est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus **Genāva.** Ex eō oppidō
pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. (48) Allobrogibus sēsē **vel persuāsūrōs**,
quod **nōndum bonō** animō in populum Rōmānum **vidērentur**,
exīstimābant, vel **vī** coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs **īre**
20 **paterentur.** (49) Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs,
diem dīcunt, quā diē ad **rīpam** Rhodanī omnēs **conveniant.** Is
diēs erat ante diem **quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs**, **L.** Pīsōne, **A.
Gabīniō** cōnsulibus.

7. (51) **Caesarī** cum id **nūntiātum** esset, eōs per prōvinciam
25 nostram iter facere cōnārī, **mātūrat** ab **urbe** proficiscī et quam
maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam **ulteriōrem** contendit et ad
Genāvam **pervenit.** Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest **mīlitum**
numerum **imperat** (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre **legiō ūna**),
pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet **rescindī.** (52) Ubi dē ēius
30 **adventū** Helvētiī **certiōrēs** factī sunt, **lēgātōs** ad eum **mittunt**
nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis **Nammēius** et **Verucloetius**
prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō **sine**

ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud
iter habērent nūllum : rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere
liceat. (53) Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōn-
sulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub
iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat, neque hominēs 5
inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī,
temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. (54) Tamen,
ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat,
convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmp-
tūrum : sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs reverterentur. 10

6. (55) Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque,
quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen
Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab
Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitū-
dinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. (56) Eō opere 15
perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī,
sē invītō, trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs, quam
cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat
sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam
dare, et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. (57) Hel- 20
vētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus
factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat,
nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent,
cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī,
hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. 25

*The Helvetians obtain permission to go out by the only remaining
way, — that through the country of the Sequanians.*

9. (58) Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs
invītīs, propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte
persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt,
ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et
largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, 30
quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et
cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās

cīvitātēs suō **beneficiō** habēre **obstrictās** volēbat. (59) **Itaque**
rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs
īre patiantur, **obsidēs**que utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē
itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā
5 trānseant.

*Caesar again objects, and quickly brings up his legions.*

10. Caesarī **renūntiātur** Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum
Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in **Santonum** fīnēs facere, quī nōn
longē ā **Tolōsātium** fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā.
(60) Id sī fieret, **intellegēbat** māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae
10 futūrum, ut hominēs **bellicōsōs**, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs
patentibus maximēque **frūmentāriīs** fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās
causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, **T. Labiēnum** lēgātum **prae-
fēcit**; ipse in **Italiam** māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque **ibi**
legiōnēs **cōnscrībit** et trēs, quae **circum Aquilēiam** hiemābant,
15 ex **hībernīs** ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam
per **Alpēs** erat, cum hīs **quīnque** legiōnibus īre contendit. (61) Ibi
Centrōnēs et **Grāiocelī** et **Caturigēs**, locīs **superiōribus** occupātīs,
itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs
pulsīs, ab **Ocelō**, quod est **citeriōris** prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs
20 **Vocontiōrum** ulteriōris prōvinciae diē **septimō** pervenit; **inde** in
Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in **Segusiāvōs** exercitum dūcit.
Hī sunt **extrā** prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum **prīmī**.

Caesar aroused by the entreaties of Roman allies, whose fields are
being ravaged, at once attacks and defeats a fourth part of the
Helvetians.

11. (63) Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās
cōpiās **trādūxerant** et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque
25 agrōs **populābantur**. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs **dēfendere**
nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum **auxilium**: ita
sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō **meritōs** esse, ut **paene in
cōnspectū** exercitūs nostrī agrī **vastārī**, **līberī** eōrum in **servi-
tūtem abdūcī**, oppida **expūgnārī** nōn **dēbuerint**. (64) Eōdem
30 tempore Haeduī **Ambarrī**, **necessāriī** et **cōnsanguineī** Haeduōrum,

Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, **dēpopulātīs** agrīs, nōn facile ab
oppidīs vim **hostium** prohibēre. Item Allobroges, quī trāns
Rhodanum vīcōs **possessiōnēs**que habēbant, **fugā** sē ad Caesarem
recipiunt et **dēmōnstrant** sibi **praeter** agrī **solum** nihil esse
reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn **exspectandum** sibi 5
statuit, dum, omnibus **fortūnīs** sociōrum **cōnsūmptīs**, in Santonōs
Helvētiī pervenīrent.

12. (65) Flūmen est **Arar**, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et
Sēquānōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit **incrēdibilī lēnitāte**, ita ut
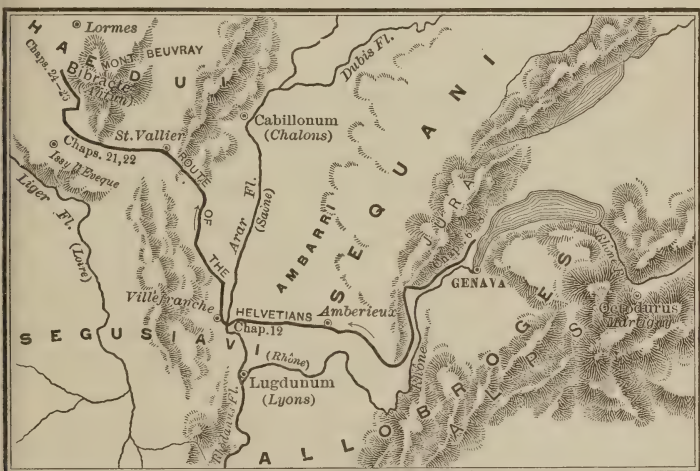
SEAT OF THE HELVETIAN WAR.

oculīs, in **utram** partem fluat, **iūdicārī** nōn possit. Id Helvētiī 10
ratibus āc **lintribus** iūnctīs **trānsībant**. Ubi per **explōrātōrēs**
Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam cōpiārum partēs Helvētiōs id
flūmen trādūxisse, **quartam** ferē partem **citrā** flūmen Ararim
reliquam esse, dē tertiā **vigiliā** cum legiōnibus tribus ē **castrīs**
profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 15
(66) Eōs **impedītōs** et **inopīnantēs** aggressus māgnam eōrum
partem **concīdit**: reliquī fugae sēsē **mandārunt** atque in proximās
silvās abdidērunt. Is **pāgus** appellābātur **Tigurīnus**; nam omnis

24

cīvitās Helvetia in **quattuor** pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus,
cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem
interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. (67) Ita **sīve
cāsū** sīve cōnsiliō **deōrum immortālium**, quae pars cīvitātis
Helvētiae **īnsīgnem** calamitātem populō Rōmānō **intulerat**, ea
prīnceps poenās **persolvit**. Quā in rē Caesar nōn **sōlum pūblicās,
sed** etiam prīvātās iniūriās **ultus** est, quod ēius **socerī** L. Pīsōnis
avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium,
interfēcerant.

The Helvetians proudly ask for peace, but refuse to accept the terms of Caesar.

13. (68) Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut **cōnsequī** posset, pontem in Arare faciundum **cūrat** atque ita exercitum
trādūcit. Helvētiī **repentīnō** ēius adventū **commōtī** cum id, quod
ipsī diēbus **vīgintī aegerrimē** cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum
ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis
Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō **Cassiānō dux** Helvētiōrum fuerat.
(69) [1] Is ita cum Caesare **ēgit**: "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum

---

[1] It will be noted at this point that the difficult indirect discourse of Chaps.
13 and **14** has been changed to the direct form. This alone is to be studied by
the pupil. The indirect discourse as it appears in Caesar is added for the convenience of the teacher.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit; si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in
eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque
esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī
populī Rōmānī, et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum
adortus esset, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsissent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob
eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret, aut ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā
patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contenderent
aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōnstitissent, ex
calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam
prōderet.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs,
quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō
minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius
fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē
intelligeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris
contumēliae oblīvisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod, eō invītō, iter

Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi
eōs cōnstitueris atque esse volueris ; **sīn bellō persequī persevērābis,**
reminiscere et **veteris incommodī** populī Rōmānī, et **prīstinae**
virtūtis Helvētiōrum. (70) Quod **imprōvīsō** ūnum pāgum **adortus**
es, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsierant, suīs auxilium **ferre** nōn possent, 5
nē ob eam rem aut **tuae māgnopere virtūtī tribueris,** aut **nōs dē-**
spexeris. Nōs ita ā patribus **māiōribus**que nostrīs **didicimus,**
ut **magis** virtūte quam **dolō** contendāmus aut **īnsidiīs nītāmur.**
(71) **Quārē** nē **commīseris,** ut is locus, ubi **cōnstiterimus,** ex
calamitāte populī Rōmānī et **internīciōne** exercitūs **nōmen** capiat, 10
aut memoriam **prōdat.''**

14. (73) Hīs Caesar ita respondit : " Eō **mihi minus dubitā-**
tiōnis datur, quod eās rēs, quās **commemorāvistis,** memoriā teneō,
atque eō **gravius** ferō, quō minus **meritō** populī Rōmānī **accidērunt :**
(74) quī sī **alicūius** iniūriae sibi **cōnscius** fuisset, nōn fuit difficile 15
cavēre ; sed eō **dēceptus** est, quod neque commissum ā sē intelle-
gēbat, quārē **timēret,** neque sine causā timendum putābat. (75)
Quod sī veteris **contumēliae oblīviscī** volō, **num** etiam **recentium**
iniūriārum, quod, mē invītō, iter per prōvinciam per vim **temptā-**
vistis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas **vexāvistis,** 20
memoriam **dēpōnere** possum ? (76) Quod **vestrā victōriā** tam
īnsolenter glōriāminī quodque tam **diū vōs impūne** iniūriās tu-
lisse **admīrāminī,** eōdem pertinet. (77) **Cōnsuēvērunt** enim dī
immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex **commūtātiōne** rērum **doleant,**
quōs prō **scelere** eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs **secundiōrēs interdum** 25
rēs et **diūturniōrem impūnitātem** concēdere. (78) Cum haec ita

---

per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarr.s, quod Allo-
brogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse ? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter
glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem
pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtā-
tiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs inter-
dum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī
obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs
dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant,
sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit : ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus
suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint ; ēius reī populum
Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae **pollicēminī**
factūrōs intellegam, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque
eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus **satisfaciētis, ego** vōbīscum
pācem faciam." Dīvicō respondit : " Ita Helvetiī ā māiōribus suīs
5 **īnstitūtī** sunt, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint ; ēius reī
populus Rōmānus est **testis**." Hōc **respōnsō** datō, **discessit**.

Caesar continues to pursue the Helvetians, who are elated by a success-
ful skirmish.

15. (79) **Posterō** diē castra ex eō locō **movent.** Idem facit
Caesar **equitātum**que omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem
ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat,
10 **praemittit,** quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī
cupidius novissimum **agmen īnsecūtī** aliēnō locō cum equitātū
Helvētiōrum proelium committunt ; et **paucī** dē nostrīs **cadunt.**
(80) Quō proeliō sublātī Helvetiī, quod **quīngentīs** equitibus
tantam multitūdinem equitum **prōpulerant, audācius subsistere**
15 nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs **lacessere coe-**
pērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat āc satis habēbat in
praesentiā hostem **rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibus**que
prohibēre. (81) Ita diēs **circiter quīndecim** iter fēcērunt, utī
inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn **amplius**
20 **quīnīs** aut **sēnīs** mīlibus passuum **interesset.**

The Haeduans fail to furnish supplies ; Liscus tells why.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs **frūmentum,** quod essent
pūblicē pollicitī, **flāgitāre.** (82) Nam propter **frīgora,** quod Gallia
sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, **posita** est, nōn **modo**
frūmenta in agrīs **mātūra** nōn erant, sed nē **pābulī quidem** satis
25 māgna cōpia suppetēbat : eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare
nāvibus **subvēxerat,** proptereā minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arare
Helvetiī **āverterant,** ā quibus discēdere **nōlēbat.** Diem ex diē
dūcere Haeduī : **cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse** dīcere. (83) Ubī
sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem **īnstāre,** quō diē frūmentum
30 mīlitibus **mētīrī** oportēret, **convocātīs** eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum

māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, — in hīs Divitiacō et **Liscō**, quī
summō magistrātuī **praeerat**, quem **vergobretum** appellant Haeduī,
quī **creātur annuus** et **vītae necisque** in suōs habet **potestātem**, —
graviter eōs **accūsat**, quod, cum neque **emī** neque ex agrīs **sūmī**
posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam **propinquīs** hostibus, ab iīs nōn 5
sublevētur; **praesertim** cum māgnā ex parte eōrum **precibus**
adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit **dēsti-**
tūtus, queritur.

17. (84) **Tum dēmum** Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod
anteā tacuerat, **prōpōnit**: esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud 10
plēbem plūrimum **valeat**, quī **prīvātim plūs** possint, quam ipsī
magistrātūs. (85) Hōs **sēditiōsā** atque **improbā** ōrātiōne mul-
titūdinem **dēterrēre**, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod praestāre
dēbeant: sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum
quam Rōmānōrum imperia **praeferre**, neque **dubitāre** quīn, sī 15
Helvētiōs **superāverint** Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs
lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. (86) Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque
in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē **coërcērī** nōn posse:
quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit,
intellegere sēsē, **quantō** id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, 20
quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Dumnorix, the Haeduan noble; his influence and his hate of the Romans.

18. (88) Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Divitiacī frā-
trem, **dēsīgnārī sentiēbat**, sed, quod, plūribus **praesentibus**, eās
rēs **iactārī nōlēbat**, **celeriter concilium dīmittit**, Liscum retinet.
Quaerit ex **sōlō** ea, quae in **conventū** dīxerat. Dīcit **līberius** 25
atque audācius. Eadem **sēcrētō** ab aliīs quaerit; **reperit** esse
vēra: ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā **audāciā**, māgnā apud
plēbem propter **līberālitātem** grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum.
Complūrīs annōs **portōria** reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum **vectīgālia**
parvō pretiō redempta habēre, proptereā quod, illō **licente**, **contrā** 30
licērī **audeat nēmō**. (89) Hīs rēbus et suam rem **familiārem**
auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum
numerum equitātūs suō **sūmptū semper** alere et circum sē habēre,
neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs **largiter** posse,

atque hūius **potentiae** causā **mātrem** in **Biturigibus** hominī illī
nōbilissimō āc potentissimō **collocāsse**, ipsum ex Helvētiīs **uxōrem**
habēre, **sorōrem** ex mātre et propinquās suās **nūptum** in aliā
cīvitātēs collocāsse. **Favēre** et **cupere** Helvētiīs propter eam
5 **affīnitātem**, **ōdisse** etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs
quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius **dēminūta** et Divitiacus frāter in
antīquum locum grātiae atque **honōris** sit **restitūtus**. Sī quid
accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī
venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē
10 eā quam habeat grātiā, **dēspērāre**. (90) Reperiēbat etiam in quae-
rendō Caesar, quod proelium **equestre adversum** paucīs ante diēbus
esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque ēius equi-
tibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumno-
rix praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum **perterritum**.

Caesar spares Dumnorix out of friendship for his brother Divitiacus.
Dumnorix is reprimanded and watched.

15 **19** Quibus rēbus **cōgnitīs**, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae
rēs **accēderent**, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset,
quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo
iniūssū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam **īnscientibus** ipsīs fēcisset,
quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae
20 arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse **animadverteret**, aut cīvitātem
animadvertere iubēret. (91) Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum **repūgnā-**
bat, quod Divitiacī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum **studium**,
summam in sē voluntātem, **ēgregiam** fidem, iūstitiam, **tempe-**
rantiam cōgnōverat: nam, nē ēius **suppliciō** Divitiacī animum
25 **offenderet**, **verēbātur**. Itaque **priusquam quicquam** cōnārētur,
Divitiacum ad sē **vocārī** iubet et, cotīdiānīs **interpretibus remōtīs**,
per **C. Valerium Procillum**, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem
suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō **collo-**
quitur: simul **commonefacit**, quae, ipsō praesente, in conciliō
30 Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae **sēparātim**
quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. **Petit** atque **hortātur**, ut sine ēius
offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem
statuere iubeat.

20. Divitiacus multīs cum **lacrimīs** Caesarem **complexus obsecrāre** coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret : **scīre sē** illa esse vēra, **nec** quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, 5 ille minimum propter **adulēscentiam** posset, per sē **crēvisset** ; (92) quibus **opibus** ā**c nervīs** nōn sōlum ad **minuendam** grātiam, sed paene ad **perniciem** suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et **amōre frāternō** et **exīstimātiōne vulgī** commoverī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum 10 tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum ; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus **verbīs flēns** ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius **dextram prendit** ; **cōnsōlātus** rogat, fīnem **ōrandī** faciat ; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et **reīpūblicae** iniūriam et suum 15 dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus **condōnet.** Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem **adhibet** ; quae in eō **reprehendat,** ostendit, quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit ; **monet,** ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs **vītet** : **praeterita** sē Divitiacō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorigī **custōdēs** pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibus-20 cum **loquātur,** scīre possit.[1]

Caesar plans to attack the enemy in front and rear ; his plan is defeated by the mistake of Considius.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte **cōnsēdisse** mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs **octo, quālis** esset nātūra montis et quālis in **circuitū ascēnsus,** quī **cōgnōscerent,** mīsit. Renūntiātum est, facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, 25 lēgātum prō **praetōre,** cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis **ascendere** iubet ; **quid** suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. **P. Cōnsidius,** quī reī **mīlitāris perītissimus** habēbātur et in 30 exercitū L. **Sullae** et **posteā** in M. **Crassī** fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

[1] The Lessons end at this point. Notes on the following Chapters will be found in Appendix B, and all new words in the General Vocabulary.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā T. Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse
ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset,
neque, ut posteā ex **captīvīs comperit**, aut ipsīus adventus aut
Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius, **equō admissō**, ad eum **accurrit**,
5 dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī :
id sē ā **Gallicīs** armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās
cōpiās in proximum **collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit.** Labiēnus,
ut erat eī **praeceptum** ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, **nisi**
ipsīus cōpiae **prope** hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō
10 tempore in hostēs **impetus** fieret, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectā-
bat proeliōque **abstinēbat.** Multō **dēnique** diē per explōrātōrēs
Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse
et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi
renūntiāsse. Eō diē quō cōnsuērat **intervāllō** hostēs sequitur et
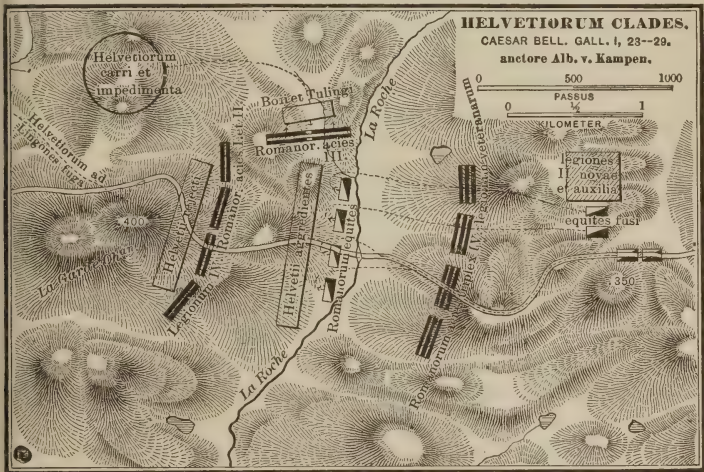15 mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

*The Romans, having turned aside to go to Bibracte, are followed by the
Helvetians.*

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō **biduum supererat**, cum
exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā **Bibracte**, oppidō
Haeduōrum longē maximō et **cōpiōsissimō**, nōn amplius mīlibus
20 passuum **octōdecim** aberat, reī frūmentāriae **prōspiciendum** exīsti-
māvit : iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs
per **fugitīvōs** L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus
nūntiātur. Helvētiī, **seu** quod **timōre** perterritōs Rōmānōs discē-
dere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod **prīdiē**, superiōribus locīs
25 occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā
interclūdī posse **cōnfīderent, commūtātō** cōnsiliō atque itinere
conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī āc lacessere coepērunt.

*A pitched battle is fought ; the Helvetians are utterly defeated after a
desperate struggle.*

24. **Postquam** id animum **advertit,** cōpiās suās Caesar in
proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī **sustinēret** hostium
impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle **mediō triplicem** aciem
30 īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor **veterānārum** [ita utī **suprā**] ; sed in

summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre **proximē** cōn-
scrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocāvit āc tōtum montem hominibus
complēvit; intereā **sarcinās** in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab
hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, **mūnīrī** iussit. Helvētiī cum
omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī **impedīmenta** in ūnum locum contulērunt; 5
ipsī **cōnfertissimā** aciē, **rēiectō** nostrō equitātū, **phalange factā**,
sub prīmam nostram aciem **successērunt**.

HELVETIORUM CLADES.
CAESAR BELL. GALL. I, 23--29.
anctore Alb. v. Kampen.

25. Caesar **prīmum** suō, **deinde** omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs
equīs, ut, **aequātō** omnium perīculō, spem fugae **tolleret**, cohortātus 10
suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre **pīlīs** missīs fa-
cile hostium phalangem **perfrēgērunt**. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dē-
strictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad **pūgnam** erat
impedīmentō, quod, plūribus eōrum **scūtīs** ūnō **ictū** pīlōrum **trāns-
fīxīs** et **colligātīs**, cum ferrum sē **īnflēxisset**, neque **ēvellere**
neque, **sinistrā** impedītā, satis **commodē pūgnāre** poterant, multī ut, 15
diū iactātō **brāchiō**, praeoptārent scūtum **manū ēmittere** et **nūdō**
corpore pūgnāre. **Tandem vulneribus dēfessī** et pedem **referre** et,
quod mōns **suberat** circiter mīlle passuum, **eō** sē recipere coepērunt.
Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum

mīlibus circiter quīndecim agmen hostium **claudēbant** et novissi̅
mīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs **latere apertō** aggress
circumvenīre, et id **cōnspicātī** Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē
recēperant, **rūrsus** īnstāre et proelium **redintegrāre** coepērunt.
5 Rōmānī conversa **sīgna bipartītō** intulērunt: prīma āc
secunda aciēs, ut **victīs** āc **summōtīs resisteret**, tertia, ut
venientēs **exciperet.**

26. Ita **ancipitī** proeliō diū atque **ācriter** pūgnātum est.
Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī
10 sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedī-
menta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,
cum ab **hōrā** septimā ad **vesperum** pūgnātum sit, āversum
hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad
impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō **vāllō** carrōs
15 **obiēcerant** et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla
coniciēbant et nōnnūllī inter carrōs **rotāsque matarās** āc
trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque **vulnerābant.** Diū cum
esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt.
Ibi Orgetorigis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō
20 proeliō circiter mīlia hominum centum et **trīgintā** superfuē-
runt eāque tōtā **nocte** continenter iērunt: nūllam partem
noctis itinere **intermissō** in fīnēs **Lingonum** [diē quartō]
pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter
sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī [**trīduum morātī**] eōs sequī
25 nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas **litterās nūntiōsque**
mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō **nēve** aliā rē **iuvārent**: quī sī
iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse,
trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

*The Helvetians surrender; Caesar sends them back home, to keep
out the Germans; the numbers of the Helvetian host.*

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum **inopiā** adductī lēgātōs dē
30 **dēditiōne** ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere con-
vēnissent sēque ad pedēs **prōiēcissent suppliciter**que locūtī PILUM.
flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum
adventum exspectāre iūssisset, **pāruērunt.** Eō postquam Caesar

pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, **servōs**, quī ad eōs **perfūgissent**, **poposcit.**
Dum ea **conquīruntur** et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā circiter
hominum mīlia **sex** eius pāgī, quī **Verbigēnus** appellātur, sīve timōre
perterritī, nē, armīs **trāditīs**, suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē **salūtis**
inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine **dēditīciōrum** suam fugam aut 5
occultārī, aut omnīnō **īgnōrārī** posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē
castrīs Helvētiōrum **ēgressī** ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum con-
tendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar **resciit**, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī
conquīrerent et **redūcerent**, sī sibi **pūrgātī** esse vellent, imperāvit : 10
reductōs in hostium numerō habuit ; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus,
armīs, **perfugīs** trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulin-
gōs, Latovīcōs in fīnēs suōs, **unde** erant profectī, revertī iussit, et
quod, omnibus **frūctibus āmissīs**, domī nihil erat, quō **famem to-**
lerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent : 15
ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā
maximē **ratiōne** fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī dis-
cesserant, **vacāre**, nē propter **bonitātem** agrōrum Germānī, quī
trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trāns-
īrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs, 20
petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīni-
bus suīs collocārent, concessit ; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque
posteā in **parem** iūris lībertātisque **condiciōnem** atque ipsī erant,
recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum **tabulae** repertae sunt litterīs **Graecīs** 25
cōnfectae et ad Caesarem **relātae**, quibus in tabulīs **nōminātim**
ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma
ferre possent, et item sēparātim **puerī**, **senēs mulierēs**que. Quā-
rum omnium rērum **summa** erat **capitum** Helvētiōrum mīlia du-
centa et **sexāgintā** tria, Tulingōrum mīlia trīgintā sex, Latovīcōrum 30
quattuordecim, Rauricōrum vīgintī tria, Bōiōrum trīgintā duo ; ex
hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia **nōnāgintā** duo. Summa om-
nium fuērunt ad mīlia **trecenta** et sexāgintā octō. Eōrum, quī
domum **rediērunt**, **cēnsū** habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus
est numerus mīlium centum et decem. 35

NOTE. — The figures within parentheses indicate the Lessons of this book in which the text, corresponding to this parallel, is treated.

1. (1) Gaul is all divided into parts three, (2) of-which one inhabit the-Belgians, another the-Aquitanians, (3) the-third (part those inhabit) who of-themselves in-language Celts, in-our (language) Gauls, are-called. (4) These all in-language, in-customs, in-laws, among themselves differ. (5) The-Gauls from the-Aquitanians the-Garumna river, from the-Belgians the Matrona and the Seine, divide(s). (6) Of-these (of) all the-bravest are the-Belgians, on-account-of-this because from the-civilization and-also the-refinement of-the-province farthest they-are-distant, (9) and-least to them merchants often resort, and-also those (things) which to enervate minds tend, bring in; (8) and-nearest they-are to-the-Germans, who across the-Rhine dwell, with-whom continually war they-wage. (10) Which from cause the-Helvetians also the-rest-of the-Gauls in-valor surpass, (11) because almost (in) daily battles with the Germans they-contend, (12) when either from-their-own boundaries them they-keep-away, or themselves in their boundaries war wage. (13) Of-these one part, which the-Gauls to-hold it has been said, beginning takes from the-river Rhone; (14) it-is-bounded by-the-Garumna river, by-the-ocean, by-the-territory of-the-Belgians; (15) it-reaches also on-the-side-of the-Sequanians and the-Helvetians the-river Rhine; it-slopes toward the-north. (16) The-Belgians from the-remotest of-Gaul boundaries rise; they-extend to the-lower part of-the-river Rhine; they-look into the-north and the-rising sun. (17) Aquitania from the-Garumna river to the-Pyrenean mountains and that part of-the-ocean which is near Spain extends; it-looks between the-setting of-the-sun and the-north.

2. (19) Among the-Helvetians far the-highest-born and the-richest
was Orgetorix. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso (being) con-
suls, of-the-royal-power by-a-desire led, a-conspiracy-of-the-nobility
made, (20) and the-citizens persuaded that down-from boundaries
their with all forces they-might-go-out: (21) very-easy to-be, since
in-valor all they-stood-before, of-entire Gaul the-supreme-power to-
obtain. (22) This on-this-account more-easily to-them he-persuaded,
because on-all-sides of-the-place by-the-nature the-Helvetians are-
hemmed-in: (23) one on (**ex**) side by-the-river Rhine, very-broad
and (**atque**) very-deep, which the-country Helvetian from-the-Ger-
mans divides; (24) the-second on side by-the-mountain Jura very-
high, which is between the-Sequanians and the-Helvetians; (**on**)
the-third (side) by-the-lake Geneva and by-the-river Rhone, which
province our from the-Helvetians divides. (25) On-account-of-these
things it-came-to-pass that both less widely they-wandered and less
easily neighbors war to-bear-upon they-were-able; (26) which in (**ex**)
respect men of-warring fond with-great grief were-affected. (27) Con-
sidering the-great-number moreover of-men, and considering the-glory
of-war and of-bravery narrow themselves territory to-have they-
thought, (28) which into length thousands of-paces two-hundred and
forty, into width a-hundred and eighty extended.

3. (30) By-these things led, and by-the-advice of-Orgetorix deeply-
moved, they-determined those-things which to departure pertained to-
prepare, of-beasts-of-burden and of-carts as-much-as the-greatest num-
ber to-buy-up, (31) sowings as-much-as the-greatest to-make, in-
order-that on the-journey plenty of-grain might-be-on-hand, with
the-nearest states peace and friendship to-establish. (32) For these
things to-be-accomplished two-years'-time for-them enough to-be they-
thought: for the-third year the-departure by-law they-fix. For these
things to-be-accomplished Orgetorix is-chosen. He upon himself an-
embassy to the-states took. (33) On this journey he-persuades
Casticus, of-Catamantaloedes son, a-Sequanian, whose father the-
kingly-power among the-Sequanians many years had-held, and by
the-senate of-the-people Roman friend had been called, that the-kingly-
power in state his he-might-seize, which (his) father before had-had;
(34) and-also Dumnorix the-Hæduan, brother of-Divitiacus, who at-

that time the-chief-place in the-state was-holding and (**āc**) very-greatly to-the-common-people acceptable was, that the-same (thing) he-might-try, he-persuades and-to-him daughter his into marriage he-gives. (35) Very-easy in-doing (it) is to-them he-proves undertakings to-accomplish, on-account-of-this because himself of-his-own state the-supreme-power about-to-hold he-was: (36) not (it) is doubtful that of-the-whole-of Gaul most the-Helvetians were-able; he-himself with-his forces and-with-his army for-them the-kingdoms about-to-win (is) he-affirms. (37) By-this speech influenced, among themselves a-pledge and an-oath they-give and, the-kingly-power having-been-seized, through three very-powerful and (**āc**) very-strong peoples of-the-whole-of Gaul (that) they to-be-masters are-able they-hope.

4. (39) This thing is to-the-Helvetians through information having-been-made-known. In-accordance-with-customs their, Orgetorix out-of chains (his) cause to-plead they-compelled. (Him) condemned punishment to-follow it-was-fitting, (namely) that by-fire he-be-burned. (40) On-the-day appointed of-the-cause of-the-pleading, Orgetorix to the-trial all his retinue, to of-men thousands ten, from-all-sides collected, and all clients and-debtors his, of-whom a-great number he-had, to-the-same-place brought-together: through these, so-that-not (his) cause he-might-plead, himself he-snatched-away. (41) When the-state on-account-of this thing roused-up, by-arms right its to-enforce was-trying, and-a-multitude of-men out-of the-fields the-magistrates were-collecting, Orgetorix died; and-not absent-is suspicion, as the-Helvetians think, that himself to-himself death he-decreed.

5. (42) After his death by-nothing the-less the-Helvetians that, which they-had-determined, to-do try, that out-of (**ē**) boundaries their they-may-go-out. When at-length (that) they for that thing ready were they-thought, towns their all in-number to twelve, villages to four-hundred, the-rest-of-the-private buildings they-set-fire-to, (43) the-grain all, further-than (that was) which with-them about-to-carry they-were, they-burn-up, so-that, home of-returning the-hope having-been-taken-away, more-ready for all dangers to-be-undergone they-might-be, of-three months ground provisions for-himself each-

one from-home to-bear-out they-order. (44) They-persuade the-Rauricians and the-Tulingians and the-Latovicians neighbors, that (**utī**), the-same having-used plan, towns their and-villages having-been-burned-up, together with them they-may-depart, (45) and-the-Boians, who across the-Rhine had-dwelt and into the-country Noric had-crossed and-Noreia had-stormed, received to themselves (as) allies to-themselves they-unite.

6. (46) (There) were in-all roads two, by-which roads from-home to-go-out they-were-able : one through the-Sequanians, narrow and difficult, between Mount Jura and the-river Rhone, with-difficulty where one-by-one carts were-being-drawn ; the-mountain moreover very-high was-overhanging, so-that easily very-few to-keep-out were-able : (47) the-other through province our, by-much more-easy and (**atque**) more-open, on-account-of-this because between the-boundaries of-the-Helvetians and of-the-Allobroges, who recently had been subdued, the-Rhone flows, and-this (in) some places by-a-ford is-crossed. The-last town of-the-Allobroges is and-the-nearest of-the-Helvetians to-the-boundaries Geneva. Out-of that town a-bridge to-the-Helvetians extends. (48) The-Allobroges (that) they either (**vel**) about-to-persuade (were), because not-yet of-good mind towards (**in**) the-people Roman they-seemed, they-were-thinking ; or (**vel**) by-force about-to-compel (were), so-that through their boundaries them to-go they-might-permit. (49) All things for departure having-been-prepared, a-day they-appoint on-which day to the-bank of-the-Rhone all may-come-together. This day was before the-day fifth the-Calends April, Lucius Piso, Aulus Gabinius (being) consuls.

7. (51) To-Caesar when this had been announced, (that) they through province our a-journey to-make were-trying, he-hastens from the-city to-depart, and (by) as-much-as the-greatest he-can marches into Gaul farther he-hastens and to Geneva he-comes-through. To-the-province whole as-much-as the-greatest he-can of-soldiers number he-commands [(there) was altogether in Gaul farther legion one], the-bridge which was to Geneva he-orders to-be-broken-down. (52) When concerning his arrival the-Helvetians more-certain were-made, ambassadors to him they-send, the-highest-born of-the-state, of-which embassy Nameius and Verucloetius the-chief place were-

holding, who might-say (that) to-them it-was in mind without any evil-doing a-journey through the-province to-make, on-account-of-this because another way they-had none: (they) ask that (with) his consent this to-them to-do it-may-be-permitted. (53) Caesar, because by-memory he-was-holding (that) Lucius Cassius the-consul killed (was) and-army his by the-Helvetians driven and under the-yoke sent (was), about-to-be-allowed (was) not he-was-thinking; and-not men of-unfriendly mind, having-been-given an-opportunity through the-province of-a-journey about-to-be-made, about-to-refrain (were) from harm and evil-doing he-was-thinking. (54) Yet, in-order-that space (of time) to-intervene might-be-able, until the-soldiers, whom he-had-ordered, should-come-together, to-the-ambassadors he-replied (that) time he for deliberating about-to-take (was): if any-thing they-wished, at (ad) the-Ides April let-them-return.

8. (55) Meanwhile with-that legion, which with-him he-was-having, and-with-the-soldiers, who out-of the-province had-come-together, from Lake Leman, which into the-river Rhone flows-into, to Mount Jura, which the-boundaries of-the-Sequanians from the-Helvetians divides, thousands of-paces ten (and) nine a-wall into height of-feet sixteen and-a-ditch he-prolongs. (56) That work having-been-finished, guards he-places-here-and-there, redoubts he-strongly-fortifies, by-which more-easily, if, he (being) unwilling, to-cross they-should-try, to-keep-away he-may-be-able. When that day, which he-had-appointed with the-ambassadors, came, and the-ambassadors to him returned, he-denies (that) he because-of-the-custom and because-of-the-precedent of-the-people Roman can the-right-of-way-to-any-one through the-province give, and, if force to-use (make) they-should-try (he) about-to-keep-out (them is) he-shows. (57) The-Helvetians, from-that hope cast-down, by-boats joined and-by-rafts very-many made, some by-fords of-the-Rhone, where least the-depth of-the-river was, sometimes by-day, oftener by-night, whether to-break-through they-were-able, having-tried, of-the-work by-the-fortification and of-the-soldiers by-the-running-together and by-the-darts driven-back, from-this attempt desisted.

9. (58) (There) was-left one through the-Sequanians way, by-which, the-Sequanians (being) unwilling, on-account-of (its) narrow-

ness to-go not they-were-able. These when by-their-own effort to-persuade not they-were-able, ambassadors to Dumnorix the-Haeduan they-send so-that, he (being) mediator, from the-Sequanians they-might-obtain-their-request. Dumnorix by-popularity and by-liberality among the-Sequanians very-much could and to-the-Helvetians was a-friend, because out-of that state of-Orgetorix a-daughter into marriage he-had-led, and by-the-desire of-royal-power led new things was-desiring and as-much-as the-most states by-his kindness to-have bound was-wishing. (59) Therefore the-thing he-undertakes and from the-Sequanians obtains-his-request, that through boundaries their the-Helvetians to-go they-allow, and-hostages that (**utī**) among themselves (**sēsē**) they-give, he-brings-about : the-Sequanians, that-not from-the-journey the-Helvetians they-will-keep ; the Helvetians, that without wrong-doing and harm they-will-cross.

10. To-Caesar it-is-reported (that) to-the-Helvetians (it)-is in mind through the-open-country of-the-Sequanians and of-the-Haeduans a-journey into of-the-Santones boundaries to-make, which not far from of-the-Tolosates boundaries are-distant, which state is in the-province. (60) This if should-be-done, he-was-understanding (that) great with danger of-the-province about-to-be (it-was), that men warlike, of-the-people Roman foes, to-places lying-open and-very fruitful neighbors it-have. On-account-of these reasons over-that fortification, which he-had-made, Titus Labienus the-lieutenant he-put ; himself into Italy by-great journeys he-hastens and-two there legions he-enrolls and three, which around Aquileia were-wintering, out-of winter (quarters) he-leads-out and where the-nearest route into farther Gaul through the-Alps was, with these five legions to-go he-hastens. (61) There the-Centrones and the-Graiocelians and the-Caturiges, the-places higher having-been-seized, from-the-march the-army to-keep try. (In) many these in-battles having-been-driven, from Ocelum, which is of-the-hither province the-last (town), into the-boundaries of-the-Vocontians of-the-farther province on-the-day seventh he-comes-through ; thence into of-the-Allobroges boundaries, from the-Allobroges into the Segusiavians the-army he-leads. These are beyond the-province across the-Rhone the-first.

FREE TRANSLATION OF B. G. I. **1–6.**

1. (1) All Gaul is divided into three parts ; (2) one of which the Belgians inhabit, another the Aquitanians, (3) the third (those) who in their own language are called Celts, in ours Gauls. (4) All these differ from one another in language, customs, and laws. (5) The Garumna river separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians, the Matrona and the Seine separate (them) from the Belgians. (6) Of all these the bravest are the Belgians, because they are farthest distant from the civilization and refinement of the province, (7) and merchants very seldom resort to them and bring in those things which tend to weaken courage ; (8) and because they are next to the Germans, who live across the Rhine, with whom they wage war continually. (10) For this reason the Helvetians also surpass the rest of the Gauls in valor, (11) because in almost daily battles they contend with the Germans, (12) when they either keep them out of their own territory or themselves wage war in the territory of the Germans. (13) One part (of the country) of (all) these, which it has been said the Gauls hold, takes its beginning at the river Rhone ; (14) it is bounded by the Garumna river, the ocean, and the territory of the Belgians ; (15) it also reaches the river Rhine on the side of the Sequanians and Helvetians ; it slopes toward the north. (16) The Belgian (country) begins at the remotest boundaries of Gaul ; it extends to the lower part of the river Rhine ; it faces north-east. (17) Aquitania extends from the Garumna river to the Pyrenees mountains and that part of the ocean which is near Spain ; it faces north-west.

2. (19) Among the Helvetians far the highest born and the richest was Orgetorix. He, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus

Piso, led by a desire for the royal power, made a conspiracy of the nobility, (20) and persuaded the citizens to go out of their boundaries with all their forces : (21) saying that it was very easy, since they surpassed all in valor, to obtain the supreme power of the whole of Gaul. (22) He persuaded them of this more easily because on all sides the Helvetians are hemmed in by the character of their country : (23) on one side by the very broad and deep river Rhine, which divides the Helvetian country from the Germans ; (24) on the second side by the very high Mount Jura, which is between the Sequanians and the Helvetians ; on the third side by Lake Geneva and the river Rhone, which divides our province from the Helvetians. (25) From these circumstances it came about that they roamed about less widely and could less easily make war upon their neighbors ; (26) by this state of things people fond of warring were greatly troubled. (27) And especially when they took into account the greatness of their population and their reputation for bravery in war did they consider that they had a contracted domain. (28) This extended two hundred and forty miles in length, a hundred and eighty in width.

3. (30) Led by these things and deeply moved by the advice of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare those things which had to do with departure, — to buy up the largest possible number of beasts of burden and of carts, (31) to make their sowings as large as possible, that upon the journey plenty of grain might be on hand, to establish peace and friendship with the nearest states. (32) They thought that two years was time enough for them to accomplish these things : they fix their departure by law for the third year. Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish these things. He took upon himself an embassy to the states. (33) On this journey he persuades Casticus, the son of Catamantaloedes, a Sequanian, whose father had held the royal power among the Sequanians many years, and had been called friend by the senate of the Roman people, to seize in his state the royal power, which his father had had before ; (34) and he also persuades Dumnorix, the Haeduan, brother of Diviтiacus, who at that time was holding the chief place in the state and was very acceptable to the common people, to try the same thing, and gives him his daughter in marriage. (35) He proves to

them that it is a very easy thing to do to accomplish their under-
takings, because he himself will hold the supreme power of his state:
(36) that there is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful
people of all Gaul; he declares that he himself with his forces and
with his army will win the royal power for them. (37) Influenced
by these statements, they give a pledge and an oath to one another,
and hope, after seizing the royal power, to become masters of the whole
of Gaul through the aid of three very powerful and very strong
peoples.

4. (39) This conspiracy was reported to the Helvetians by in-
formers. In accordance with their customs they compelled Orge-
torix to plead his cause in chains. If condemned, the punishment
of being burned must overtake him. (40) On the day appointed
for the pleading of the case, Orgetorix brought together from all
sides to the trial all his retinue — about ten thousand men — and
assembled all his clients and debtors, of whom he had a great num-
ber, at the same place: with their assistance he rescued himself so
as not to plead his cause. (41) When the state, roused up because
of this act, was trying to enforce its law by force of arms, and the
rulers were collecting a multitude of men from the fields, Orgetorix
died; and suspicion is not wanting, as the Helvetians think, that he
committed suicide.

5. (42) After his death the Helvetians, nevertheless, attempt to go
out of their country as they had determined to do. When at length
they think they are ready for this expedition, they set fire to all
their towns, about twelve in number, to about four hundred villages,
and to the remaining private buildings; (43) they burn up all the
corn except what they are about to carry with them, that, by taking
away the hope of returning home, they may be more ready to en-
counter all perils; they order every man to carry from home for
himself meal enough for three months. (44) They persuade the
Rauricians, the Tulingians, and the Latovicians, their neighbors, to
adopt the same plan, burn up all their towns and villages, and set
out together with them, (45) and the Boians, who formerly lived
across the Rhine and had stormed Noreia after crossing into the
Noric territory, are received and joined to them.

6. (46) There were only two ways by which they could go out from home : one through the country of the Sequanians, narrow and difficult, between Mount Jura and the river Rhone, where with difficulty carts were drawn one by one; moreover, a very high mountain was overhanging, so that a very few could easily keep them out : (47) the second way through our province, much more easy and open, because between the territory of the Helvetians and the Allobroges, the latter of whom had recently been subdued, the Rhone flows, and this is crossed in several places by a ford.   The last town of the Allobroges and the nearest town to the territory of the Helvetians is Geneva.   From this town a bridge extends to the territory of the Helvetians.   (48) They thought they would either persuade the Allobroges, because they did not yet seem well-disposed toward the Roman people, or would compel them by force, to allow them to go through their territory.   (49) When all things are prepared for departure, they appoint a day for all to come together at the bank of the Rhone.   This day was the 28th of March, in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius.

APPENDIX A.

METHOD OF READING LATIN.

The teacher should see to it that the text is mastered in the order of the original, and not by finding first predicate, then subject, etc. To accomplish this, the following method is recommended.

When Lesson XXXIX. is reached, and before the "Text" is studied at all, let all the pupils of the class close their books and give exclusive attention to the teacher. He will write upon the board the first word of the "Text," **Ea**, and a colloquy something like what follows will ensue : —

Ea . . .

"What do you know about **ea**?" Ans. "It may be a nom. or accus. plur. neut. (cf. **ea** VII.), or the nom. sing. fem. of **eam** in **eam partem** XVII. It may be used independently with the full force of a noun like the former, or may be an adj. like the latter; cf. XXV. N. **1**. *c*."[1]

Now add the next word, and the text will stand : —

Ea rēs . . .

"**Rēs** is a nom. singular. We have never had, in the nom. sing., any word inflected just like **rēs**. What other forms of this word have we had?" Ans. "**Rēbus**, abl. plur., XXV. ; **rēs**, accus. plur., XXXII." — "What is the stem (cf. IX. **2**. 2) of the forms of this word which you have had?" Ans. "**Rē-**, for these two letters are common to all three of the forms which we know." — "How is the nom. formed from the stem?" Ans. "By adding **s**." — "Have we had any nouns

---

[1] The teacher will understand that several questions might be necessary to elicit this information. The purpose here is to show as briefly as possible how pupils may be led to gain mastery of the Latin for themselves. Be sure to draw out from your class these facts. Do not tell them the answers to the questions.

or adjs. before which form the nom. in this way?" Ans. "Yes, nouns
or adjs. like **omnis**, **cīvitās**, and **lex**." (Cf. XXX. N. 1.) — "What,
judging from **eās rēs** XXXII., is the gender of **rēs**?" Ans. "Fem.,
for it is limited by a fem. adjective." (Cf. VI. N. **2**, b). — "What
now seems a probable construction for **ea**?" Ans. "Nom. sing. fem.,
agreeing with **rēs**."— "What is the **rēs** referred to?" Ans. "Prob-
ably the action of Orgetorix described in the preceding chapter."

Ea rēs est . . .

"What is the subj. of **est**?" Ans. "**Rēs**, for it is a nom. case,
and has not the right position for either a predicate nom. or an
appositive, the only other uses which the nom. may have."

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs . . .

"What cases are possible for **Helvētiīs**?" Ans. "Dat. or abl.
plural." — "Do you know which it is?" Ans. "We do not."

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per . . .

"What do you know about **per**?" Ans. "It is a prep., takes the
accus., and means *through;* cf. **per populōs** XXXVII."

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium . . .

"Are you sure that **indicium** is the accus. after **per** because
it is the next word after it?" Ans. "No, the ending -**um** is
found in the gen. plur.; the object of a prep. does not always follow
it immediately (Cf. **in eōrum fīnibus** XII.), and **indicium** might be
a gen. plural."

Ea rēs est Helvetiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta.

"Are there more words in this sentence?" Ans. "No, we see
the period." — "What do you know of **ēnūntiāta**?" Ans. "From
ā before **t** we know that it is of the 1st. conjug.; from **t** before
the ending, that it is probably a pf. pass. partic.; and from final
-**a** that it is a nom. sing. fem., or nom. or accus. plur. neut.;
cf. **occupātō** XXXVII. N. **5**." — "What is its agreement?" Ans.
"It must be a nom. sing. fem.; agreement with **rēs**, for no other
agreement is possible in this sentence." — "**Enūntiāre** means *to
make known.* What now is clearly the case of **Helvētiīs**?" Ans. "It
must be a dat., for that case is appropriate with **ēnūntiāta** (Cf. **eī**
XXXIV., **illīs** XXXV.), while no abl. which we have had (Cf. XXXII.
N. **8**) could be used with the words in this sentence." —"**Indicium**

just before means strictly *information*. What now is the literal translation of the sentence?" Ans. "*This thing is having-been-made-known to-the-Helvetians through information*." — "What would be a freer and better translation?" Ans. "*This proceeding was made-known to-the-Helvetians by informers*."

"Let us take up the next sentence in the same way :" —

Mōribus . . . .

"What cases possible for this word?" Ans. "Dat. or abl. plural." — "It means *customs*."

Mōribus suīs . . .

"With what does **suīs** probably agree?" Ans. "With **mōribus**, for both must be either dat. or abl. plural." — "Why do they have different endings?" Ans. "Eecause, though of the same case, they are of different declensions." — "What is the meaning of **suīs**?" Ans. "We do not know, because we do not know the subject of the sentence." (Cf. XXXII. N. **10**.)

Mōribus suīs Orgetorigem . . .

"What is the case of **Orgetorigem**?" Ans. "The accusative." — "What two uses of the accus. have we had thus far?" Ans. "It is used as the object of a verb or as the subject of an infinitive."

The next phrase consists of a noun with a prep., and it should be worked out in the same way as **per indicium** above.

Mōribus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculīs causam . . .

"What is the case of **causam**?" Ans. "The accus. singular." — "Have we had the accus. before in this Lesson?" Ans. "Yes, in **Orgetorigem**." — "Is **causam** an appositive or predicate nom. with **Orgetorigem**?" Ans. "No, for it does not refer to the same thing." — "What construction is suggested for the two by such groups as **quam Gallōs obtinēre** XIII., **sē fīnīs habēre** XXVII.?" Ans. "That one is the subj., the other the obj., of an infinitive." — "Do we know from the order which is the subject, which the obj.?" Ans. "No, the order in **quam Gallōs** is obj. subj.; in **sē fīnēs**, subj. obj." (Cf. also **ūnam incolunt Belgae** II. and E. G. **76**. 3.)

Mōribus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculīs causam dīcere . . .

"We have now an inf. as we anticipated. For its meaning, cf. **dictum** XIII."

Mōribus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt.

"Where do we get the subj. of this verb?" Ans. "From its ending, for none of the words expressed could possibly be its subject." — "What is its voice and tense?" Ans. "Act. voice, pf. tense; cf. **dūx-ērunt** XXXII." — "The verb from which it is formed means *to compel* or *collect*; the preceding **vinculīs** means *bonds* or *chains*. What now appears to be the meaning beginning with **Orgetorigem**?" Ans. "*They compelled Orgetorix to say* (or *plead*) *his cause out-of chains* (better *in chains*)."[1] — "Which of the meanings possible for **mōribus** now seems most appropriate?" Ans. "*On-account-of* or *in-accordance-with*." — "What then is its case?" Ans. "Ablative." — "What kind of an abl.?" Ans. "An abl. of cause; cf. **rēbus** XXV."[2] — "What is the meaning of **suīs**?" Ans. "*Their*, for the verb **coēgērunt** has a plur. subj." — "Note how **coēgērunt** has unlocked the whole sentence for us."

The next sentence will be taken up in a more summary way.

Damnātum . . .

For questions and answers on this word, cf. those on **ēnūntiāta** above. "It agrees with **eum** understood. What is the case and antec. of this **eum**?"

Damnātum poenam . . .

Cf. questions and answers on **Orgetorigem causam** above.

Damnātum poenam sequī . . .

"**Sequī** is the expected infinitive. It is deponent of the 3d conjug. and means *to follow*. Note the ending **-ī**, and cf. the ending **-rī** in **potīrī** XXXVII. **Potīrī** is in the fourth conjug., which is distinguished by the characteristic (cf. XXX. Obs. **3**) **ī** before the inf.

---

[1] It will be seen from this translation that the accus. and inf. are somewhat differently used here from what they have been before. The accus. **Orgetorigem** is both object of the verb **coēgērunt** and subj. of the inf. **dīcere**, and the inf. is translated like an English inf., not like an indicative. The sense is, however, so obvious that the pupil need not at this point be troubled by the grammatical variation from indirect discourse, with which subject he is already familiar. The teacher may consult A. & G. **271**, *b*, and foot-note; H. **534**, foot-note 1; Whitney's English Grammar, **449**.

[2] The teacher should remember, however, that the ability to recognize and translate a form is of more importance than the knowledge of its name and classification.

ending. The pres. inf. pass. of the 1st and 2d conjugs. ends in -rī like that of the 4th. Note that before the ending -ī of **sequī** the final **e** of the stem disappears."

Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat . . .

" What is the mode and tense of **oportēbat**? It means *it-was-fitting.* For this translation of one verb by several English words, cf. **suppeteret** XXXI. Obs. **4.** For free translation up to this point, see page 387."

Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut . . .

" What mode has always followed this conj. **ut** in the text thus far?" Ans. "The subjunctive; cf. **ut . . . vagārentur** XXV., **ut . . . suppeteret** XXXI."

Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī . . .

" **Īgnī** is an abl. sing. Its nom. sing. is **īgnis**, *fire.* Note its ending **ī**. All adjs. in **-is** have commonly the abl. sing. ending -ī (like this noun form) in all genders. Supply it in the inflection of **omnis** XXIX. **2, 1**."

Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cremārētur.

" Voice, mode, tense, number, of **cremārētur**? **Cremāre** means *to burn.*" " How is **īgnī** translated?" "What preceding word does the clause **ut . . . cremārētur** explain?"

This method should be continued through every Lesson for several weeks. Such work is slow at first, but will soon grow easier and more rapid, since many of the questions will be so thoroughly impressed that they may be omitted. Note, (1) that it requires cautious, accurate thinking and alertness in thought; (2) that it shows how the order of the Latin words enables us to predict what is coming; (3) that it shows how the sense is dependent on forms and syntax, and hence is the best possible practical exercise in parsing; (4) that it is the only method by which the sense of the Latin can be taken in rapidly, or through the ear, just as the Romans themselves got it.

Occasionally written exercises containing questions similar to those above should be substituted for oral, to test the progress of the class, and constant translation at hearing as well as at sight, should be required.

The " Notes " of these " Lessons " will be adapted to this method.

APPENDIX B.

Notes on **B. G.** I. 21–29.

Chapter **21.**

certior factus . . . cōnsēdisse; cf. **certior factus trādūxisse** LXV. — **mīlia**; cf. XXVIII. N. **2.** — **mīsit**; its obj. understood would be some such word as **mīlitēs**; this obj. is the antec. of **quī**; for **quī cōgnōscerent**, cf. **quī dīcerent** LII.; the clauses **quālis esset nātūra** and **quālis (esset) ascēnsus** are indir. questions and the objs. of **cōgnōscerent**; cf. LXV. N. **2**, *c;* **quālis** is an interrogative adj., not an adverb. With what does it agree? — **facilem**; limits **ascēnsum** understood. — **dē tertiā vigiliā**; cf. LXV. Vocab. — **ducibus**; in apposition with **iīs.** — **ascendere**; cf. **ascēnsus** above, and XCIII. **2, 2,** *b.* — **sit**; the preceding **quid** is a substantive interrogative pron.; it is declined like the indefinite **quis**; see XCI. Obs. **1**; **cōnsiliī** is a predicate gen., *what is of his plan, what belongs to his plan, what his plan is;* cf. **tantī** XCII.; explain mode and tense of **sit.** — **ierant**; cf. LXV. N. **7.** — **habēbātur**; for meaning, cf. LXXX. N. **6,** *a;* **perītissimus**; **reī mīlitāris** depends upon it, *very experienced of military science,* where we should say in Eng. *very experienced in military science.* — **Sullae**; nom. **Sulla**, though a masculine noun; cf. III. N **4,** *d.* — **Crassī** depends on **exercitū**, supplied from what goes before.

Chapter **22.**

lūce; for form of nom., cf. XXXI. N. **5.** — **summus mōns**, *the top of the mountain,* not *the highest mountain;* cf. X. N. **2,** *b.* — **passibus**; for const., cf. LXXXI. N. **3,** *c,* Obs. **2**; limited by preceding **mīlle**, which is here an indecl. adj.; see A. & G. **94,** *e.* H. **178.** — **Labiēnī**; cf **Crassī**, Chap. **21.** What pron. is used in such cases in Eng. to supply the place of the omitted noun? — **equō admissō**, *(his) horse having been let go, with loose reins, at full speed;* the root meaning of **mittere** is *to let go;* distinguish **equus** from **eques, equitātus, equester.** — **voluerit**; a pf. subjv. of **vellent** LIV.; explain mode and tense — **cōgnōvisse**; give the exact words which Considius addressed to Caesar, **īnsīgnibus**, here

from the noun **īnsīgne**, *a distinguishing mark, decoration, uniform ;* cf.
the Gallic insignia on p. 228. — **praeceptum erat** : for mode, cf. XLI.
N. 10. — **nē . . . committeret, nisi . . . vīsae essent.** What were
the exact words of Caesar to Labienus ? Cf. LXXXV. N. 6. — **fieret** ;
voice ? Cf. **fīēbat** XXV. Vocab. ; why subjv. ? — **abstinēbat** ; for const.
of preceding **proeliō**, cf. XII. N. 3, *c, d.* — **multō diē**, *in the much day,
late in the day ;* why abl. ? — **prō vīsō**, *in place of (a thing) seen, as seen ;*
vīsō, in form a partic., is here a noun. — **quō cōnsuērat intervallō** =
intervallō quō cōnsuērat, *at the interval at which he was accustomed ;*
cf. **quae cīvitās est** for **cīvitās quae est** LIX.

Chapter 23.

diēī ; a gen. depending on **postrīdiē**, which is an adv., but was origi-
nally a noun, being contracted from **posterō diē**, *on the day after ;* see
A. & G. **214**, *g.* H. **398**, 5. — **Bibracte** ; nom. same as abl. ; see A. & G.
57, *d.* H. **63**, 2. — **aberat** ; for preceding **mīlibus**, cf. **passibus**, Chap.
22. — **exīstimāvit** ; for preceding **prōspiciendum**, cf. LIII. N. 3, *b ;* **reī
frūmentāriae**, *for the grain supply ;* dat. with **prōspiciendum (esse)** ;
cf. **rēspūblica, rēs familiāris, rēs mīlitāris, novae rēs.** — **contendit** ;
like the preceding **āvertit** has the same form in 3d sing. pres. ind. as in
pf. ind. ; cf. XCII. N. 6, *b ;* here probably pf. like preceding **exīstimāvit.**
— **seu** for **sīve.** — **eō magis quod** ; **magis** is used as the comparative
of **māgnopere** LXX. ; for whole expression, cf. **hōc facilius . . . quod**
XXII, **eō . . . minus . . . quod** LXXIII. — **sīve** ; cf. preceding
seu.

Chapter 24.

id animum advertit ; the last two words are usually written as one ;
cf. XC. and note also the difference in Lat. between the expressions mean-
ing *to notice* and *to punish ;* for two accusatives **id** and **animum**, cf. LXV.
N. **5**, *b.* — **quī sustinēret . . . mīsit** ; cf. other examples of the rel.
clause of purpose in LII., LXXIX., and Chap. **21**, and note that in all
these instances the antec. of the rel. is the obj. of the verb on which the
purpose clause depends. — **in mediō colle** ; *in the middle of the hill, i. e.
half way up*, not *in the middle of the summit ;* cf **multō diē**, Chap. **22.**
What important difference between the way of expressing the time in
which and the place in which ? — **[ita utī suprā]** ; in brackets because
it is doubtful whether these words belong in the text ; omit in transla-
tion. — **complērī** ; voice ? — **eum** ; antec. ? — **impedīmenta** ; from **im-
pedīre**, means *that which hinders (i. e. makes the march slow), the baggage*

train, including the beasts of burden; for **sarcinās**, above, see p. 332. — **cōnfertissimā aciē**, *in a very crowded line of battle;* why abl. ? difference in meaning between **aciēs** and **agmen** ?

TRIPLEX ACIĒS.

The little rectangles represent companies of soldiers. Why is this plan appropriate here? Show how such an arrangement of an army would secure both strength, and ease of movement. See Allen's " History of the Roman People," pp. 126, 127.

Chapter 25.

equīs : What does this word suggest as to the noun with which preceding **suō** agrees, and what const. for this noun is suggested by **remōtīs** ? — **aequātō perīculō**, lit. *the danger having been made equal,* freely, *by making the danger equal;* cf. **spē sublātā** XLIII. — **perfrēgērunt**; from **perfringere**. — **Gallīs . . . impedīmentō**; for const., cf. XC. N. 6. — **sē īnflēxisset**, *had bent itself, had become bent ;* the shields of soldiers standing next to each other were overlapped in forming the phalanx, and these shields, which were carried on the left arm, were pinned and held together by the Roman javelins; for the **scūta** here referred to, cf. pp. 228, 361, 364. — **sinistrā**; cf. **dextram** XCII. — **ēmittere**; for meaning, cf. **admissō**, Chap. 22 : **praeoptārent**, preceding, is a subjv. of result. — **mīlle passuum** ; **mīlle** is here a noun like **mīlia**; but cf. **mīlle** Chap. 22. — **eō**; here an adv. meaning *to that place, thither,* not the demonstrative pron. — **succēdentibus**; on the use of this pres. partic., cf. LXXXVIII. N. 10, Obs. 3. — **novissimīs praesidiō**; cf. **Gallīs impedīmentō**, above; **novissimīs** means *to those at the rear,* or simply *to the rear ;* the best Eng. for the whole expression ? **latere** ; from **latus** ; cf. **opere** LVI. ; the prep. is exceptionally omitted with this abl. of place. — **coepērunt** ; followed by **circumvenīre** as well as **īnstāre**. — **conversa sīgna . . . intulērunt**, *they bore in the turned about standards, they wheeled about and advanced.* Make a list of the military names and expressions in this and the preceding Chapter. — **resisteret**; used with the dat. ; **victīs**, from **vincere**, means *those conquered, the conquered ;* cf. **novissimīs**, above. Of what is the preceding **aciēs** the subj. ? — **venientēs** ; cf. **succēdentibus**. Note the large number of partics. in this Chap., and that in many cases the Eng. would have clauses instead. Make these partics. a special study, noting the difference in

meaning between those of dep. verbs and the others, and the variety of
Eng. translation required in rendering them idiomatically.   Trace, on the
plan of the battle, the movements described in this Chapter.

Chapter **26**.

pūgnātum est; used impersonally, lit. translated *it was fought*, freely
there was fighting ; the preceding adv. may be freely translated like an
adj. ; the preceding **ancipitī proeliō** is an abl. of manner ; **ancipitī** is
from nom. **anceps**. — **diūtius** is a comp. from **diū**. — **alterī . . . alterī**,
the one party . . . the other ; cf. XLVII. N. **1**. — **ab hōrā septimā** ;
the day from sunrise to sunset, whatever its length, was divided into
twelve equal hours, which must, of course, have varied in length with the
seasons ; cf., for the night, LXV., **vigilia**, in Vocab. — **pūgnātum sit** ; for
const., cf. LXXVIII. N. **2**, Obs. **8**. — **ad multam noctem** ; cf. **multō diē**,
Chap. **22**. — **prō vallō** ; *for, in place of, as, a rampart.* — **potītī sunt** ;
for case used with it, cf. XXI. — **ūnus ē fīliīs**, *one out of the sons, one
of the sons ;* see A. &. G. **216**, *c.* H. **397**, 3, N. 3, and foot-note 1. —
iērunt ; cf. **ierant**, Chap. **21**. — **Lingonas** ; cf. LXXV. N. **4**, *c* — **quī
. . . habitūrum**; cf. **sī . . . accidisset . . . exīstimātūrum** XCII. ;
force of the position of **quī** ? For omission of prep. with **locō**, cf. XLVII.
N. **6**. — **Helvētiōs** is the obj. of **habēret**, to be supplied ; **eōs** under-
stood, referring to **Lingonas**, is the obj. of **habitūrum (esse)** ; if the
Lingones harbored the enemies of the Romans, they would be regarded
as enemies by Caesar.

Chapter **27**.

convēnissent ; here transitive ; for translation and position of its subj.,
cf. **quī**, X. N. **1**, *e ;* LVIII. N, **3**, *b.* — **iūssisset** ; note the four subjvs. after
one conj., viz. **cum** ; **essent**, preceding, is subjv. in a subordinate clause
of indir. disc., **iūssisset** being a verb of saying. — **eō . . . pervēnit** ;
cf. **eō**, Chap. **25**. — **perfūgissent** ; for mode, cf. **essent**, above. — **ea
conquīruntur** ; ea, referring to **obsidēs, arma, servōs**, in preceding
sentence, is neut. because the *hostages* and *slaves* are here regarded as
things rather than men. — **hominum mīlia . . . pāgī** ; note the pos-
sessive and the partitive gen. depending on the same noun. — **perterritī** ;
limits **mīlia**, which, though grammatically neut., suggests the masc. **ho-
minēs** ; see A. & G. **187**, *d.* H. **438**, 6. — **afficerentur** ; for const., cf.
XCI. N. **3**. — **quod . . . exīstimārent** ; subjv. in indir. disc. ; Caesar
is here quoting two reports or perhaps two conjectures of his own in

regard to the departure of the Helvetians. — **prīmā nocte** ; *in the first of the night, in the early part of the night.* What other adjs. have been used, like **prīmā**, to designate a part of a thing ?

Chapter **28.**

resciit for **rescīvit**, from **rescīscere** ; for use of tense, cf. LXXXIII. N. **1.**—**imperāvit** ; takes what case ? LI. N. **8** ; for **quōrum**, preceding its antec. **his**, cf. **quae pars . . . ea** LXVII. ; **purgātī** ; nom., agreeing with subj. of **vellent** ; **sibi**, *to him, in his sight.* — **in numerō hostium**, lit. *in the number of enemies,* freely *as enemies ;* cf. **prō vallō**, Chap. **26.** — **unde**, *from which place, whence ;* cf. **ubi**, *where,* **ibi**, *there,* **eō**, *thither,* **inde**, *thence,* and E. G. **44** — **tolerārent** is here a result clause ; the preceding **quō = ut eō**, and has **nihil** as its antec., lit. *there was nothing (of such a sort) that they would by means of it endure hunger.* — **ipsōs** ; the antecs. are **Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latovīcōs.** — **nē . . . trānsīrent** ; a subjv. after the idea of fearing suggested in **nōluit** ; cf. XCI. N. **3**, Obs. **4.** — **Galliae prōvinciae** ; which of these two words is a dat. ? — **concessit** ; note the emphatic position of **Boiōs** ; it is the obj. of **collocārent**, of which the subj. is **Haeduī** understood ; **Haeduīs** is the dat. of indir. obj. after **concessit** ; for const. of **collocārent**, cf. **conquīrerent**, above ; for that of **virtūte**, cf. LIII. N. **4** ; **dedērunt**, pf. of **dare** ; antec. of preceding **quibus** and **illī** ? For force of **atque**, see A. & G **156**, *a,* last part ll. **554** l. 2, N. ; translated lit. *into an equal condition and they themselves were,* freely, *into the same condition as themselves.*

Chapter **29.**

lītterae ; this word in the plur. may mean either *letters of the alphabet, a letter* (*epistle*), or *literature ;* it is here used in the first sense. — **quibus in tabulīs** ; for repetition of antec., cf. **quibus itineribus** XLVI. — **exīsset** ; for form, cf. LXVI. N. **5** ; it is the verb of an indir question, the preceding **quī** being an interrogative adj. ; cf. **quās in partēs** LXXIX. ; for **domō**, cf. XLVI. N. **3.** — **senēs**, irreg., the nom. sing. is **senex** ; see A. & G. **61.** H. **66.** — **summa**, *sum,* here a noun ; the preceding **rērum** may be translated *items* — **erat . . . mīlia** ; **capitum**, *souls,* rather than *heads ;* a partitive gen. depending on **mīlia.** — **ad mīlia** ; **ad** is here an adv. meaning *about ;* note that **fuērunt** agrees with the predicate noun rather than with the subj. ; see A. & G. **204**, *b.* H. **462** ; cf., however, **summa erat mīlia**, above.

APPENDIX C.

WORD–LISTS.

Words occurring in the "Helvetian War" which occur five or more times in the First Book of Caesar's "Gallic War."
While studying the later Lessons, this list should be repeatedly reviewed.

-A Nouns.

1. amīcitia	4. cōpia	7. grātia	10. prōvincia
2. Belgae	5. fortūna	8. iniūria	11. summa
3. causa	6. Gallia	9. memoria	

-O Nouns.

1. ager	12. colloquium	23. lēgātus	34. rēgnum
2. amīcus	13. cōnsilium	24. Liscus	35. Rhēnus
3. animus	14. Divitiacus	25. locus	36. Rhodanus
4. annus	15. equus	26. Lūcius	37. Rōmānus
5. arma	16. frūmentum	27. Mārcus	38. Sēquanī
6. auxilium	17. Gallus	28. numerus	39. socius
7. bellum	18. Germānī	29. oppidum	40. solum
8. beneficium	19. Haeduī	30. pāgus	41. tēlum
9. carrus	20. Helvetiī	31. perīculum	42. Valerius
10. castra	21. imperium	32. populus	
11. concilium	22. Labiēnus	33. proelium	

3d Declension Nouns.

1. agmen	11. fīnis	21. mōns	31. pāx
2. Allobroges	12. flūmen	22. multitūdō	32. pēs
3. Caesar	13. frāter	23. nēmō	33. prīnceps
4. cīvitās	14. homō	24. nihil	34. ratiō
5. cōnsuētūdō	15. hostis	25. nox	35. salūs
6. cōnsul	16. iter	26. obses	36. tempus
7. diciō	17. iūs	27. ōrātiō	37. timor
8. Dumnorix	18. legiō	28. Orgetorix	38. virtūs
9. eques	19. mīles	29. pars	39. vīs
10. explōrātor	20. mīlia	30. pater	40. voluntās

-U Nouns.

1. adventus	3. equitātus	5. impetus	7. passus
2. domus	4. exercitus	6. manus	8. senātus

-E Nouns.

1. aciēs	2. diēs	3. fidēs	4. rēs	5. spēs

Verbs.

1st Conjugation (-ā verbs).

1. appellāre	6. dēspērāre	11. iūdicāre	16. postulāre
2. arbitrārī	7. ēnūntiāre	12. mandāre	17. pūgnāre
3. comparāre	8. existimāre	13. nūntiāre	18. putāre
4. cōnfirmāre	9. imperāre	14. occupāre	19. rogāre
5. dare	10. impetrāre	15. perturbāre	20. superāre

2d Conjugation (-ē verbs).

1. commovēre	4. habēre	7. obtinēre	10. perterrēre	13. respondēre
2. continēre	5. iubēre	8. oportet	11. pollicērī	14. tenēre
3. dēbēre	6. licet	9. persuādēre	12. prohibēre	15. vidēre

3d Conjugation (-e verbs).

1. accidere	13. cōnsidere	24. incolere	35. quaerere
2. accipere	14. cōnstituere	25. īnstruere	36. querī
3. addūcere	15. cōnsuēscere	26. intellegere	37. recipere
4. agere	16. contendere	27. intermittere	38. redūcere
5. animadvertere	17. dēligere	28. mittere	39. relinquere
6. capere	18. dīcere	29. ostendere	40. revertere
7. cōgere	19. discēdere	30. patī	41. sequī
8. cōgnōscere	20. dīvidere	31. pellere	42. statuere
9. colloquī	21. dūcere	32. perficere	43. trādūcere
10. committere	22. facere	33. petere	44. ūtī
11. cōnficere	23. gerere	34. proficīscī	45. vincere
12. conicere			

4th Conjugation (-ī verbs).

1. audīre	2. convenīre	3. pervenīre	4. reperīre	5. venīre

Irregular Verbs.

1. abesse	4. esse	7. īnferre	10. praeesse	13. trānsīre
2. coepisse	5. exīre	8. īre	11. referre	14. velle
3. cōnferre	6. ferre	9. posse	12. tollere	

ADJECTIVES.

Positive degree.

1. alius	6. nōnnūllus	11. reliquus	16. tōtus
2. alter	7. noster	12. Rōmānus	17. ūllus
3. barbarus	8. omnis	13. suus	18. ūnus
4. māgnus	9. paucus	14. tantus	19. uter
5. multus	10. quartus	15. tertius	20. uterque

Comparative degree.

1. amplior 2. gravior 3. māior 4. minor 5. plūs 6. superior

Superlative degree.

1. nōbilissimus 2. novissimus 3. plūrimus 4. prīmus 5. proximus 6. summus

ADVERBS.

Positive degree.

1. ante	4. iam	7. neque	10. quam	13. tamen
2. circiter	5. ibi	8. nōn	11. satis	14. tum
3. facile	6. ita	9. proptereā	12. tam	15. ubi

Comparative degree.

1. amplius 2. gravius 3. minus

Superlative degree.

1. maximē 2. prīmum

PRONOUNS.

1. aliquis	4. ille	7. quī
2. hīc	5. ipse	8. quis (*both indef. and inter.*)
3. īdem	6. is	9. suī

PREPOSITIONS.

1. ā	4. apud	7. ē	10. inter	13. prō	16. sub
2. ab	5. cum	8. ex	11. ob	14. propter	17. trāns
3. ad	6. dē	9. in	12. per	15. sine	

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. āc	5. cum	9. nam	13. quod
2. atque	6. dum	10. nē	14. sed
3. aut	7. et	11. -que	15. sī
4. autem	8. etiam	12. quīn	16. ut

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

———————◆———————

NOTE. — The following Vocabulary contains all the Latin words found in the first twenty-nine Chapters of Caesar's Gallic War.

It has been considered not only unnecessary, but hurtful to the student constantly to repeat in the Vocabulary facts which he should already know, and facts which are governed by those simple rules, a knowledge of which is essential to even an elementary use of the language. The repetition of such facts blinds the pupil to the existence of the rules which govern them, and destroys that self-reliance which is necessary to success in sight reading. Accordingly, the pupil has not been told with every recurrence of a noun in -tās that its gen. is -tātis, or with every recurrence of a verb in -āre that its pf. and partic. are in -āvit and -ātus. Exceptions to regular rules are always given. If the gen. of a noun in -us is not given, it is to be considered a masc. of the -o declension. A SUMMARY TREATMENT OF THE GENDER AND DECLENSION OF ALL 3D DECL. NOUNS WILL BE FOUND IN LESSON LXII.

A slight divergence from the usual method of giving the parts of verbs has been made. In the Text of Caesar, B. G. I. 1-29, neither the 1st sing. of the pres. ind. nor that of the pf. ind. is found at all. It would, then, be a serious departure from the inductive method to use these forms in giving the parts of every verb. Accordingly, the pres. ind. (except that of verbs in -iō of the 3d conjug.) has been omitted, and the 3d sing. of the pf. has been used instead of the 1st singular. The pf. pass. or fut. act. partic. has been used as one of the principal parts instead of the supine. The objections to the use of the latter have been well stated by Mr. Tetlow in the Preface to his *Inductive Lessons in Latin*. The forms selected as the principal parts in this book are those which are universally given as such in English and German.

In this connection it is not out of place to speak of the unfortunate convention by which the 1st sing. of the pres. ind. is used in naming verbs and in giving the principal parts. It seems only reasonable that a principal part should be a common form, and should show one of the stems of the verb. The 1st sing. of the pres. ind. is almost unknown in the narrative authors usually read by beginners; and in the 1st and 3d conjug. it does not show the pres. stem, and, therefore, in naming verbs, the 1st and 3d conjugs. are entirely undistinguished.

The words in parentheses are merely kindred with the leading word, and, in very many cases, are not the words from which this is derived. In so elementary a book, it has been thought unwise to discuss or use roots to any extent.

The full-faced numerals after a definition refer to Chapters of the text in which the word occurs. Where but one of these numerals is given it indicates the Chapter in which the word first occurs. By means of these figures the pupil is supplied with the means of reviewing the USE of every word, and of examining once more whatever is said about it in the Lesson in which it first occurs.

A.

A.; see **Aulus.**

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *from, by*; **1**; for use, cf. V.

abdere, -didit, -ditus, *to put away, hide*; **12.**

abdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead away*; **11.**

abesse, -fuit, -futūrus, *to be away* or *distant*; **1.**

abstinēre, -tinuit, -tentus, trans. and intrans., *to keep from*; **22.**

āc, another form for atque; it is used only before consonants; **3.**

accēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus, *to go to, approach, be added*; **accēdit quod** or **ut,** *it is added that, moreover*; **19.**

accidere, -cidit (ad and **cadere,** *to fall*), *fall upon, fall out, happen* (used generally of unfortunate occurrences, hence Eng. *accident*); **14.**

accipere (accipiō), -cēpit, -ceptus, *to take to one's self, receive, accept*; **3.**

accurrere, -currit (or **-cucurrit**), *to run to, run up*; **22.**

accūsāre (ad and **causa**), *to call to account, blame, accuse*; **16.**

aciēs, -ēī, *a sharp edge, a sharp glance, a battle line* (presenting sharp weapons); see p. 397; **22.**

ācriter, *sharply, fiercely*; **26.**

ad, prep., *to, toward, near*; **1.**

addūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead to, draw to, induce*; **3.**

adesse, -fuit, -futūrus, *to be near, be present, assist*; **16.**

adficere; see **afficere.**

adfīnitās; see **affīnitās.**

adgredī; see **aggredī.**

adhibēre, *to hold, summon, employ*; **20.**

admīrārī, *to wonder at, admire*; **14.**

admittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to let go to, send to, allow*; **22.**

adorīrī, -ortus, *to rise against, attack*; **13.**

adscīscere, -scīvit, -scītus, *to take to one's self, unite*; **5.**

adulēscentia, *youth*; **20.**

adventus, -ūs, *a coming to, approach*; **7.**

adversus (in form the pf. partic. of **advertere**), *turned toward, in front of, adverse, unfavorable*; **18.**

advertere, -vertit, -versus, *to turn to* or *toward*; **24.**

aedificium, *a building*; **5.**

aegerrumē or **aegerrimē,** adv. in sup., *with the greatest trouble*; **13.**

Aemilius, a Roman name; **23.**

aequāre, *to make equal*; **25.**

afficere (adficiō), -fēcit, -fectus, *to do to* (somebody), *affect*; **2.**

affīnitās (fīnēs), *nearness, relationship by marriage*; **18.**

ager, agrī, *field, territory*; **2.**

agere, ēgit, āctus, *to set in motion, drive, do, discuss*; **13.**

aggredī (aggredior), -gressus (ad and **gradī**), *to go towards, attack*; **12.**

agmen (agere), *that which is set in motion, an army on the march, a line* (of march); **novissimum agmen,** *the newest* or *last line, the rear*; **15.**

alere, aluit, altus or **alitus,** *to nourish, support*; **18.**

aliēnus (alius), *belonging to another, foreign, unfavorable*; **15.**

aliquī, indefinite adj., *any*; **14.**

alius, -a, -ud (gen. **-īus,** dat. **-ī**), adj. or pron., *one of any number, another*; **1.**

Allobroges, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province; **6, 10, 11, 14, 28.**

Alpēs, *the Alps*; **10.**

alter, -era, -erum, adj. or pron., *one of two, the other*; **2.**

altitūdō, *height, depth*; **8.**

altus, *high* or *deep*; **2.**

amīcitia, *friendship*; 3.

amīcus, *friend*; 3.

āmittere, **-mīsit**, **-missus**, *to let* (a thing) *go away*, *send away*, *lose*; 28.

amor (**amāre**), *love*, *desire*; 20.

Ambarrī, *a Gallic tribe*; 11, 14.

amplē, *largely*, *greatly*; 23.

amplus, *ample*, *much*, *great*; 15.

anceps, **-cipitis** (**ambo**, *both* and **caput**, *a head*), *having a head on both sides*, *double*, *doubtful*; 26.

angustiae, **-ārum** (**angustus**), *narrowness*, *straits*, *a narrow pass*; 9.

angustus, *narrow*; 2.

animadvertere (**animum**, **ad**, and **vertere**), *to turn the mind or attention to*, *notice* (in this sense takes simple accus.); **in hominem animadvertere**, *to punish a man*; 19.

animus, *soul*, *mind*, *feeling*, *courage*; 1.

annus, *a year*; 3.

annuus, *annual*, *for a year*; 16.

ante, adv., and prep. with accus., *before*; 3.

anteā, adv., *before*; 17.

antīquus (**ante**), *old*, *ancient*, *former*; 18.

aperīre, **-peruit**, **-pertus**, *to uncover*, *open*; the partic. **apertus** is commonly used as a simple adj. meaning *uncovered*, *open*; 25.

appellāre, *to call* (*by name*); 1.

Aprīlis (probably from **aperīre**, *to open*), *of the month of April*, *April*; 6.

apud, prep. with accus., *among*, *near*, *with*; 2.

Aquilēia, *a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea*; 10.

Aquītānī, *the Aquitanians*; 1.

Aquītānia, *Aquitania*; 1.

Arar or **Araris** (**Ararim** accus., and **Ararī** abl., are found), *the name of a Gallic river*, *the Saône*; 12.

arbitrārī, *to judge*, *think*; 2.

arma, nom. plur. neut., *armor*, *arms*; see pp. 228 and 238; 4.

ascendere or **adscendere**, **-scendit**, **-scēnsus** (**ad** and **scandere**), *to climb up*, *ascend*; 21.

ascēnsus or **adscēnsus**, **-ūs**, *a climbing up*, *ascent*; 21.

atque, *and*, *and also*; 1.

attingere (**ad** and **tangere**, *to touch*), **-tigit**, **-tactus**, *to touch upon*, *reach*; 1.

auctōritās, *advice*, *authority*, *influence*; 3.

audācia (**audāx**), *boldness*, *audacity*; 18.

audācter, *boldly*; 15.

audēre, **ausus est**, *to dare*; 18.

augēre, **auxit**, **auctus**, trans., *to increase*; 18.

Aulus, *a Roman first*, or *individual, name*; generally represented in Lat. authors by the initial **A.**; 6.

aut, *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*; 1.

autem, *but*, *moreover*; 2.

auxilium, *help*, *aid*; in plur. *auxiliary troops*; 11.

āvertere, **-vertit**, **-versus**, *to turn away*; 16.

avus, *grandfather*; 12.

B.

Belgae, *the Belgians*; 1.

bellāre, *to war*, *wage war*; 2.

bellicōsus (**bellum**), *warlike*; 10.

bellum, *war*; 1.

beneficium (**bene**, *well*, and **facere**), *well-doing*, *a favor*; 9.

Bibracte (has the same form in nom., accus. and abl.), *the name of a town*; 23.

biduum, *the space of two days*, *two days*; 23.

biennium (**bis**, *twice*, and **annus**), *the space of two years*; 3.

bipartītō, adv. (**bis**, *twice*, and **pars**), *in two parts*; **25**.

Bituriges, a Gallic tribe; **18**.

Bōiī, a tribe which joined the Helvetians; **5, 25, 28, 29**.

bonitās, *goodness*; **28**.

bonus, *good*; **6**.

brāchium, *the fore-arm, the arm*; **25**.

C.

C.; see **Cāius**.

cadere, cecidit, cāsūrus, *to fall*; **15**.

Caesar, -is, full name **Gāius Iūlius Caesar**, a great Roman, — writer, general, statesman; **7**.

Cāius, more correctly written **Gāius**, a Roman first name, usually represented by **C.**; **19**.

calamitās, *disaster, calamity*; **12**.

capere (capiō), cēpit, captus, *to take*; **1**.

captīvus, *a captive*; **22**.

caput, -itis, *a head*; **29**.

carrus, *a cart*; **3**.

Cassiānus, adj., *pertaining to Cassius*; **13**.

Cassius, a Roman name; **7, 12**.

castellum, *a small fort, a castle*; see p. 251; **8**.

Casticus, a noble Sequanian; **3**.

castra, -ōrum (the sing. **castrum**, *a fortress*, is not found in Caesar), *a camp*; see p. 285; **12**.

cāsus, ūs (**cadere**, *to fall*), *a falling, accident, misfortune, chance*; **12**.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, masc., a Gallic name; **3**.

Caturigēs, an Alpine tribe; **10**.

causa, *cause, reason*; **1**.

cavēre, cāvit, cautus, *to take care, beware of*; **14**.

celeriter, adv. (**celerius, celerrimē**), *quickly*; **18**.

Celtae, *the Celts*; **1**.

cēnsus, -ūs (**cēnsēre**, *to reckon*), *a numbering* or *rating, a census*; **29**.

Centrōnēs, an Alpine tribe; **10**.

centum, indecl., *one hundred*; **2**.

certus, *sure, certain*; **hominem certiōrem facere**, *to inform a man*; **7**.

cibārius, adj., *pertaining to food*; **cibāria**, neut. plur. as noun, *provisions*; **5**.

circiter, adv., *about*; **15**.

circuitus, -ūs (**circum** and **īre**), *a going around, a circuit*; **21**

circum, prep. with accus., *around, about*; **10**.

circumvenīre, -vēnit, -ventus, *to come around, surround, impose upon, circumvent*; **25**.

citerior, adj. in comp. (positive not found), *nearer, hither*; **10**.

citrā, prep. with accus., *on this side of*; **12**.

cīvitās, *citizenship, a state, the body-politic*; **2**.

claudere, clausit, clausus, *to close*; **25**.

cliēns, *a client, dependent*; **4**.

coëmere (**con** and **emere**), **-ēmit, -emptus**, *to buy up*; **3**.

coepit, coepisse (*he, she, it*) *began*; it lacks the present system; **15**.

coërcēre, *to enclose on all sides, restrain, coerce*; **17**.

cōgere, coēgit, coāctus (**con**, *together*, and **agere**, *to drive, lead*), *to drive together, collect, compel*; **4**.

cōgnōscere, cōgnōvit, cōgnitus, *to learn thoroughly*; **cōgnōvit**, *he has learned, he knows*; **19**.

cohortārī, *to urge strongly, encourage*; **25**.

colligāre, *to fasten together*; **25**.

collis, masc. by exception, *a hill*; **22**.

collocāre, *to place together, set up, establish*; **18**.

colloquī, -locūtus, *to confer, converse*; **19**.

combūrere, -būssit, -būstus, *to burn up, consume* ; 5.

commeāre, *to go back and forth, resort ;* with ad, *to visit;* 1.

commemorāre, *to call to mind, to mention ;* 14.

committere, -mīsit, -missus, *to cause to go together, commit, cause ;* 13 , proelium committere, *to join battle.*

commodē, adv. (con and modus, *a measure*), *in due measure, conveniently ;* 25.

commonefacere (com-mone-faciō), -fēcit, -factus, *to bring to mind ;* also with accus. of the person, *to remind, to impress upon ;* 19.

commovēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, *to move deeply ;* 3.

commūnīre, *to fortify strongly ;* 8.

commūtāre, *to change entirely ;* 23.

commūtātiō (mūtāre, *to change*), *a changing, change ;* 14.

comparāre (con, intensive, and parāre), *to prepare with zeal ;* 3.

comperīre, -perit, -pertus, *to find out certainly* (by searching) ; 22.

complectī, -plexus, *to embrace ;* 20.

complēre, -plēvit, -plētus, *to fill out, complete ;* 24.

complūrēs (complūra or com-plūria, neut.), *many, very many;* 8.

comportāre, *to bring together ;* 16.

cōnārī, *to try ;* 3.

cōnātum, *a thing attempted, an attempt, undertaking ;* 3.

cōnātus, -ūs, *an attempt ;* 8.

concēdere, -cessit, -cessus, *to go away, yield ;* 7.

concīdere, -cīdit, -cīsus (con, intensive, and caedere, *to cut*), *to cut to pieces, kill ;* 12.

conciliāre, *to bring together, win over ;* 3.

concilium, *an assembly, council ;* 18.

concursus, -ūs (con and currere, *to run*), *a running together ;* 8.

condiciō and, less correctly, con-ditiō (condīcere), *an agreement, condition ;* 28.

condōnāre, *to give up, pardon ;* 20.

condūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to bring together, hire ;* 8.

cōnferre, -tulit, collātus, *to bring together, collect, compare ;* 16 ; sē cōnferre, *to betake one's self.*

cōnfertus (cōnfercīre, *to cram together*), *pressed together, crowded ;* 24.

cōnficere, -fēcit, -fectus (con and facere), *to accomplish, complete ;* 3.

cōnfīdere, -fīsus est (with act. meaning), *to trust fully, confide in ;* 23.

cōnfirmāre, *to strengthen, establish, encourage, affirm ;* 3.

cōnicere or cōniicere (cōniciō), -iēcit, -iectus, *to throw or put together, conjecture, hurl with force ;* 26.

coniūrātiō (con and iūrāre, *to swear, take oath*), *a swearing together, a conspiracy ;* 1.

conligāre ; see colligāre.

conquīrere, -quīsīvit, -quīsītus (con and quaerere), *to search for ;* 27.

cōnsanguineus, adj. or noun (con and sanguis, *blood*), *akin by blood, a kinsman ;* 11.

cōnscīscere, -scīvit, -scītus, *to decree, determine ;* 4.

cōnscius (con, *with,* and scīre, *to know*), *knowing with one's self or with others, conscious ;* 14.

cōnscrībere, -scrīpsit, -scrīptus, *to write together, enroll ;* 10.

cōnsequī, -secūtus, *to follow up, to obtain ;* 13.

cōnsīdere, -sēdit, -sessūrus, *to sit down* (used especially of a large number), *to hold a session, to encamp ;* 21.

deinde (dē and inde), *from thence, thereafter, next*; 25.

dēlīberāre (dē and lībrāre, *to weigh*), *to weigh well, ponder*; 7.

dēligere, -lēgit, -lēctus, *to choose from, select*; 3.

dēminuere, -minuit, -minūtus (dē and minus), *to lessen*; 18.

dēmōnstrāre, *to show*; 11.

dēmum, adv., *at last*; 17.

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally*; 22.

dēpōnere, -posuit, -positus, *to place aside, lay aside*; 14.

dēpopulārī, *to lay waste*; 11.

dēprecātor (dēprecārī, *to beg off, to intercede*), *an intercessor, mediator*; 9.

dēsīgnāre (sīgnum, *a mark*), *to mark out, point out, describe*; 18.

dēsistere, -stitit, -stitūrus, *to stand off, desist*; 8.

dēspērāre, *to be hopeless, despair*; 18.

dēspicere (dēspiciō), -spēxit, -spectus, *to look down upon, to despise*; 1.

dēstituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, *to set away from, abandon*; 16.

dēstringere, -strinxit, -strictus, *to strip off*; of a sword, *to strip of the scabbard, unsheathe, draw*; 25.

dēterrēre, *to frighten away from, to deter*; 17.

deus, *a god*; 12.

dexter, -tera, -terum, or more frequently -tra, -trum, *the right*; dextra (manus, fem., *the hand*, being understood), *the right hand*; 20.

dīcere, dīxit, dictus, *to say, tell*; 1.

dictiō (dīcere), *a saying, pleading*; 4.

didicit; see discere.

diēs, -ēī, masc., sometimes fem., *day, time*; 4.

differre, distulit, dīlātus, *to bear apart, differ*; 1.

difficilis, *difficult*; 6.

dīmittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to send apart, dismiss*; 18.

discēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus, *to go apart, depart*; 14.

discere, didicit, *to learn*; 13.

disicere or disiicere (disiciō), -iēcit, -iectus, *to cast apart*; 25.

dispōnere, -posuit, -positus, *to place apart, place here and there*; 8.

dītissimus, *richest*; 2.

diū, adv., *long* (used of time, not of space); 14.

diūturnus (diū), *long* (of time); 14.

Dīvicō, a Helvetian; 13, 14.

dīvidere, -vīsit, -vīsus, *to divide*; 1.

Dīvitiacus, a Haeduan; 3, 16, 18, 20.

dolēre, doluit, *to feel pain, grieve for*; 14.

dolor, *pain, grief*; 2.

dolus, *craft, deceit*; 13.

domus, -ūs, fem. (has some forms of the -o decl.), *a house, a home*; 5; domī, *at home*.

dubitāre, *to doubt, to hesitate*; 17.

dubitātiō, *doubt*; 14.

dubius, *doubtful*; 3.

ducentī (duo and centum), *two hundred*; 2.

dūcere, dūxit, ductus, *to lead, draw, consider*; 13.

dum, conj., *while, until*; 7.

Dumnorix, -igis, a Haeduan; 3, 9, 18–20.

duo, duae, duo, irreg., *two*; 6.

duodecim (duo and decem), indecl., *twelve*; 5.

dux, -cis (dūcere), *a leader*; 13.

E.

ē; 5; see ex.

ēdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead out*; 10.

effēmināre, *to make effeminate, enervate*; 1.

efferre, extulit, ēlātus, *to bear out ;* 5.

ēgit ; see **agere.**

ego, *I ;* 14 ; see **mihi, mē, nōs.**

ēgredī (ēgredior), -gressus, *to go out :* 27.

ēgregius (ē and **grex, -gis,** *a herd*), *out of the (common) herd,* hence, *eminent, excellent ;* 19.

emere, ēmit, emptus, *to buy ;* 16.

ēmittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to let go forth, send out ;* 25.

enim, *for :* placed generally after the first word of the clause ; 14.

ēnūntiāre, *to speak out* or *openly, make known ;* 4.

eō ; see **īre.**

eō, adv., *to that place, thither ;* 25.

eōdem, adv., *to the same place ;* 4.

eques, equitis (equus, *a horse*), *a horseman, a knight ;* see p. 321 ; 15.

equester, equestris, equestre, adj., *belonging to a horseman, cavalry ;* 18.

equitātus, -ūs, *a collection of horsemen, cavalry ;* 15.

equus, *a horse ;* 22.

ēripere (ēripiō), -ripuit, -reptus, *to snatch away ;* 4.

esse (sum), fuit, futūrus, *to be ;* 1.

et, *and ;* 1 ; **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etiam, *even, also ;* 1.

ēvellere, -vellit, -vulsus, *to tear out ;* 25.

ex or **ē,** prep. with abl., *out of, from ;* 2 ; **ex** is used before both vowels and consonants, **ē** only before consonants.

excipere, (-cipiō), -cēpit, ceptus, *to take out,* to catch up, to receive ;* 25.

exemplum, *an example ;* 8.

exercitus, -ūs, *an exercised and disciplined body, an army ;* see p. 269 ; 3.

exīre, -iit, -itum, *to go out ;* 2.

exīstimāre (ex and **aestimāre),** *to estimate, think ;* 6.

exīstimātiō (exīstimāre), *estimation, opinion ;* 20.

expedīre, *to set free from* (something) ; the pf. pass. partic. is commonly used like an adj. in all respects, and means *unencumbered, without baggage, open ;* 6.

explōrātor (explōrāre, *to search out*), *a spy, a scout ;* 12.

expūgnāre, *to take by storm ;* 11.

exsequī, -secūtus, *to follow out, follow up, enforce,* 4.

exspectāre, *to wait for, expect ;* 11.

extrā, prep. with accus., *beyond ;* 10.

extrēmus, *outermost, extreme, the end of ;* 1.

exūrere, -ussit, -ūstus, *to burn out, burn up ,* 5.

F.

facere (faciō), fēcit, factus, *to make* or *do ;* 2.

facile, adv., *easily ;* 2.

facilis (facere), *capable of being done, easy ;* 6.

facultās, *opportunity ;* 7.

famēs, -is, *hunger ;* 28.

familia, *a body of slaves, household, retinue ;* 4.

familiāris (familia), *belonging to the household, private, intimate ;* 18 ; as noun, *a friend ;* 19.

favēre, fāvit, fautūrus, *to favor ;* takes dat of person ; 18.

ferē, adv., *almost ;* 1.

ferre, tulit, lātus, irreg , *to bear ;* 13.

ferrum, *iron ;* 25.

fidēs, -eī, *faith, a promise, a promise of protection, protection ;* 3.

fierī, factus, *to be made, to be done, to happen :* used as pass. of simple verb **facere,** but not when **facere**

is compounded with a preposition ; 2.

fīlia, *daughter* ; 3.

fīlius, *son* ; 3.

fīnis, masc. by exception, *the end* ; in plur. *boundaries, territory* ; 1.

fīnitimus (fīnēs), *bordering upon, neighboring* ; plur. as noun, *neighbors* ; 2.

firmus, *firm, strong* ; 3.

flāgitāre, *to ask repeatedly* or *earnestly* ; 16.

flēre, flēvit, flētus, *to weep* ; 20.

fluere, flūxit, fluxus, *to flow* , 6.

flūmen, *a river* ; 1.

fortis, *brave* ; 1.

fortitūdō (fortis), *bravery* ; 2

fortūna, *fortune* (either good or bad) ; in plur *goods, possessions* ; 11.

fossa, *that which has been dug, a ditch* ; 8.

frāter, -tris, *brother* ; 3.

frāternus, *of a brother, brotherly, fraternal* ; 20.

frīgus, -oris, *cold, coldness* ; 16.

frūctus, -ūs (fruī, *to enjoy)*, *enjoyment, what one enjoys, fruit* ; 28.

frūmentārius (frūmentum), *belonging to grain, fruitful* ; 10.

frūmentum, *grain* ; 3.

fuga, *flight* ; 11.

fugitīvus, *a runaway, deserter* , 23.

fuit ; 2 ; see **esse**.

G.

Gabīnius, a Roman name, 6.

Gāius ; see **Cāius**.

Gallus, *a Gaul* ; 1.

Gallia, *Gaul* ; 1.

Gallicus, *Gallic* ; 22.

Garumna, masc., *the Garumna* ; 1.

Genāva or **Genua**, *Geneva* ; 6.

gerere, gessit, gestus, *to carry on, wage, do* ; 1.

Germānī, *the Germans* ; 1.

gladius, *a sword* ; see p. 335 ; 25.

glōria, *glory* ; 2.

glōriārī, *to boast, glory* ; 14.

Graecus, adj., *Greek* ; as a noun, *a Greek* ; 29.

Grāiocelī, an Alpine tribe ; 10.

grātia, *favor* either shown or received, hence, either *kindness* or *popularity* ; 9.

graviter, *heavily, severely* : **graviter ferre**, *to bear heavily, be annoyed at, be angry at* ; 14.

H.

habēre, *to have, hold* ; 2.

Haeduus, *a Haeduan* ; 3.

Helvētius, adj. or noun, *Helvetian, of the Helvetians, an Helvetian* ; 1.

hībernus (hiems, *winter)*, *belonging to winter* ; **hīberna, -ōrum** (with **castra** understood), *winter quarters* ; 10.

hīc, haec, hōc, *this* ; 1.

hiemāre, *to pass the winter, winter* ; 10.

Hispānia, *Spain* : 1.

homō, -inis, *a human being, man* ; 2.

honor, *honor, office* ; 18.

hōra, *an hour* ; 26.

hortārī, *to urge* ; 19.

hostis, *a stranger, an enemy* ; in plur. *the enemy* : 11.

hūmānitās, *refinement* ; 1.

I.

iactāre, *to throw about* ; when used of words, *to discuss* ; 18.

iam, adv., *at this time* (as contrasted with the past or future), *at last, already* ; 5.

ibi, *there* : 10 ; cf. **ubi**, *where, when*.

ictus, -ūs (icere, *strike)*, *a blow* ; 25.

īdem, eadem, īdem, *the same* ; 3.

Īdūs, ·uum, fem. by exception, *the Ides*, the 13th of the month, except in March, May, July, and Oct., when they came on the 15th; 7.

ierant, for īverant, from īre.

īgnis, masc. by exception, *fire*; 4.

īgnōrāre (in neg. and root of (g)nōs-cere), *not to know, be ignorant*; 27.

ille, illa, illud, *that*; used of what is remote in contrast to what is near; 3.

illīc (ille), *in that place, there, yonder*; 18.

immortālis (in neg. and mors), *undying, immortal*; 12.

impedīmentum (impedīre), *that which impedes, a hindrance*; in plur. *the heavy baggage of an army* (including the beasts which drew it); 24, cf. sarcinae.

impedīre, pedīvit, -pedītus (in, *against*, and pēs, *foot*), *to impede, to place at a disadvantage*; 12.

impendēre, no pf. nor pf. partic., intrans., *to overhang*, 6.

imperāre, *to command*; prōvinciae mīlitēs imperāre, *to give orders to the province for soldiers, to levy soldiers upon the province*; 7.

imperium, *supreme power*; 2.

impetrāre, *to obtain one's request*, 9.

impetus, ·ūs (in prep. and petere), *an attack*; 22.

importāre, *to bring in, import*; 1.

improbus, *beyond* or *below the proper standard, base, excessive, wicked*; 17.

imprōvīsō, adv. (in neg., prō, *before, fore*, vīsus, *seen*), *unexpectedly*, 13.

impūne, adv., *without punishment, with impunity*; 14.

impūnitās, *impunity*; 14.

in, prep., *into*, with accus.; *in*, with abl.; 1.

incendere, ·cendit, -cēnsus, *to set fire to*; cf. combūrere; 5.

incitāre, *to urge on, incite*; 4.

incolere, -coluit (in prep. and co-lere, *to cultivate*), *to inhabit*; intrans., *to dwell*; 1

incommodus, *inconvenient*; as a noun in the neut., *an inconvenience*, a mild term for *misfortune*; 13.

incrēdibilis (in neg. and crēdere, *to believe*), *not to be believed, incredible, remarkable*; 12.

inde, *from that place, thence*; cf. ibi, *there*; 10.

indicium, *information*; 4.

indūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead into, induce*; 2.

īnferior, *lower*; 1.

īnferre, intulit, illātus, *to bear into* or *upon, to wage upon, to bring*, or *inflict, upon*; 2.

īnflectere, -flēxit, -flectus, *to bend*; 25.

īnfluere, -flūxit, -fluxūrus, *to flow*, or *flow into*; 8.

inimīcus (in neg. and amīcus), *unfriendly*; 7.

initium, *beginning*; 1.

iniūria, *injustice, wrong*; 7.

iniūssū, found only in abl., *without command*; 19.

inopia (in neg. and ops, *help*; cf. cōpia, from con and ops), *want, scarcity, helplessness*; 27.

inopīnāns, adj., *unexpecting, unaware*; 12.

īnsciēns (in neg. and scīre, *to know*), simple adj., though pres. partic. in form, *not knowing, unaware*; 19.

īnsequī, ·secūtus, *to follow up*; 15.

īnsidiae, nom. plur. (in, *in*, and sedēre, *to sit*), *an ambush, treachery*; 13.

īnsīgnis (in, *upon*, and sīgnum, *a mark*), *marked, remarkable*; 12; īn-sīgne, neut. as noun, *a mark, badge of office, uniform*; 22.

īnsolenter (in neg. and solēre, *to be accustomed*), *strangely, insolently*; 14.

īnstāre, -stitit, -stātūrus, *to stand upon, to approach, to be near at hand, to press upon*; 16.

īnstituere, -stituit, -stitūtus, *to arrange, construct, instruct*; 14.

īnstitūtum, *custom, institution*; 1.

īnstruere, -strūxit, -structus, *to build into, set in order, draw up*; 22.

intellegere or -ligere, -lēxit, -lēctus (inter, *between*, and legere, *to choose*), *to understand, to know*; 10.

inter, prep. with accus., *between, among*, 1.

intercēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus, *to go between, intervene*; 7.

interclūdere, -clūsit, -clūsus (inter, *between*, and claudere, *to shut*), *to shut off, cut off*; 23.

interdiū, adv., *by day*; 8.

interdum, adv., *sometimes*; 14.

intereā, adv., *meanwhile*; 8.

interesse, -fuit, -futūrus, *to be between or among, to take part in*; 15; interest, *it makes a difference, it interests*.

interficere (interficiō), -fēcit, -fectus, *to kill*; 12.

interim, *meanwhile*; 16.

intermittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to cause to go between, leave off, interrupt*; 26.

internĕciō, *destruction, extermination*; 13.

interpres, -etis, *an interpreter*; 19.

intervāllum (inter, *between*, and vāllum, *the breastwork of a camp*), *a distance between, an interval*; 22.

intulit; see īnferre.

invītus, *unwilling*; 8.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive or emphatic pron., *self*; 1.

īre (eō, *I go*), īvit, itum, *to go*; 6.

is, ea, id, dem. pron., *this, that; he she, it*; 1.

ita, adv., *so*; 11.

Italia, *Italy*; 10.

itaque, *and so, therefore*; 9.

item, adv., *likewise, also*; 3.

iter, itineris, neut., *journey, route, march*; 3.

iubēre, iussit, iussus, *to order*; 5.

iūdicāre, *to judge*; 12.

iūdicium, *a judgment, a trial, a court of justice*; 4.

iugum, *that which joins, a yoke* (conquered armies, in token of submission, were often compelled to pass under a yoke consisting of a spear set on two uprights, cf. Eng. *subjugate*); *a (yoke-shaped) hill, a ridge*, 7.

iūmentum, *a yoke or draught animal, beast of burden*; 3.

iungere, iūnxit, iūnctus, *to join*; 8.

Iūra, a mountain chain extending from the Rhone to the Rhine; 2.

iūs, iūris, *right, law, justice*; 4.

iūsiūrandum (really two words, iūs and iūrandum, and declined as two), *an oath*; 3.

iūstitia (iūstus, *just*), *justice, sense of justice, uprightness*; 19.

iuvāre, iūvit, iūtus, *to help*; 26; iuvat, impersonal, *it pleases*.

K.

Kalendae, -ārum, *the Calends, the first day of a month*; 6.

L.

L.; see Lūcius.

Labiēnus, a lieutenant of Caesar; 10, 21.

lacessere, lacessīvit or lacessiit, lacessītus, *to provoke, assail*; 15.

lacrima, *a tear*; 20.

lacus, -ūs, *a lake*; 2.

largīrī, largītus, *to give bountifully, give bribes* ; **18.**

largiter, *largely, bountifully ;* **18.**

largītiō, *lavish giving, bribery, liberality ;* **9.**

lātē, *widely ;* **2.**

lātitūdō, *width ;* **2.**

Latovīcī, a Germanic tribe which joined the Helvetians ; **5, 28, 29.**

lātus, *wide, broad ;* **2.**

latus, -eris, *a side ;* **25.**

lātus, pf. pass. partic. of **ferre.**

lēgātiō, *embassy ;* **3** ; cf. **lēgātus,** *ambassador.*

lēgātus, *lieutenant, ambassador ;* **7.**

legiō, *a legion ;* the Roman legion was a body of soldiers, numbering in the army of Caesar about 3600 men ; **7.**

Lemannus, the name of a lake, *Leman* or *Geneva ;* **2.**

lēnitās (**lēnis,** *smooth*), *smoothness, gentleness ;* **12.**

lēx, lēgis, *law :* **1.**

līberālitās (**līber,** *free*), *the quality of a freeman, generosity ;* **18.**

līberē (from adj. **līber**), *freely ;* **18.**

līberī (the sing., meaning *child,* not found), *children ;* **11.**

lībertās, *freedom, liberty ;* **17.**

licērī, *to bid* (at an auction) ; **18.**

licet, *it is permitted ;* **eī licet,** *it is permitted to him, he may :* **7.**

Lingones (has a Greek accus. **Lingonas**), a Gallic tribe living near the head-waters of the Seine ; **26.**

lingua, *a tongue, language ;* **1.**

linter, -tris, fem. by exception, *a boat ;* **12.**

Liscus, a Haeduan ruler ; **16, 17, 18.**

littera or **lītera,** *a written sign, a letter of the alphabet ;* in plur. *letters, a letter* (*epistle*), *literature ;* **26.**

locus, *a place ;* **loca,** nom. plur. (as if from nom. sing. **locum**) ; **2.**

longē, adv., *far ;* **1.**

longitūdō, *length ;* **2.**

loquī, locūtus, *to speak ,* **20.**

Lūcius, a Roman first name, usually represented by **L.** ; **6.**

lūx, lūcis, *light ;* **22.**

M.

M. ; see **Mārcus.**

magis (comp. of **māgnopere**), *more ;* **13.**

magistrātus, -ūs, *a civil office, a civil officer, magistrate ;* **4.**

māgnopere, adv. (**māgnō** and **opere**), *with great toil, greatly ;* **13** ; **magis,** comp., *more ,* **13** , **maxime,** sup., *very greatly, most, especially ;* **3.**

māgnus, *great, large ;* **2.**

māior (comp. of **māgnus**), *greater ;* **māiōrēs nātū** or simply **māiōrēs,** *those greater by birth, ancestors, elders ;* **13.**

maleficium (**male,** *badly,* and **facere**), *wrong-doing, an evil deed ;* **7.**

mandāre (**manus,** and **dare**), *to give into one's hand, commit :* **12.**

manus, -ūs, fem. by exception, *a hand, an armed force* (as the instrument by which war is waged) ; **25.**

Mārcus, a Roman first, or individual, name ; usually represented by the initial **M.** ; **2.**

matara, *a javelin* used by the Gauls ; **26.**

māter, -tris, *mother ;* **18.**

mātrimōnium, *marriage ;* **3.**

Mātrona, masc., *the Matrona ;* **1.**

mātūrāre, *to hasten ;* **7.**

mātūrus, *ripe, early ;* **16.**

maximē, *very greatly, most, especially ;* **3.**

maximus, irreg. superlative of **māgnus,** *greatest ;* **3.**

mē, accus. or abl., *me ;* **14** ; see **ego.**

medius, adj., *the middle of ;* **24** ; cf. the meaning of **summus** and **extrēmus.**

memoria, *memory ;* 7.

mēnsis, -is, masc. by exception, *a month ;* 5.

mercātor, *merchant ;* 1.

merērī, meritus, *to merit, deserve, earn ;* 11.

meritum (**merērī**), *desert, merit ;* 14.

Messāla, masc., a Roman name ; 2.

mētīrī, mēnsus, *to measure ;* 16.

mihi, dat., *me ;* 14 ; see **ego**.

mīlitāris (**mīles**), *belonging to a soldier, military ;* 21.

mīles, -itis, *soldier ;* see pp. 238 and 364 ; 7.

mīlle, the nom. plur. is **mīlia** or **mīllia** (in sing. usually an indecl. adj. ; in plur. a neut. noun), *a thousand ;* 2.

minimē, adv. in superlative, *least, by no means ;* 1 ; cf. **minus**.

minimus (irreg. superlative of **parvus**), *least, very small ;* 8.

minor (comp. of **parvus**), *smaller, less ;* 14.

minuere, minuit, minūtus (**minus**), *to lessen ;* 20.

minus, adv. in comp., *less ;* **minimē**, superlative, *least ;* 2.

mittere, mīsit, missus, *to let go, send ;* 7.

modo, adv., *only ;* 16.

molere, moluit, molitus, *to grind ;* 7.

monēre, *to remind, warn, advise ;* 20.

mōns, masc. by exception, *a mountain ;* 1.

morārī, trans. or intrans., *to delay ;* 26, distinguish **morī**, *to die.*

morī (rarely **morīrī**) **mortuus**, *to die ;* 4.

mors, *death ;* 4.

mōs, mōris, masc., *custom ;* in plur. *customs, manners, character ;* 4.

movēre, mōvit, mōtus, *to move ;* 15.

mulier, -is, *a woman ;* 29.

multitūdō, *a great number, multitude ;* 2.

multus, *much ;* plur *many ;* 3 ; **plūs**, comp. (neut.) ; **plūrimus**, superlative.

mūnīre (**moenia**, *walls*), *to wall, to fortify ;* 24.

mūnītiō, *a fortifying, fortification ;* 8.

mūrus, *a wall ;* 8.

N.

nam, conj., *for ;* 12.

Nammēius, a noble Helvetian ; 7.

nātūra, *nature, disposition ;* 2.

nāvis, *a ship, a boat ;* 8.

nē, conj., *that . . . not, not to ;* after words of fearing, *that, lest ;* 4.

nec, 20 ; see **neque**.

necessārius, *necessary ;* as noun, *a close friend* or *near relative ;* 11.

negāre, *to say . . . not, to deny ;* 8.

nēmō, nēminī (dat. (nē and homō), *no man, no one ;* 18 ; the gen. and abl. sing. of this word are supplied by **nūllīus** and **nūllō**.

neque or **nec**, adv and conj., *and not ;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor ;* 4.

nervus, *a sinew, tendon, nerve ;* in plur. *power, strength ;* 20.

nēve or **neu** (**nē**, and **ve**, *or*), *or not ;* 26.

nex, necis, *death*, especially *a violent death ;* 16.

nihilum, *nothing ;* **nihil**, the indecl. form, is more common ; 5.

nisi, *if not, unless ;* 22.

nītī, nīsus, or **nīxus**, *to rest upon, rely upon, strive ;* 13.

nōbilis, *well-known, high-born, noble by birth ;* 2.

nōbilitās, *nobility ;* cf. **nōbilis**, *high-born ;* 2.

noctū, adv., *by night ;* 8.

nōlle, nōluit (**nē** and **velle**), *to be unwilling ;* 16.

nōmen, *a name*; **13**.

nōminātim, adv., *by name*; **29**.

nōn, adv, *not*; **3**.

nōnāgintā, *ninety*; **29**.

nōndum, *not yet*; **6**.

nōnnūllus, *not none, some*; **6**.

nōnnumquam, *not never, sometimes*; **8**; cf. **nōnnūllus**.

Nōrēia, a town in the territory of the Noricans, who lived in a part of what is now Austria; **5**.

Nōricus, *of the Noricans, Noric*; **5**.

nōs, nom or accus plur., *we or us*; **13**

noster, **-tra -trum**, *our*; **1**.

novem, indecl., *nine*; **8**.

novus, *new*; **novae rēs**, *new things, revolution*; **9**.

nox, noctis, *night*; **26**.

nūbere, nūpsit, nūptus, *to veil one's self*, hence, *to marry* (said of the woman); **18**; **Mārcō nūbere**, *to veil one's self for Marcus, marry Marcus*.

nūdus, *naked, unprotected*; **25**.

nūllus (gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**), adj. (**nē**, *not*, and **ūllus**, *any*), *not any, no, none*; **7**.

num, interrogative particle; in direct questions expects a neg. answer; **14**.

numerus, *a number*; **3**.

nūntiāre, *to announce*; **7**.

nūntius (perhaps akin to **novus**), *new*), *a bearer of news, messenger, news*; **26**.

nūper, *recently*; **6**.

O.

ob. prep with accus., *on account of*; in composition, *in the way of, against*; **4**.

obaerātus, *one bound to service for debt, a debtor*; **4**

obicere or **iicere** (**obiciō**), **-iēcit, -iectus**, *to throw in the way or against*; **26**.

oblīviscī, -lītus, *to forget*; takes gen.; **14**.

obsecrāre (**ob** and **sacrum**, *sacred*), *to ask on religious grounds, to beseech*; **20**.

obses, obsidis, *a hostage*; hostages were human beings given by one person or nation to another, in order to guarantee the fulfilment of an agreement; if the agreement was broken, the hostages might be killed; **9**.

obstringere, -strinxit, -strictus, *to bind*; **9**.

obtinēre, -tinuit, -tentus, *to hold, possess, occupy*; **1**.

occāsus, -ūs, *a falling, setting*; **1**.

occīdere, -cīdit, -cīsus (**ob** and **caedere**, *to cut*), *to cut down, kill*; **7**.

occultāre, *to conceal*; **27**.

occupāre, *to seize, take possession of*; **3**.

Ōceanus, *the ocean*; **1**.

Ocelum, a town in Cisalpine Gaul; **10**.

octo, indecl., *eight*; **21**.

octōdecim, indecl., *eighteen*; **23**.

octōgintā, indecl., *eighty*; **2**.

oculus, *an eye*; **12**.

ōdisse, ōdit, *to hate*, found only in the pf. system, and in the pf. is pres. in sense; **18**.

offendere, fendit, -fēnsus, *to hit against, stumble, blunder, offend*; **19**.

offēnsiō (**offendere**), *a striking against, a stumbling, offence*; **19**.

omnīnō, adv., *altogether, in all*; **6**.

omnis, *all, every*; **1**.

oportet, impersonal verb, *it is necessary, it behooves*; **4**.

oppidum, *a stronghold, town*; **5**.

oppūgnāre, *to fight against, storm, besiege*; **5**.

(ops) opis (no nom. or dat. sing.), *help, ability*; in plur. means, *resources*; **20**.

opus, -eris, *a work, piece of work*; 8.

ōrāre, *to entreat, beg*; 20.

ōrātiō, *a speech, oration*; 3.

Orgetorix, -igis, an Helvetian chief; 2.

oriēns, adj., *rising*; 1.

orīrī, ortus, *to rise*; 1.

ostendere, ostendit, ostentus (obs for ob, and tendere, *to stretch*), *to stretch in the way of, show*; 8.

P.

pābulātiō (pābulārī), *a getting of food, a foraging*; 15.

pābulum (pāscere, *to feed, pasture*), *that which feeds, food*, especially for animals, *fodder*; 16.

pācāre, *to pacify, to subdue*; 6.

paene, *almost*; 11.

pāgus, *canton, district*; 12.

pār, paris, adj., *equal*; 28.

parāre, *to make ready, prepare*; 5.

parātus (pf. pass partic. of parāre), *prepared, ready*; 5.

pārēre, *to appear at call* (as a servant), *to obey*. takes dative, 27.

pars, *part, direction*; 1.

parvus (minor, minimus), *little, small*; 18.

passus, -ūs, *a pace*: the Roman mile was a thousand paces, and the Roman (double) pace was a little less than five feet, 2.

pater, -tris, *father*; 3.

patēre, patuit, *to lie open, extend*; 2.

patī, passus, *to endure, permit*; 6.

paucī (sing very rare), *few*; 15.

pāx, pācis, *peace*; 3.

pellere, pepulit, pulsus, *to drive*; 7.

per, prep. with accus., *through*; 3.

perdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to lead through, draw out, prolong, extend*; 8.

perfacilis, *very easy*; 2.

perficere (perficiō), -fēcit, -fectus, *to accomplish, finish*; 3.

perfringere (per and frangere, *to break*), -frēgit, -fractus, *to break through*; 25.

perfuga, masc. by meaning, *a runaway, deserter*; 28.

perfugere (perfugiō), -fūgit, *to run away, desert*; 27.

perīculum, *that which tests, a peril*; 5.

perītus (perīrī, *to try*), *experienced, skilled*; 21.

permovēre, -mōvit, -mōtus, *to move thoroughly* or *deeply, to influence strongly*; 3.

perniciēs, -ēī (nex), *destruction*; 20.

perpaucus, *very little*; in plur. *very few*; 6.

perrumpere, -rūpit, -ruptus, *to break through*; 8.

persequī, -secūtus, *to follow up, pursue*; 13.

persevērāre, *to continue, persist*; 13.

persolvere, -solvit, -solūtus, *to loose thoroughly, to pay in full*; 12.

persuādēre, persuāsit, persuāsum, *to persuade*; 2.

perterrēre, *to frighten thoroughly*; 18.

pertinēre, -tinuit, *stretch out, tend, pertain*; 1.

pervenīre, -vēnit, -ventum, *to come through, arrive*; 7.

pēs, pedis, *a foot* of man or beast, and also the measure of length; 8.

petere, petīvit, petītus, *to aim at, seek*; 19.

phalanx, -gis, *a close battle array, a phalanx*; 24.

pīlum, *a heavy javelin*; see p. 378; 25.

Pīsō, a Roman name; 2, 6, 12.

plēbs, plēbis, *plebeians, common people*; 3.

plūrimum, adv. (irreg. superlative of multum), *very much, most, especially*; 3.

plūrimus, (irreg. sup. of **multus**), *very much, most;* in plur., *very many*.

plūs, plūris (neut. comp. of **multus** adj., and comp. of **multum**, adv.), *more;* in plur. **plūrēs** masc. and fem., **plūra**, neuter (gen. **plūrium**); 17.

poena, *punishment, penalty;* 4.

pollicērī pollicitus, *to promise;* 14.

pōnere, posuit, positus, *to place;* 16.

pōns, masc. by exception, *a bridge;* 6.

populārī, *to lay waste;* 11.

populātiō (populārī), *a laying waste, ravaging;* 15.

populus, *people;* 3.

portāre, *to carry;* 5.

portōrium (portāre), *a tax,* especially a tax paid on goods imported, *a duty;* 18.

poscere, poposcit, *to ask urgently, demand;* 27.

posse, potuit (potis, *able,* and esse), *to be able;* 2.

possessiō, *a possession;* 11.

post, prep. with accus., and adv., *after, behind;* 5.

posteā, adv., *after that, afterwards;* 21.

posterus (post), *coming after, following;* 15.

postquam, conj., *later than, after, as soon as;* 24.

postrīdiē, adv. (posterus and diēs, cf. prīdiē), *on the day after;* **postrīdiē ēius diēī**, *on the day after this day, on the following day;* 23.

potēns, *being able, powerful;* 3.

potentia (potēns), *power;* 18.

potestās (posse), *power, lawful authority;* 16.

potīrī, potītus, *to obtain,* takes abl.; 2.

praecēdere, -cessit, -cessus, *to precede, surpass;* 1.

praecipere (praecipiō), -cēpit, -ceptus, *to take beforehand, to anticipate, to give rules, instruct, direct;* 22.

praeesse, -fuit, *to be over, to command;* 16; cf. praeficere, *to put in command;* 10.

praeferre, -tulit, -lātus, *to bear before, prefer, choose;* 17.

praeficere (praeficiō), -fēcit, -fectus, *to put before, set over, put in command;* 10.

praemittere, -mīsit, -missus, *to send before;* 15.

praeoptāre, *to choose rather, prefer;* 25.

praesēns (in form, a partic. from praeesse), *present;* 18.

praesentia (prae and esse), *a being present, presence;* in praesentiā, *at present;* 15.

praesertim, *especially;* 16.

praesidium, *a sitting before, a guard, garrison;* 8.

praestāre, -stitit, -stātus, *to stand before, excel, furnish;* praestat, *it is better;* 2.

praeter, prep. with accus., *along by, beyond, except;* 11.

praeterīre, -iit, -itus, *to go by, pass by;* praeterita, *things gone by, the past;* 20.

praeterquam, adv., *further than, beyond, besides;* 5.

praetor (prae and īre), *a leader, praetor, judge, governor;* 21.

precēs (the nom. sing. prex not in use), *prayers, requests;* 16.

prendere (also written prehendere), prendit, prēnsus, *to grasp;* 20.

pretium, *a price;* 18.

prīdiē, adv. (prīmus and diēs; cf. postrīdiē), *on the day before;* prīdiē ēius diēī, *on the day before this day, on the preceding day;* 23.

prīmum, adv., *in the first place, first*; 25.

prīmus, *first*; 10.

prīnceps, -cipis, adj. or noun, *chief*; 7.

prīncipātus, -ūs, *leadership;* 3.

prīstinus, *former;* 13.

prius, adv. in comp., *sooner;* 19.

priusquam or **prius . . . quam,** conj., *sooner than, before;* 19.

prīvātim, *privately, as a private citizen;* 17.

prīvātus, *belonging to an individual, private;* 5.

prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, in behalf of, instead of, for, in proportion to;* 2.

probāre, *to test, prove, approve;* 3.

Procillus; see **Valerius.**

prōdere, -didit, -ditus, *to put forth, to betray; transmit, hand down;* 13.

proelium, *battle;* 1.

profectiō, *a setting out, departure;* 3.

proficīscī, -fectus (**prō** and **facere,** *to make forward, make headway*), *set out, depart;* 3.

prohibēre, *to keep away, prevent, check;* 1.

prōicere or **-iicere** (**prōiciō**), **-iēcit, -iectus,** *to throw before or forth, fling away;* 27.

prope, adv. and prep. with accus., *near;* 22, superlative **proximē.**

prōpellere, -pulit, -pulsus, *to drive before;* 15.

propinquus, *near;* as noun, *a relative;* 16.

prōpōnere, -posuit, -positus, *to put* or *set forth, declare;* 17.

propter, prep. with accus., *on account of;* 9.

proptereā, adv., *for this reason;* 1.

prōspicere (**prōspiciō**), **-spēxit, -spectus,** *to look forward, look out for;* 23.

prōvincia, *province;* 1.

proximē, adv., *latest, last, next;* 24.

proximus, *nearest;* 1.

pūblicē, *by public authority;* 16.

pūblicus, *public;* 12.

Pūblius, a Roman first name, usually represented by the initial **P.;** 21.

puer, -erī, *a child, boy;* 29.

pūgna, *a fight;* 25.

pūgnāre, *to fight;* 25.

pulsus; see **pellere.**

pūrgāre, *to make clear, clear;* 28.

putāre, *to think;* 7.

Pȳrēnaeus, *Pyrenean, of the Pyrenees;* 1.

Q.

quā, *where;* 6

quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., *forty;* 2.

quadringentī, adj., *four hundred;* 5; cf. **quadrāgintā,** indecl., *forty.*

quaerere, quaesīvit or **-iit, quaesītus,** *to seek;* 18; cf. **querī,** *to complain;* 16.

quālis, adj., *of what sort;* 21.

quam, adv. and conj., *how, as, than;* with superlative denotes the highest possible degree; 3.

quantus, adj. (**quam,** *how*), *how great, as much as;* 17; after **tantus** (*so great*), **quantus** may be translated *as.*

quārē (**quā** and **rē**), *on account of which thing, wherefore;* 13.

quartus, *fourth;* 12.

quattuor, indecl., *four;* 12.

quattuordecim, indecl., *fourteen;* 29.

-que, conj., *and;* enclitic; 1.

querī, questus, *to complain;* 16.

quī, quae, quod, *who, which, what;* 1; also interrogative adj.; 15.

quidem, *indeed;* in Caesar mostly in the phrase **nē . . . quidem,** enclosing the emphatic word; thus **nē Caesar quidem,** *not even Caesar;* 16.

quīn, conj.; when used with the ind., *but, nay more, in fact*; 17; when used with the subjv., *that, but that, that not*; 3.

quīndecim (**quīnque** and **decem**), indecl., *fifteen*; 15.

quīngentī, *five hundred*; 15.

quīnī, distributive, *five to each, five at a time*; 15.

quīnque, *five*; 10.

quīntus, *fifth*; 6.

quis, quae, quid, indefinite pron., *any one, anything*; 7.

quis, quae, quid, interrogative pron., *who? which? what?* 21.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or **quicquam**, *any one, anything*; used in neg. clauses; 19.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, *each one, every one*; 5.

quod, conj., *because*; 1.

quoque, conj., *also*; 1.

quotīdiānus or **cōtīdiānus**, *daily*.

quotīdiē or **cotīdiē**, adv., *daily*.

quum, conj., see **cum**.

R.

rapīna (**rapere**, *to seize*), *plundering*; 15.

ratiō, *a reckoning, account, consideration, plan, reason*; 28.

ratis, *a raft*; 8.

Rauricī, a Gallic tribe, neighbors to the Helvetians; 5, 29.

recēns, *fresh, recent*; 14.

recipere (**recipiō**), **-cēpit, -ceptus**, *to take back, receive*; 5; **sē recipere**, *to betake one's self, to retreat*; 11.

redimere, **-ēmit, -emptus**, *to buy back, buy up*; 18.

redintegrāre, *to make whole again, renew*; 25.

redīre, **-iī, -itūrus**, *to go back*; 29.

reditiō, *a going back, return*; 5.

redūcere, **-dūxit, -ductus**, *to lead back, withdraw*; 28.

referre, **-tulit, -lātus**, *to bring back, report*; 25.

rēgnum, *royal power, kingdom*; 2.

rēicere or **rēiicere** (**rēiciō**), **-iēcit, -iectus**, *to throw back*; 24.

relātus; 29; see **referre**.

relinquere, **-līquit, -lictus**, *to leave*; 9.

reliquus, adj., *the rest of, remaining*; 1.

reminiscī, *to remember*; 13.

removēre, **-mōvit, -mōtus**, *to move back, remove*; 19.

renūntiāre, *to bring back word, report*; 10.

repellere, **-pulit, -pulsus**, *to drive back*; 8.

repentīnus, *sudden*; 13.

reperīre, **repperit** or **reperit**, **-pertus**, *to find out*; 18.

reprehendere, **-hendit, -hēnsus**, *to hold back, blame*; 20.

repūgnāre, *to fight back, be opposed*; 19.

rēs, reī, *a thing* (in the widest sense); its translation will vary widely with the context; 2.

rescindere, **-scidit, -scissus**, *to cut away, break down*; 7.

rescīscere, **-scīvit** or **-sciit, -scītus**, *to find out*; 18.

resistere, **-stitit**, *to stand back, stop, resist*; it takes the dative; 25.

respondēre, **-spondit, -spōnsus**, *to answer*; 7.

respōnsum, *a thing said in reply, a reply*; 14.

rēspūblica (also written as two words, **rēs pūblica**, and always decl. as two), *the commonweal, state, republic*; 20.

restituere, **-stituit, -stitūtus**, *to set up again, restore*; 18.

retinēre, **-tinuit, -tentus**, *to hold back*; 18.

revertī, -versus, dep., *to return* ; **7** ; in the pf. tenses, the stem of act. form **revertit** was used by Caesar; **8**.

Rhēnus, *the Rhine* ; **1**.

Rhodanus, *the Rhone* ; **1**.

rīpa, *the bank of a river* ; **6**.

rogāre, *to ask* ; **7**.

Rōmānus, adj. or noun, *Roman, a Roman* ; **3**.

rota, *a wheel* ; **26**.

rūrsus, adv. (for **reversus,** from **revertere**), *turned back, back, again* ; **25**.

S.

saepe, adv., *often* ; **1**.

salūs, -ūtis, *a sound condition, health, welfare, safety* ; **27**.

Santones or **Santonī,** a tribe on the west coast of Gaul; **10, 11**.

sarcinae, *sacks, bundles,* especially *soldiers' packs* (carried by each soldier) ; see p. 332 and cf. **impedīmenta** ; **24**.

satis, adv. or adj., *sufficiently, enough* ; **3**.

satisfacere (satisfaciō), -fēcit, -factūrus, *to do enough, satisfy, apologize* ; **14**.

scelus, -eris, *a crime* ; **14**.

scīre, scīvit, scītus, *to know* ; **20**.

scūtum, *a shield,* oblong, wooden, and covered with leather; see p. 361 ; **25**.

sē ; **1** ; see **suī**.

sēcrētō, *separately, in private* ; **18**.

secundus, *following, second, favorable* (a wind *following* or right astern would be a *favorable* wind) ; **14**.

sed, conj., *but* ; **12**.

sēdecim (sex and **decem),** indecl. numeral, *six and ten, sixteen* ; **8**.

sēditiōsus, *full of discord, seditious* ; **17**.

Segusiāvī, a Gallic tribe near the Rhone ; **10**.

sēmentis, *a sowing, planting* ; **3**.

semper, *always* ; **18**.

senātus, -ūs, *a body of old men, a senate* ; **3**.

senex, senis, *an old man* ; **29**.

sēnī (sex), distributive, *six to each, six at a time* ; **15**.

sentīre, sēnsit, sēnsus, *to feel, perceive, think* ; **18**.

sēparātim, *separately* ; **19**.

septentriō or **septentriōnēs,** *the Great Bear,* in the northern part of the heavens, *the north* ; **1**.

septimus, *seventh* ; **10**.

sepultūra, *a burying, burial* ; **26**.

Sēquana, fem., *the Seine* ; **1**.

Sēquanī, *the Sequanians* ; **1**.

sequī, secūtus, *to follow* ; **4**.

servitūs, -ūtis (servus), *servitude* ; **11**.

servus, *a slave* ; **27**.

seu ; **23** ; see **sīve**.

sex, indecl., *six* ; **27**.

sexāgintā, *sixty* ; **29**.

sī, conj., *if* ; **7**.

sīgnum, *a mark, signal, standard* ; see pp. 228 and 269 ; **25**.

silva, *a forest* ; **12**.

simul, adv., *at the same time, at once* ; **19**.

sīn (sī and **nē,** *not*), *but if* ; **13**.

sine, prep. with abl., *without* ; **7**.

singulī, *one to each, one at a time* ; **6**.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *on the left side, left* ; **sinistra (manus),** *the left hand* ; **25** ; cf. **dextra**.

sīve, conj. **(sī** and **vel),** *or if* ; **sīve . . . sīve,** *whether . . . or, either . . . or* ; **12**.

socer, -erī, *father-in-law* ; **12**.

socius, *an ally* ; **5**.

sōl, masc. by exception, *the sun* ; **1**.

sōlum, adv., *only* ; **nōn sōlum, . . . sed etiam,** *not only, . . . but also* ; **12**.

solum, *the soil, the ground* ; 11.

sōlus (gen. -īus, dat. -ī), *alone* ; 18.

soror, *sister* ; 18.

spatium, *extent*, either of space or time ; 7.

spectāre, *to look, face* ; 1.

spērāre, *to hope, expect* ; 3.

spēs, -eī *hope* ; 5.

spontis gen., **sponte** abl., wanting in other cases ; in abl., with **suā**, it means *of one's own accord, by one's self* ; 9.

statuere, **statuit**, **statūtus**, *to cause to stand, establish, decide* ; 11.

studēre, **studuit**, *to be eager for, desire* ; takes the dative ; 9.

studium, *zeal, devotion, a pursuit* ; 19.

sub, prep. with accus. or abl., *under* ; with accus., 7, with abl., 16.

subdūcere, -dūxit, -ductus, *to draw from below, draw up, withdraw* ; 22.

subesse, -fuit, -futūrus, *to be under, be near* ; 25.

subicere or **subiicere** (**subiciō**), -iēcit, -iectus, *to throw under, place beneath* ; 26.

subīre, -iit, -itus, irreg., *to go under or near, to undergo* ; 5.

sublātus ; 5 ; see **tollere**.

sublevāre, *to lift up from beneath, aid* ; 16.

submovēre ; see **summovēre**.

subsistere, -stitit, *to make a stand, resist* ; 15.

subvehere, -vēxit, -vectus, *to carry from below, i. e. to carry up* ; 16.

succēdere, -cessit, -cessūrus, *to go under, march up, take the place of* ; 24.

suī, gen. sing. or plur., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves* ; 1.

Sulla, masc., a Roman name ; **Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla**, a great Roman general ; 21.

sum ; see **esse**.

sūmere, **sūmpsit**, **sūmptus**, *to take up, assume* ; 7.

summa (the fem. of **summus**, as a noun), *the highest (part), the top, the sum* ; 29.

summus (irreg. superlative of **superus**), *highest* ; 16.

summovēre or **submovēre**, -mōvit, -mōtus, *to remove, dislodge* ; 25.

sūmptus, -ūs (**sūmere**), *a taking from one's means, outlay, expense* ; 18.

superāre, *to overcome, surpass* ; 17.

superesse, -fuit, -futūrus, *to be over (i. e. left over), to survive* ; 23 ; cf. **praeesse** ; 16.

superus, **superior**, **suprēmus** or **summus**, *high, higher, highest* ; 10. **superior**, when used of time, means *former*.

suppetere, -petīvit, -petitūrus (**sub** and **petere**), *to be on hand, be in store* ; 3.

suppliciter (**supplex**), *suppliantly, as a suppliant* ; 27.

supplicium (**sub** and **plicāre**, *to fold, bend*, as the knees in kneeling), *a kneeling, supplication, punishment* ; 19.

suprā, adv., *above, before* ; 24.

suscipere (**suscipiō**), -cēpit, -ceptus (**subs** for **sub**, *from under*, and **capere**), *to take from under, take up or upon, undertake* ; 3.

suspīciō or **suspītiō**, *suspicion* ; 4.

sustinēre, -tinuit, -tentus (**subs** for **sub**, *from under*, and **tenēre**), *to hold up, hold out against, support, sustain* ; 24.

suus, possessive pronominal adj., *his, her, its, their* ; 1.

T.

T; see **Titus**.

tabula, *a board*; hence, from the practice of using for records boards covered with wax, *a writing-tablet*, or *the writing on a tablet*; 29.

tacēre, *to be silent*; also sometimes transitive, *to be silent about, pass over in silence*; 17.

tam, adv., *so* (used mostly before adverbs and adjectives); 14.

tamen, adv., *yet, nevertheless*; 7.

tandem |**tam**, *so*, and termination -**dem** (cf. **īdem**)], *just so far, at length*; 25; in a question, *pray*.

tantus (**tam**), adj., *so much, so great*; 15.

tibi, dat. sing., *to you, you*; LXXXVI.

tēlum, *a weapon* used for fighting at a distance, *a missile, dart*; 8.

temperantia (**temperāre**), *self-control, moderation*; 19.

temperāre, *to govern one's self, refrain*; 7.

temptāre or **tentāre** (**tenēre**), *to handle, try*; 14.

tempus, **-oris**, *time*; 3.

tenēre, **tenuit**, **tentus**, *to hold*; 7.

tertius, *third*; 1.

testis, masc. or fem., *a witness*; 14.

Tigurīnus, noun or adj., *Tigurinian*, or *one of the Tigurinians*, a people inhabiting one of the four parts of Switzerland; 12.

timēre, **timuit**, *to fear*; 14.

timor (**timēre**), *fear, alarm*; 23.

Titus, a Roman first name, usually represented by initial **T.**; 10.

tolerāre, *to bear, endure*; 28.

tollere, **sustulit**, **sublātus**, irreg., *to lift up, remove, destroy*; 25.

Tolōsātes, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province; 10.

tōtus (gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**), *the whole, the whole of, entire*; 2.

trādere, **-didit**, **-ditus**, *to hand over, hand down, surrender*; 27.

trādūcere or **trānsdūcere**, **-dūxit**, **-ductus**, *to lead across*; 11; cf. **trānsīre**; 5.

trāgula, *a heavy Gallic javelin*; 26.

trāns, prep. with accus., *across*; 1.

trānsfīgere, **-fīxit**, **-fīxus**, *to pierce through, transfix*; 25.

trānsīre, **-iit**, **-itus**, *to go across*; 5.

trecentī, adj., *three hundred*; 29.

trēs, *three*; 1.

tribuere, **tribuit**, **tribūtus**, *to assign, ascribe*; 13.

trīduum, *the space of three days*; 26; cf. **biduum**; 23.

trīgintā, indecl. adj., *thirty*; 26.

triplex, **-icis** (**trēs** and **plicāre**, *to fold*), *threefold, triple*; 24.

Tulingī, a Germanic tribe which joined the Helvetians; 5, 25, 28, 29.

tulisse; 14; see **ferre**; 13.

tum, adv. of time, *then*; 14.

tuus, *thy, thine, your*; 13; cf. **suus**.

U.

ubi, *when, where*; 5.

ulciscī, **ultus**, *to avenge, punish*; 12.

ūllus (gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**), adj., *any*; 7.

ulterior, adj. (positive wanting, **ultimus**, superlative), *farther*; 7.

ūnā, adv., *together*; 5.

unde, *from which place, whence*; 28.

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*; 2.

ūnus (gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**), *one*; 1.

urbs (**urbis**, gen.), *a city*; to a Roman, often *the city of Rome*, just as "the city" means *Boston* to one living in the suburbs of that city; 7.

ut or **utī**, conj., *that, in order that, so that*; if followed by the ind., *as* or *when*; 2.

uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -īus, dat. -ī), adj., *which* (of two)? **12.**

utī; **5**; see ut.

ūtī, ūsus, *to use;* takes the ablative; **5**.

uxor, *wife;* **18.**

V.

vacāre, *to be empty, vacant;* **28.**

vadum, *a ford, a shallow;* **6.**

vagārī, *to wander;* **2.**

valēre, valuit, valitūrus, *to be strong* or *powerful, to avail;* **17.**

Valerius, a Roman name; **C. Valerius Procillus**, a Gallic friend of Caesar; **19.**

vāllum (vāllus, *a stake*), *a line of stakes, a palisade,* generally with earth behind it, *a wall of earth, a rampart;* cf. p. 251; **26.**

vastāre (vastus, *empty*), *to make empty, to lay waste;* **11.**

vectīgal, -ālis, neut., *a tax;* **18.**

vel, *or;* vel . . . vel, *either . . . or;* **6.**

velle, voluit, irreg., *to wish;* **7.**

venīre, vēnit, ventum, *to come;* **8.**

Verbigēnus, one of the four districts of the Helvetians; **27.**

verbum, *a word;* **20.**

verērī, *to feel awe of, fear;* **19.**

vergere, *to slope, be situated;* **1.**

vergobretus, the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduans; **16.**

Verucloetius, a high-born Helvetian; **7.**

vērus, *true, right;* **18.**

vesper, -erī, *the evening;* **26.**

vester, -tra, -trum, *your,* plural; **14**; cf. tuus, *thy* or *your,* singular; **13.**

veterānus, *old, veteran;* **24**; as noun, *a tried soldier, a veteran.*

vetus, -eris, *old, former;* **13.**

vexāre, *to annoy, vex, harass;* **14.**

via, *way;* **9.**

victōria, *victory;* **14.**

vīcus (cf. -*wich* in *Norwich*), *a group of houses, village, street;* **5.**

vidēre, vīdit, vīsus, *to see;* in pass., often, *to seem;* **6.**

vigilia, *watchfulness, a watch of the night;* the Romans divided the night from sunset to sunrise, whatever its length, into four equal watches; **12.**

vīgintī, indecl., *twenty;* **13.**

vincere, vīcit, victus, *to conquer;* **25.**

vinculum or vinclum, *that which binds,* hence, *a rope, chain, fetter;* **4.**

virtūs, -ūtis, *virtue, valor;* **1.**

vīs, gen. vīs, *force, violence;* **6**; in plur. vīrēs, *strength.*

vīta, *life;* **16.**

vītāre, *to shun;* **20.**

vix, adv., *with effort, with difficulty, scarcely;* **6.**

vōbīs, dat. and abl. plur. of vōs.

vocāre, *to call, summon;* **19.**

Vocontiī, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province; **10.**

volēbat; see velle.

volō; see velle.

voluntās (volent(i)-, stem. of pres. partic. of velle, *to wish,* and -tās), *willingness, will, good-will, desire;* **7.**

vōs, nom. and accus. plur., *you;* **14**; cf. poss. adj. vester; **14.**

vulgus or volgus (of the -o decl., neut. by exception, and hence having nom. and accus. alike; wanting in plur.), *the public, the crowd, the mob;* **20.**

vulnerāre or volnerāre, *to wound;* **26.**

vulnus or volnus, -eris, *a wound;* **25.**